SUBJECT INDEX

FOR TREATISE—PART I AND APPENDIX (3 PARTS)*

SUBJECT INDEX

FOR TREATISE—PART I AND APPENDIX (3 PARTS)*

Note: Box 1 Priced separately contains Treatise Part I, II, III and Appendix Part I
Box 2 Priced separately contains Appendix Part II and III, published, bound and sold as optional

(Note : For Pages 1 to 1890 refer Treatise—Part I of the book, for Pages 1891 to 4038 refer Treatise—Part II of the book (Bound Separately) and Pages 4039 to 4850 refer Treatise—Part III of the book (Bound Separately) and for Appendix Nos. 1 to 150 refer Appendix—Part I (Bound Separately) and for Appendix Nos. 151 to 255 refer Appendix—Part II (Bound Separately) and for Appendix 256 to 326 refer Appendix—Part III (Bound Separately)

Abbreviated company names, ROC approval necessary for, s. 21, p. 425

Abridged Balance Sheet, Guidance Notes on Audit of Abridged Financial Statements (• SEE UNDER **"Schedule VI"**), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-26)

Abridged Financial Statements, Audit of Abridged Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-26)
Guidance Notes on Audit of Abridged Financial Statements (See under Schedule VI), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-26)

Abridged Prospectus, s. 2(1), p. 31
abridged prospectus shall contain the disclosures as specified under Section I of Chapter VI, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
abridged Prospectus, • SEE ALSO **"SEBI Guidelines 2000"**, Chap. V, *App.* 162
application forms, two with one, s. 56, p. 645
Basis for Issue Price, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Capital Structure of the company, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Change, if any, in directors and auditors during the last three years and reasons thereof, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Company, Management and Project, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
contents of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 707
Contents of, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
definition of, s. 2(1), p. 23
Disclosures in, and Letter of Offer, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines 2000, see *App.* 162
Expert opinion obtained if any, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Financial Performance of the Company for the Last Five Years: (Figures to be taken from the audited annual accounts in tabular form), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Following particulars in regard to the listed companies under the same management with the meaning of Section 370(1B) which made any capital issue in the last three years, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
form of, s. 56, p. 635
format of, s. 56, p. 643
General Information, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Management perceptions of risk factors (e.g. Sensitivity to foreign exchange rate fluctuations, difficulty in availability of raw materials or in marketing of products, cost/time overrun), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162

---

* For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise

Abridged Prospectus (*Contd.*)
material development after the date of the latest balance sheet and its impact on performance and prospects of the company, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
material contracts and time and place of inspection, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Option to Subscribe, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Outstanding litigations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Particulars of the issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines for disclosure in, compliance of, s. 56, p. 643
SEBI Guidelines on, s. 2(1), p. 31
share application forms, not to be supplied without, s. 56(3), p. 645
Statements after minimum subscription clause, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Terms of the present issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Whether all Payment/Refunds, Debentures, Deposits of banks or companies, Interest on Deposits, Debenture Interest, Institutional Dues have been paid up to date, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162

Abuse of position, member, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

Accounting for Government Grants, Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance (IAS 20), see *App.* 319

Accounting for Oil and Gas Producing Activities, Guidance Note on Accounting for Oil and Gas Producing Activities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-60)

Accounting for Taxes on Income, Accounting Standards, (AS-22), see *App.* 316

Accounting Policies, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Accounting Standards**"
disclosure of accounting policies, (AS-1), see *App.* 316
Net Profit or Loss for the Period, Fundamental Errors and Changes in Accounting Policies (IAS 8), see *App.* 319

Accounting Principles, sources of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP–US), see *App.* 321

Accounting Standards (International), salient features, objectives and disclosure requirements, see *App.* 319
sources of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP–US), see *App.* 321

Accounting Standards Committee (SEBI), Circulars—Accounting Standards Committee of SEBI has recommended certain amendments in clauses 41, 32 and additions of new clause 50 to provide that companies shall mandatorily comply with all the Accounting Standards issued by ICAI from time to time, *Circular No. SMDRP/POLICY/CIR-44/01 dt. 31-8-2001*, see *App.* 228(4)
Circulars—Amendment of Listing Agreement Clauses 20, 22, 36 and 41 have been Recommended by the Accounting Standards Committee (ASC), *Circulars No. SMDRP/Policy/Cir-11/01 dt. 15-2-2001*, see *App.* 228(3)
Dot.com Companies, Committee, see *App.* 228
Press Release—Accounting Standards Sub-Committee on Dot Com Companies set up by SEBI, *Press Release Reference No. PR 141/2000, Dt. 6-7-2000*, see *App.* 228(1)
Press Release—Invitation of Comments on the Recommendations of SEBI's Accounting Standards Committee, *Press Release No. PR-163/2002, dt. 23-8-2002*, see *App.* 228(6)
Press Release—Meeting of the SEBI Accounting Standards Committee, *Press Release Reference No. PR 142/2000, dt. 6-7-2000*, see *App.* 228(2)
Press Release—Segment reporting as a part of quarterly Financial Disclosures made mandatory, *Press Release PR-185/2001, dt. 25-10-2001*, see *App.* 228(5)

Accounting Standards Interpretation (ASI)1—borrowing costs, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-16)
(ASI)2—Accounting for machinery spares, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-2), 316(AS-10)
(ASI)3—Accounting for taxes on income, Tax holiday in a situation of u/s. 80-IA & 80-IB of the Income-tax Act, 1961, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)
(ASI)4—Accounting for taxes on income, Losses under the head capital gains, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)
(ASI)5—Accounting for taxes on income, Tax holiday in a situation of u/s. 10A & 10B of the Income-tax Act, 1961, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)
(ASI)6—Accounting for taxes on income, minimum alternate tax (u/s. 115JB of the Income-tax Act, 1961) as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)
(ASI)7—Accounting for taxes on income, Disclosure of deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities in the balance sheet of a company, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)

Accounting Standards Interpretation (*Contd.*)

(ASI) 8—interpertation of the term near future, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21), 316(AS-23), 316(AS-27)
(ASI)9—Accounting for taxes on income, Virtual certainty supported by convicing evidence, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)
(ASI)10—borrowing costs, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-16)
(ASI)11—Accounting for taxes on income, in case of amalgamation, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-22)
(ASI)12—earnings per share, applicability of AS 20, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-20)
(ASI)13—Related party disclosures, interpreation of paragraphs 26 and 27, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
(ASI)14—Dislcosure of Revenue from Sales Transactions, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-9)
(ASI)15—Consolidated financial statements, notes to, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
(ASI)16—Accounting for investments in associates in consolidated financial statements, treatment of proposed dividend, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-23)
(ASI)17—Accounting for investments in associates in consolidated financial statements, adjustments to the carrying amount of investment arising from changes in equity, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-23)
(ASI)18—Accounting for investments in associates in consolidated financial statements, consideraton of potential equity shares for determining whether an investee in an associate, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-23)
(ASI)19—Related party disclosures, interpretation of the term intermediaries, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
(ASI)20—Disclosure of segment information, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-17)
(ASI)21—Related party disclosures, Non-executive directors on the board whether related parties, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
(ASI)22—Treatment of interest for determining segment expense, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-17)
(ASI)23—Related party disclosures, remuneration paid to key management personnel – whether a related party transaction, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
(ASI)24—Consolidated financial statements, definition of control, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
(ASI)25—Consolidated financial statements, exclusion of a subsidiary from consolidation, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
(ASI)26—Consolidated financial statements, accounting for taxes on income in, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
(ASI)27—interim financial reporting, applicability of, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-25)
(ASI)28—Consolidated financial statements, disclosure of parents/venturer's shares in post-acquisition reserves of a subsidary/jointly controlled entity, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21), 316(AS-22)

Accounting Standards, accounting for amalgamations, (AS-14), see *App.*316
Accounting for Investments in Associates in Consolidated Financial Statements, (AS-23), see *App.* 316
accounting for retirement benefits in the financial statements of employees, (AS-15), see *App.* 316
Accounting for Taxes on Income, (AS-22), see *App.* 316
borrowing cost, (AS-16), see *App.* 316
cash flow statements, (AS-3), see *App.* 316
Comparative study (Indian GAAP, IAS and US GAAP), see *App.* 322
Consolidated Financial Statements, (AS-21), see *App.* 316
construction contracts, (AS-7), see *App.* 316
contingencies and events occurring after balance-sheet dates, (AS-4), see *App.* 316
depreciation accounting, (AS-6), see *App.* 316
disclosure of accounting policies, (AS-1), see *App.* 316
Discontinuing Operations, (AS-24), see *App.* 316
Earnings per share, (AS-20), see *App.* 316
Financial Reporting of Interests in Joint Ventures, (AS-27), see *App.* 316
fixed assets, (AS-10), see *App.* 316
foreign exchange rates, changes in, (AS-11), see *App.* 316
Government grants, (AS-12), see *App.* 316
Guidelines on Compliance with Accounting Standards by Banks, see *App.* 62
Impairment of Assets, (AS-28), see *App.* 316
Intangible Assets, (AS-26), see *App.* 316
Interim Financial Reporting, (AS-25), see *App.* 316

Accounting Standards (*Contd.*)
International Accounting Standards, salient features, objectives and disclosure requirements, see *App.* 319
International Accounting Standards, sources of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP –US), see *App.* 321
investments, accounting for, (AS-13), see *App.* 316
leases, (AS-19), see *App.* 316
net profit or loss for the period, prior period items and changes in accounting policies, (AS-5), see *App.* 316
Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, (AS-29), see *App.* 316
related party disclosures, (AS-18), see *App.* 316
research and development, (AS-8), see *App.* 316
revenue recognition, (AS-9), see *App.* 316
Segment Reporting, (AS-17), see *App.* 316
valuation of inventories, (AS-2), see *App.* 316

Accounting Statements issued by ICAI, statement on amendments to schedule VI of the Companies Act, 1956, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-2)
statement on auditing practices, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-1)
statement on payment to auditors for other services, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-4)
statement on qualification in auditors reports, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-5)
statement on the Manufacturing and Other Companies Auditors Report Order, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-3)

Accounting System, study and evaluation of the accounting system and related internal control in connection with an audit (AAS-6), see *App.* 317

Accounting, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Accounts**"
Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, Guidance Note on Accounting for Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-62)
Securitisation, Guidance Note on Accounting for Securitisation, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-61)

Accounts, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Accounting Standards**", "**Annual Accounts & Balance Sheet**"
"**Books**",
"**Books of Accounts**"
"**Inspection of books of Accounts**"
Audit under section 115JB of The Income-tax Act, 1961, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-47)
Certification of Corporate Governance (As stipulated in clause 49 of Listing Agreement), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-46)
Companies (Official Liquidator's Accounts) Rules, 1965, see *App.* 28
Companies Liquidation Account Rules, 1965, see *App.* 29
consideration by Board of Directors, of, more than year at Annual General Meeting, s. 166, p. 1628
Format of Audit Report (Revised), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-58)
Format of Auditor's Report to the Board of Directors on consolidated Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-57)
Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, Accounting by Dot-com Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-45)
—, Accounting for Changing Prices, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-9)
—, Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-39)
—, Accounting for Depreciation in Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-25)
—, Accounting in Respect of Minimum Alternate Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-40)
—, Accounting Treatment for Excise Duty, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-8)
—, Accounting treatment for MODVAT/CENVAT, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-23)
—, Accrual Basis of Accounting, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-24)
—, Audit of Abridged Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-26)
—, Audit of Accounts of Members of Stock Exchanges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-16)
—, Audit of Cash and Bank Balance, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-34)
—, Audit of Debtors, Loans and Advances, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-32)
—, Audit of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-17)
—, Audit of Inventories, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-28)

Accounts (*Contd.*)
—, Audit of Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-30)
—, Audit of Liabilities, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-35)
—, Audit of Miscell. Expenditure shown in Balance Sheet, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-33)
—, Audit of Revenue, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-38)
—, Audit Reports/Certificates on Financial Information, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-37)
—, Auditing of Accounts of Liquidators, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-10)
—, Auditor's Report on Revised Accounts of Companies before Circulation to Shareholders, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-11)
—, Auditors Report in case of Nationalised Bank, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-22)
—, Availability of Revaluation Reserve, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-31)
—, Certificate to be issued by Auditors of a Company pursuant to Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-12)
—, Certification of Documents, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-27)
—, Duty Cast on the Auditors under section 45MA of the RBI Act, 1934, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-13)
—, Engagements to perform agreed upon procedures regarding Financial Information, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-44)
—, Engagements to review Financial Statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-42)
—, Format of the Audit Certificate, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-36)
—, Guarantees & Counter-Guarantees given by Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-4)
—, Important Issues arising from amendment of Schedule XIV, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-29)
—, issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-15)
—, Members' duties regarding Engagements involving Compiliation of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-41)
—, Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-2)
—, Provision for Liability for Taxation, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-6)
—, Provision for Proposed Dividend, Guidance Note on, as Issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-5)
—, Reports in Company Prospectuses, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-21)
—, Revision/Rectification of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-19)
—, section 293-A of the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-14)
—, Shortfall in the value of a Banks Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-7)
—, Signature on Statutory Audit Report, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-20)
—, Terms used in Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-1)
—, Treatment of Expenditure during Construction Period, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-18)
—, Treatment of Expenditure during Construction Period, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-18)
—, Treatment of Reserve Created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)
Guidance Note on Accountant's Report on Profit forecast and/or Financial Forecasts, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-52)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-62)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Oil and Gas Producing Activities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-60)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Securitisation, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, ee *App.* 318(B-61)
Guidance Note on Audit Engagement Letters, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-54)
Guidance Note on Audit of Accounts of Non-corporate entities (Bank Borrowers), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-53)
Guidance Note on Audit of Consolidated Financial Statement, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-63)
Guidance Note on Audit of Expenses, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-56)
Guidance Note on Audit of Miscellaneous Expenditure, 2003, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-64)
Guidance Note on Audit Reports and Certificates for special purposes, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-51)

Accounts (*Contd.*)
Guidance Note on Clarification on the Auditor's rights where clients and other Auditors seek access to their audit working papers, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-55)
Guidance Note on Revision of the Audit Report, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-59)
Guidance Note on Special Considerations in the Audit of Small Entities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-65)
Independence of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-48)
perquisites, valuation of, s. 154, p. 1581
Preparation of Financial Statements of letter-heads and stationery of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-50)
secretary, authentication by, s. 2(45), p. 80
Surprise Checks, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-49)
unutilised proceeds, treatment of, s. 61, p. 786

Accrual Basis, Guidance Note on Accrual Basis of Accounting, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-24)

'Accustomed to act', s. 7, pp. 170, 172

Acknowledgement of debts, • SEE UNDER **"Debt"**

Acquisition and Transfer of immovable property in India, FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of immovable property in India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 123

Acquisition of Immovable Property, Outside India, FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of Immovable Property Outside India) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 7/2000, see *App.* 112

Acquisition of Shares, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Amalgamation"** and **"Reconstruction & Amalgamation"**
deemed public company, applicability to, s. 108 -A, p. 1270
disinvestment in overseas market, on, s. 108, p. 1258
expression used under the section, meaning, s. 108-A, p. 1268
guiding factors for Government decisions, s. 108-B, p. 1272
restriction on, s. 108-A, p. 1266
time-limit for conveying approval, s. 108-A, p. 1271
without prior permission, s. 108A, p. 1270

Acquisition, SEBI Regularisation Scheme 2002 under SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 179

Acquisitions, Standardised Formats of Reports/Records, etc. in terms of Specific Provisions of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 178

Act, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Interpretation"** and **"Act, Application of"**
Act to override, memorandum articles, etc., s. 9, p. 176
acts not authorised by memorandum not binding on company, s. 13, p. 363
application of English Law, s. 1, p. 14
application to companies registered but not formed under previous companies laws, Jammu & Kashmir, s. 1, p. 10
—, Goa, Daman and Diu, s. 1, p. 10
—, Sikkim, s. 1, p. 10
commencement and extent of, s. 1, p. 1
conflict of provision with other laws void, s. 9, p. 178
consolidating and amending, s. 1, p. 9
construction of, s. 1, p. 10
—, Amending and Consolidating, s. 1, p. 11
—, case-law of different statute when relevant, s. 1, p. 23
—, departments instruction, admissible for construction, s. 1, p. 20
—, of words, s. 1, p. 10
contemporary Legislation in U.K., s. 1, p. 13
interpretation of, s. 1, p. 15
nature and scope of, s. 1, p. 10
purposive construction, of, s. 1, p. 11

Act, Application of, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Act"**
memorandum and articles Misinterpretation of, s. 1, p. 15
memorandum and articles—interpretation of, override effect, s. 9, p. 176
nature and scope of, s. 1, p. 10
overriding effect of provisions of Reserve Bank of India Act, s. 58-A, p. 723
reference to Reports of Committees, etc., s. 1, p. 16

Act, Application of (*Contd.*)
retrospective effect of, s. 1, p. 18
short title, s. 1, p. 1

Actionable claim, debentures, Consumer Forum and issue of, s. 2(12), p. 42
judicial scrutiny, bar of, s. 10-FP, p. 277
meaning of, s. 10FP, p. 276
Tribunal, power to seek assistance of CJM/DM, s. 10-FP, p. 275

Actions, minority shareholders, by s. 10, p. 188

Acts of Directors, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Director validity of act"**

Actual authority, Directors, s. 46, p. 596

Additional directors, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Director"**
annual general meeting, adjournment of, effect, s. 166, p. 1629

Addresses, Registrar of Companies in different States and of Regional Directors and Bench Officers, see *App.* 148
Company Law Board and its Bench Offices, see *App.* 145
Department of Company Affairs and its field officer, viz., Regional Directors, Registrars of Companies, Official Liquidators and Pay and Accounts Officers, see *App.* 148

Adjourned Meeting, s. 191, p. 1791
points to be noted about, s. 175, p. 1698
quorum, for want of, s. 174, p. 1690
resolutions passed, s. 191, p. 1791

ADRs/GDRs, Investment in ADRs/GDRs by Mutual Funds, *Press Release, Ref. No. PR 206/99, dated 3-9-1999,* see *App.* 185(3)
two way fungibility of, s. 72, p. 875

Advertisement, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Publication"**
Advertisement for Rights Post Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
closing register of members or debenture-holders, s. 154, pp. 1581, 1582
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
deposits not to be invited without, s. 58-A, p. 715
document will be deemed to be duly served on the day of, s. 53(3), pp. 623, 627
issue of, SEBI Guidelines, 2000 Chap. V, see *App.* 162
prospectus of, s. 65, p. 811
—, form for public issue, s. 56, p. 650
—, provisions, to what extent applicable, s. 58-A, p. 745
provision relating to prospectus to apply to, s. 58-A, p. 746
resolutions requiring special notice, s. 190, p. 1789
SEBI Guidelines, public issue, s. 66, p. 813

Advisor, officer as, s. 2(30), p. 59

Advocate, Company Secretary not to practice as, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
declaration filing in connection with registration of memorandum and articles, s. 33(2), p. 469

Affidavit, Stamp duty on Declaration, Table of, see *App.* 136

Agent, authentication of documents, by, s. 54, p. 628
authentication of documents, proceedings, by, s. 54, p. 628
Common Seal acting through, s. 48, p. 609
Companies (Appointment of Sole Agents) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 27
notice to, service as, s. 51, p. 621
restriction on appointment of ex-managing agent, s. 204A, p. 1889

Agent's signature, as that of company, s. 54, p. 629

Aggrieved person, appeal by, against CLB order, s. 10-F, pp. 240, 242
appeal filed by, s. 10FQ, p. 280
when can file an appeal against Company Law Board Order, s. 10F, p. 240
who is, s. 10-FQ(1), p. 280

Agreement Form, listing, s. 73, p. 913

Agreement, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Contract**"
agreement of all members treated as resolution, s. 192, p. 1792
articles of association, outside, s. 36, p. 533
becoming member, s. 41, p. 545
filing of, registrar with, harmonisation of practices, s. 192, p. 1796
filing with Registrar required in certain cases, s. 192, pp. 1792, 1796
oral, for becoming hereunder, s. 41, p. 547
registration of, necessary in certain cases, s. 192, p. 1792
transfer of shares, shareholders private, s. 111, p. 1326
writing required for membership, s. 41, p. 546

Agriculture, (IAS 41), see *App.* 319

Allocation, specific economic activity, s. 20, p. 422

Allotment Letters, Regd. Post, to be issued by, s. 73, p. 901

Allotment of debentures, letters of, registered post, to be sent by, s. 53, p. 627

Allotment of securities, basis of, SEBI guidelines, s. 73, p. 915

Allotment of shares, s. 72, p. 837 *et seq.*
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Allotment**" and "**SEBI Guidelines, 2000**"
ab initio void, when, s. 71, p. 836
agreement to allot specifically enforceable, s. 72, p. 840
allotment to companies with non-resident interest, s. 81, p. 1033
—, foreigners, s. 81, p. 1035
application for, s. 72, p. 837
—, money, separate bank account to be kept in, s. 73, p. 897
—, refund of application money, s. 73, p. 899
—, withdrawal of, s. 72, p. 842
application money, s. 69(3), p. 826
application, lapse of, s. 72, p. 842
avoidance by applicant, s. 71, p. 837
beyond authorised capital, rectification, s. 111, p. 1355
call up of issue price in cases of public issues, s. 69, p. 831
cash payment what amounts to, s. 75, p. 931
communication, s. 69, p. 829
conditions for, s. 69, p. 824
consideration other than cash, contract to be reduced to writing, s. 75, p. 934
contravention of other laws, s. 71, p. 837
—, improper motive, s. 71, p. 837
delay in, issue of allotment order, same certificate & refund order, s. 73, p. 899
—, issue of letters, appeal against, s. 111, p. 1361
—, lapse of application, s. 71, p. 836
directors' liability to compensate, s. 71, p. 837
donation, by way of, prohibited, s. 70, p. 834
effect of, s. 72, p. 841
estoppel against rescission, s. 71, p. 837
forfeited shares, reallotment of, s. 108, p. 1238
fractional shares of, s. 75, p. 935
improper motive in, s. 71, p. 837
in discharge of debts, s. 81, p. 1035
irregular, s. 71, p. 834
—, allotment, effect of and remedy, s. 71, p. 835
—, directors' liability to compensate, s. 71, p. 837
—, remedy of applicant, s. 71, p. 834
letter of, registered post, to be sent by, s. 53, p. 627
—, deemed delivery, s. 69, p. 830
—, Stamp Duty, on, see *App.* 135
listing with stock exchange, time-limit for, s. 73, p. 889
manner of avoiding, s. 71, p. 837
manner of reckoning fifth, eighth and tenth days, s. 74, p. 927
meaning of, s. 75, p. 932
measure of damages on rescission, s. 71, p. 837
minimum subscription, s. 69, pp. 824, 828
minors, allotment to, s. 72, p. 840

Allotment of shares (*Contd.*)
no allotment without application, s. 72, p. 837
not possible, without application, s. 71, p. 837
offer to public, s. 69, p. 831
option, failure to exercise rectification, s. 111A, p. 1375
oral application and allotment, s. 72, p. 841
—, SEBI instructions in case of, s. 69, p. 831
oversubscribed public issues, s. 69, p. 831
oversubscriptions, SEBI Guidelines, s. 69, p. 831
payment in cash, what is, s. 75, p. 931
prohibition of, in what cases, s. 69, p. 824
promoters, reimbursing, for expenses, s. 75, p. 932
ratification of irregular, s. 71, p. 836
reckoning days for, s. 74, p. 927
rectification of register, issue in violation of conditions, s. 111, p. 1355
refund of application money, delay in, appeal against, s. 111, p. 1361
refund of excess money computing date of, interest purposes for, s. 73, p. 893
refund orders, delay in, s. 73, p. 899
repudiation of membership, s. 72, p. 842
return as to, s. 75, p. 933
SEBI Guidelines, s. 73, p. 902
—, in cases of oversubscription of public issues, s. 69, p. 831
shares and debentures to be dealt with on Stock Exchange, s. 73, p. 886
statement in lieu of prospectus, accuracy in statement, s. 70, p. 833
statutory violations, in, s. 111, p. 1356
stock exchange eligibility, s. 73, pp. 886, 887
stock exchange refusal, refund of application money, rate of interest, s. 73, p. 891
stockinvest for, s. 73, p. 894
theft of refund orders, measures to prevent, s. 73, p. 902
underwriters to, application not necessary, s. 72, p. 842, s. 76, p. 941

Allotment Procedure, Basis of Allotment Procedure (*Clause* 7.6.1.1.(c)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XVIII, *App.* 162

Allotment to renounce, s. 81(1)(c), p. 1036

Allotment, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Allotment of Shares**"
application lapse on undue delay, s. 71, p. 836
avoidance of, where permission to deal not granted by stock exchange, s. 73(1), p. 886
basis of, on over-subscription, see Chap. VII, VIII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
bonus shares, vesting of, s. 75, p. 934
Compliance Certificate, return of, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 75, p. 936
consideration being not cash, when can be interfered with, s. 75, p. 932
consideration other than cash, partnership assets, transfer, s. 75, p. 932
—, reimbursement of promoters expenses, s. 75, p. 932
directors duty in, s. 69, p. 830
effect contrary to, s. 41(2), s. 41, p. 549
equality of treatment, of members, s. 36, p. 531
FII's, preferential allotment by private placement, s. 81, p. 1071
forfeited shares, exception as to, s. 75, p. 935
irregular, is not dispute under Consumer Protection Act, s. 81, p. 1040
meaning of, s. 75, p. 933
members, to, equal basis on, s. 36, p. 531
minimum subscription, not necessary when, s. 71, p. 836
—, requirement as to, s. 69(1) and (5), p. 828
Partnership assets, transfer of, in consideration, s. 75, p. 932
post by, s. 69, p. 830
preferential basis, reservations for, s. 81, p. 1053
preferential, non residents, issue of shares, s. 81, p. 1071
proceeding for setting aside, declaratory suit, s. 62, p. 802
promoters, reimbursing their expenses by share allotment, s. 75, p. 932
proper authority by, s. 69, p. 830
public announcement of scheme, s. 69, pp. 824, 831
registration of contracts constituting title to, s.75(1)(b), p. 928
requirements and manner as to manner of reckoning fifth day, eighth day, tenth day, s. 74, p. 927

Allotment (*Contd.*)
restrictions on commencement of business and exercise of powers of borrowing unless to the extent of minimum subscription made, s. 149(1)(a), p. 1554
return as to, s. 75, p. 935
return, filing of, extension of time, power of ROC, s. 75, p. 934
stamp duty, payment of contract to be in writing, s. 75, p. 934
statement *in lieu* of prospectus, prohibition without, s. 70, p. 832
transfer of letters of, s. 108, p. 1218
ultra vires, s. 69, p. 830
unsubscribed portion of capital, out of, s. 81, p. 1022

'Alter', 'Alteration', s. 2, p. 23, s. 2(1A), p. 31
definition of, s. 2(1A), p. 31

Alteration of Articles, adoption of new set of regulations, s. 31, p. 460
benefit of company, for, s. 31, p. 458
breach of contract, in, s. 31, p. 460
—, liability to damages, s. 3 1, p. 460
capital, increasing member's liability to contribute, s. 38, p. 540
CLB power to order, s. 31, p. 464
consent, agreement by, s. 31, p. 462
converting public company into private company, s. 31, p. 465
copies issued to contain, s. 39, p. 542
directors, increase in number, s. 31, p. 462
effect of, s. 38, p. 540
injunction to restrain, s. 31, p. 459
irregular, s. 31, p. 464
limits of power of, s. 31, p. 457
members how far bound, s. 38, p. 541
memorandum, against, s. 31, p. 462
notice of, s. 31, p. 464
—, meeting for, s. 31, p. 464
notice, as to, s. 173, p. 1681
procedure, Secretarial Action Points, s. 31, p. 466
public company, conversion into private, s. 31, p. 465
—, converted into private, Government approval, s. 31, p. 465
ratification of directors' irregular acts, s. 31, p. 464
—, mistake, for, s. 31, p. 462
resolution, altering, s. 192, p. 1794
—, omnibus to amend several articles, s. 31, p. 464
resolutions for, s. 192, p. 1797
retrospective alterations, s. 31, p. 463
—, effect, s. 31, p. 463
scope of power of, s. 31, p. 457
special resolution required for, s. 31, p. 456
statutory power of, s. 31, p. 457
unanimous, agreement by, s. 31, p. 462, s. 189, p. 1788

Alteration of Capital, s. 94, p. 1134
cancellation of shares, not taken up, s. 94, p. 1139
—, registration fee on cancellation followed by increase, s. 94, p. 1140
companies limited by shares, s. 94, p. 1134
consolidation of shares, s. 94, p. 1138
—, conversion, etc., s. 95, p. 1143
—, conversion, etc., s. 9 5, p. 1143
European community directives and economic legislation, s. 94, p. 1137
increase by, s. 94A, pp. 1141, 1142
—, of, s. 94, p. 1135
limited company's power as to, s. 94, p. 1134
reduction by, s. 100, p. 1148
Registrar notice to, s. 94, p. 1140
stock, conversion of shares into, s. 94, p. 1139
sub-division of shares, s. 94, p. 1139

Alteration of class rights, majority needed for, s. 106, p. 1176

Alteration of memorandum, s. 16, p. 374
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Memorandum of Association**"
additional clauses, of, s. 16, p. 376
alteration without reference to CLB, s. 17, p. 394
alteration without reference to Company Law Board, of name of State of Madras and State of Mysore, ss. 15A and 15B, p. 374
carrying on a new and totally independent business, s. 17, p. 384
Central Government, satisfaction of, s. 17(3), p. 379
change of place of registered office, s. 17, p. 386
CLB, confirmation by, s. 17, p. 382
—, order, appeal against, s. 18, p. 402
—, power of, s. 17, p. 382
—, refusal to revive order appeal against, s. 19, p. 404
CLBs lapse order, revival of, s. 19, p. 404
conveniently or advantageously combined with existing business, s. 17(1)(d), p. 390
conversion of public company into private company by, s. 31, p. 465
copies issued after date, to contain, s. 40, p. 543
copy of order, time, extension of, s. 19, p. 404
creditors, interest of, discretion of CLB, s. 17, p. 384
—, position of, s. 17, p. 392
delay in filing, condonation of, s. 19, p. 405
department's views as regards alteration of objects, s. 17, p. 385
discretion of Company Law Board, s. 17, p. 384
effect of filing order without accompanying documents, s. 18, p. 401
efficient functioning, for new business, for, s. 17, p. 383
English law, difference, s. 17, p. 381
extension of time, application before CLB, s. 18, p. 402
extent of alteration, s. 17, p. 381
failure to register, effect of, s. 19, p. 402
lapsed order, application before CLB for revival, s. 19, p. 404
local area of operations, enlargement or change of, s. 17, p. 386
'main purpose', s. 17, p. 386
members how far bound, s. 38, p. 541
memorandum of, to attain main purpose, s. 17, p. 386
name clause, with respect to, s. 16, p. 376
Nidhi company, conversion into, CLB discretion, s. 17, p. 385
object clause, changes in 1996, s. 17, p. 381
objection by creditors of group companies, s. 17, p. 393
objection of creditors, s. 17, p. 393
objections by employees, s. 17, p. 393
objects clause, of, s. 17, p. 382
objects, amalgamation for, notice to creditors, s. 17, p. 392
—, diversification of, s. 17, p. 385
—, procedure of, Secretarial Action Points, s. 17, p. 395
—, wholly new, for a wholly different business, s. 17, p. 392
obtaining copy of order, time, extension of, s. 19, p. 404
procedure for, s. 17, p. 394
registered office, alteration registration of, s. 18, p. 400
—, change from one state to another, s. 17(2), p. 379
—, change of, s. 17, p. 286
—, clause, change in, to avail loans, s. 17, p. 389
registration of, s. 18, p. 399
—, effect of failure to register, s. 19, p. 402
—, exclusion of time, for taking copies, s. 18, p. 400
—, extension of time, application for, s. 18(4), p. 401, s. 19, p. 403
—, limit of time to register, s. 18, pp. 399, 400
share capital, with respect to, s. 16, p. 377
special resolution for, s. 17, p. 377
special resolution necessary for, s. 17, p. 381
spelling and grammatical mistake, rectification of, s. 16, p. 376
time for filing order, extension of, s. 19, p. 403
time limit not prescribed for filing CLB order, s. 18, p. 402
time-limit for registering alteration, s. 18, p. 399

Alteration of name, prior approval, s. 21, p. 424

Alteration of objects, s. 13, p. 382 • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Alteration of Memorandum" and "Objects clause"**
banking companies, of, s. 17, p. 393
Deptt's policy, s. 17, p. 385
procedure of, Secretarial Action Points, s. 17, p. 395

Alteration of rights of special classes of shares, s. 106, p. 1175
dissentient shareholder's rights of, s. 107, p. 1181

Alteration, Article of Association, • SEE UNDER "**Article of Association**"
definition of, s. 2(1A), p. 31
directors' limited liability, of, s. 16, p. 375
liability of directors, of, s. 16, p. 375
memorandum of, confirmation of two resolutions in one petition, s. 17, p. 382
Registered Office, change of place from one state to another, s. 17, p. 377

Amalgamation, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Reconstruction & Amalgamation**"
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Accounts**"
Accounting for Amalgamations, (AS- 14), see *App.* 316
alteration of memorandum, for, s. 17(1)(f),(g), p. 379, 382, 392
—, with any other company or body of persons, s. 17(1)(g), p. 379
alteration of objects, for, notice to creditors, s. 17, p. 392
financial assistance, to purchase of own shares, s. 77, p. 961
issue of shares, under scheme of, s. 81, p. 1042
purchase of own shares, scheme under, s. 77, p. 961
transfer of shares, nominee to, s. 77, p. 961

Amendments, Act, s. 1, p. 1
amendment of object clauses, s. 13, p. 353
—, to resolutions at general meetings, s. 189, p. 1773
Companies Act, of, s. 1, p. 1
retrospective effect, s. 1, p. 18
unanimous consent to resolution, need for, s. 189, p. 1787

American Depository Receipts, s. 72, p. 875
generally, s. 72, p. 875
mutual funds, investment by, in, s. 72, p. 867
overseas market, disinvestment of shares in, s. 72, p. 876

Analytical Procedures, (AAS-14), see *App.* 317

'And Reduced', s. 102 (3), p. 1170
addition of, to name of company, s. 102, p. 1170

Annual Accounts, approval at adjourned meeting, s. 166, p. 1628

Annual General Meeting, s. 166, p. 1616 *et seq*
accidental omission to give notice, s. 172, p. 1668
accounts, approval by AGM, before filing with ROC, s. 166, p. 1626
additional directors, effect of adjournment, on, s. 166, p. 1629
adjourned meeting, laying of accounts, to be held within extended time, s. 166, p. 1627
—, place of holding, s. 166, p. 1620
—, public holiday held on, notice necessary, s. 166, p. 1630
adjourned, additional directors, effect on, s. 166, p. 1629
adjournment of, for want of accounts, s. 166, p. 1627
annual accounts and Balance-Sheet, failure to get audited, no excuse, s. 166, p. 1623
—, not ready, if, s. 166, pp. 1621, 1626
annual audited accounts, laying before, filing with ROC, before, s. 166, p. 1626
application to Company Law Board for, s. 167, p. 1638
bank closing days, not holidays, s. 166, p. 1618
business hours, during, s. 166, p. 1618
business of, s. 173(a), p. 1671
calling necessary, whether accounts ready or not, s. 166, pp. 1624, 1626
cancelling meeting, s. 166, p. 1628
Central Government may exempt, with regard to holding of, s. 166(2), proviso, p. 1617
Central Govt., power of exemption from requirement, s. 166, p. 1630
Chairman, power to appoint, s. 167, p. 1638
CLB order and year of meeting, s. 167, p. 1638
—, directions, s. 167, p. 1633

Annual General Meeting (*Contd.*)
—, power to call, s. 167, pp. 1636, 1638
—, Secretarial Action Points for holding, procedure, s. 167, p. 1639
CLB, power to call is exclusive, s. 167, p. 1636
—, power to call, delegation of, s. 167, p. 1636
Company Law Board not calling meeting, no power to give directions, s. 167, p. 1637
company not functioning, no defence, s. 162, p. 1597
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance notes & check list, s. 166, p. 1631
compliance of formalities regarding, s. 166, p. 1626
consideration of accounts of more than one year at, s. 166, p. 1628
continuing offence in not calling, s. 168, p. 1642
convening of, s. 166, pp. 1616, 1621
date of, fixed by articles, s. 166, p. 1618
default in holding, member can apply for an order, but not the company, s. 167, p. 1635
default, continuing offence, s. 168, p. 1642
default, dual offence, s. 166, p. 1620
—, in holding, s. 166, p. 1629
—, in, liability for, s. 162, p. 1597
—, prosecution by ROC, meeting defence that AGM was held, s. 168, p. 1641
—, ROC duty to launch prosecution, s. 166, p. 1629, s. 168, p. 1641
defaulting persons, power to call cannot be used to help, s. 167, p. 1637
exemption by Central Government from certain provisions in regards to holding of, s. 166(2), proviso, p. 1617
extended beyond calendar year, not obviating next AGM, s. 166, p. 1624
extended, implications for next years meeting, s. 166, p. 1624
extension not allowed for laying accounts, s. 166, p. 1624
—, when audited accounts not ready, s. 166, p. 1624
extension of time, application for before expiry of time, s. 166, p. 1624
—, for holding—restriction on power of Registrar, s. 166, p. 1622
—, for holding—restriction on power of Registrar, s. 166, p. 1627
—, special reason for, s. 166, p. 1623
extraordinary general meeting calling on requisition, s. 169, p. 1642
failure to comply with, ss. 166 and 167, penalty for, s. 168, pp. 1639, 1640
fear of violence, inability to hold not a class, s. 166, p. 1629
first A.G.M. must be held within 18 months of incorporation, s. 166, p. 1616
first, delay in holding, s. 166, p. 1618
foreign business accounts of, placing in, s. 166, p. 1625
Government companies, exemption to, s. 166, p. 1630
held beyond statutory time, effect of, s. 166, p. 1621
holding of, not to be outside town of registered office, s. 166, p. 1619
holding of, within fifteen months of the last A.G.M., s. 166(1), p. 1616
holiday, not to be held on, s. 166, p. 1618
holidays, bank closing days are not, s. 166, p. 1618
infructuous order, s. 167, p. 1637
interval of period between, s. 166, p. 1620
length of notice, s. 171, p. 1656
meeting held on shorter notice, s. 171, p. 1659
member's resolutions, circulation of, s. 188, p. 1768
municipal limit, with, s. 166, p. 1620
not less than 21 days, s. 171, p. 1657
notice of, s. 166, p. 1616
one member constituting a meeting, s. 167, p. 1634
outsiders present at meetings, s. 177, p. 1719
over-all purpose served in calling, s. 167, p. 1637
penalty for default in holding, s. 168, pp. 1639, 1642
place of holding, s. 166, p. 1618
—, adjourned meeting, s. 166, p. 1620
post or municipal limits, within, s. 166, p. 1620
postponing meeting, s. 166, p. 1628
power of CLB to call, s. 167, p. 1636
private company by, s. 166, p. 1622
public holiday, banks closing days are not, s. 166, p. 1618
—, not to be held on, s. 166(2), pp. 1617, 1618
Registrar may extend time for, by three months, s. 166(1) Proviso, s. 385, p. 1617
resolution, withdrawal of, s. 189, p. 1776

Annual General Meeting (*Contd.*)
right of the individual member to challenge validity of, s. 10, p. 195
Secretarial Action Points, holding of, procedure, s. 166, p. 1631
Secretarial Standards (SS-2), s. 166, p. 1632
special business, insufficient notice of, s. 173, p. 1676
—, matters coming within adoption of new set of articles, s. 173, p. 1681
statutory requirement, s. 165, p. 1612
technical grounds, meeting not in validated on, s. 171, p. 1658
time for holding, extension by ROC, s. 166, p. 1622
—, implication of time, s. 166, p. 1620
time for, may be fixed, s. 166(2) proviso, pp. 1617, 1618
time-limit, s. 166, p. 1625
—, s. 166 read with s. 166, p. 1625
two AGMs, same day, on, s. 166, p. 1628
uniform accounting year, extension of time for, s. 166, p. 1626
voting rights and date of meeting, s. 166, p. 1629
voting rights on last day of holding, s. 166, p. 1629
when annual accounts not ready, s. 166, p. 1624

Annual Return, s. 159, p. 1588 *et seq.*
AGM not held, filing of, s. 159, p. 1591
amendment of, s. 161, p. 1596
annexure to, what certificates to be, s. 161, p. 1594
by company having share capital, s. 159, p. 1588
—, no share capital, s. 160, p. 1593
certificates to be annexed to by private companies, s. 43A, p. 583
certification of, mandatory ceiling, s. 161, p. 1596
company without share capital by, s. 160, p. 1593
complaint, high court's power of quashing of, s. 162, p. 1599
Compliance Certificate, ICSI Guidance Note & Check List, s. 160, p. 1593
content of, s. 159, pp. 1588, 1593
copies of, to be kept at registered office, s. 163, p. 1601
copy or extract of, may be required or made by any one, s. 163(3), p. 1602
date for filing, after which penalty, s. 159, p. 1592
date of, s. 159, p. 1592
default due to non-holding of A.G.M., s. 168, p. 1640
—, due to failure in calling meeting, s. 162, p. 1597
—, in filing, continuing offence, s. 162, p. 1599
—, in filing, penalty for, s. 162, p. 1597
—, in, documents lodged in court, no defence, s. 162, p. 1598
—, in, plea of time-bar to be raised at the trial stage, s. 162, p. 1600
—, independent offence, s. 159, p. 1592
—, is not mere technical offence, s. 162, p. 1598
—, joint trial for, s. 162, p. 1600
—, offence at place where to be filed, s. 162, p. 1598
—, offence whether of continuing nature, s. 162, p. 1599
—, proof of, s. 162, p. 1598
—, reasons beyond control, due to, s. 162, p. 1597
—, shadow director, liability of, s. 162, p. 1597
default in filing not economic offence, s. 162, p. 1600
default in filing, disqualification of directors, s. 162, pp. 1590, 1597
—, penalty for, s. 162, p. 1601
defunct company, filing of, s. 159, p. 1591
delay in filing, payment of additional fee no exoneration of liability, s. 162, p. 1600
Departmental clarification, s. 159, p. 1592
directors, disqualification under s. 274(1)(g), s. 159, p. 1590
evidence, *prima facie*, s. 164, p. 1610
filing of full particulars, once in six years, s. 159, p. 1590
filing with Registrar, s. 159, p. 1589
—, where AGM not held, s. 159, p. 1591
—, where company not functioning, s. 159, p. 1591
foreign companies, applicable to, s. 159, p. 1592
Forms and Contents • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Schedule V**"
government company exempt from filing, s. 159, p. 1591
inspection of, s. 163, p. 1601

Annual Return (*Contd.*)
jurisdiction for purposes of default, s. 162, p. 1598
locality of shares, s. 163, p. 1603
mandatory ceiling on, certification, s. 161, p. 1596
mens-rea, how far requisite for liability for default, s. 162, p. 1600
micro film, filing on, s. 159, p. 1591
particulars in case of company with share capital, s. 159, p. 1588
penalty and interpretation, s. 162, p. 1597
—, for default, underlying object, s. 162, p. 1596
—, for failure, s. 162, p. 1596
place where to be kept, s. 163, pp. 1601, 1603
prima facie evidence, as, s. 159, p. 1592
prosecution for default, s. 162, p. 1598
purpose of filing, s. 159, p. 1590
requirement as to, s. 159, p. 1588
requirements of, s. 159, p. 1588
shadow director, liability for default in filing, s. 162, p. 1597
signatures to, by whole time secretary in practice, s. 161, p. 1595
technical offence, default, is not, s. 162, p. 1598
time for submission, s. 159, p. 1591
universal application of provisions, s. 159, p. 1592

Anomalous, s. 1, p. 11
construction, s. 1, p. 11
—, of words, leading to, s. 1, p. 11

Apparent authority, Directors, s. 46, p. 596

Appeal, against refusal to register transfer, s. 111, p. 1291
against refusal to register transfer, Stock Exchange, s. 73, p. 894
aggrieved person by an, against CLB order, s. 10F, pp. 240, 242
aggrieved person, filed by, before Tribunal, s. 10-FQ(1), p. 280
appeals against refusal to transfer shares in, s. 111(6), p. 1292
Appellate Authority for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 96
Appellate Authority for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Financial and Administrative Powers) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 97
Appellate Authority, Procedure for Filing Appeal before Appellate Authority, see *App.* 99
—, Procedure for Filing Interlocutory Applications before Appellate Authority, see *App.* 99
Central Government's appellate powers, s. 111, p. 1367
CLB decisions, against no inherent right, s. 10-F, p. 240
—, aggrieved person against, s. 10F, p. 240
—, instructions, s. 111 p. 1367
—, inter-State change of registered office, s. 18, pp. 286, 400
—, jurisdiction, s. 10F, p. 250
—, order, against, s. 10F, p. 240
—, scope of intervention, s. 10-E, p. 230
condoning delay, s. 111, p. 1367
consent order, against before Tribunal, s. 10-GF, p. 331
—, against, before CLB, s. 10F, p. 247
Debt Recovery Tribunal, secured creditor to file before, s. 4A, p. 137
decision of Tribunal, from, s. 10-FQ, p. 279
decision or order meaning of, s. 10F, p. 242
Depositories (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 203
Depositories Appeals to Central Government Rules, 1998, see *App.* 200
disposal of, within six months before NCLT, s. 10-FQ, p. 284
disqualification of directors, length of, against, s. 203, p. 1868
Double Bench, before, s. 10-F, p. 250
expeditious disposal of, s. 10-FQ, p. 279
Limitation Act, provisions applicable to, s. 10-GE, p. 323
limitation period for filing before or NCLT, s. 10-FQ, p. 281
memorandum, alteration order, against, s. 19, pp. 402, 405
—, alteration, against CLB's order, s. 17, p. 382
order of CLB, against, question of law, court's limited jurisdiction, s. 10F, p. 249
order or decision, from, NCLT, s. 10-FQ(2), p. 280
refusal by stock exchange to enlist, against, s. 73, p. 894

Appeal (*Contd.*)
right of, against refusal of stock exchange to list securities of public companies, s. 73, p. 894
rules for petition to CLB, against refusal of transfer of shares and debentures, s. 111, p. 1367
SEBI (Appeal to Central Government) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 152
SEBI Appellate Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 153
Securities Contracts (Regulations) Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal Rules, 2000, see *App.* 248
Single Bench, before, s. 10F, p. 250
single judge before, s. 10-GF, p. 334
sufficient cause, entertained by Appellate Court on, s. 10-FQ, p. 281
Supreme Court, to, s. 10-GF, p. 324
transfer of shares, who can file, s. 111, p. 1336

Appellate Authority for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 96

Appellate Tribunal, appeal from order of Tribunal, expeditious disposal by, s. 10-FQ, p. 279
Chairperson, protection of action taken in good faith, s. 10-FZ, p. 291
—, removal of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, resignation of, s. 10-FU, p. 287
—, salary, allowances of, s. 10-FW, p. 289
—, suspension of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, term of office of, s. 10-FT, p. 287
Chartered Accountant, representation by, s. 10-GD, p. 322
Civil Procedure Code, procedural powers under, s. 10-FZA, p. 304
company secretary, representation by, S. 10-GD, p. 322
constitution of, s. 10-FR, p. 285
contempt of court, power to punish for, s. 10-G, p. 307
definition of, s. 2(1B), p. 23
Evidence Act, applicability of, s. 10-FZA, p. 305
interim relief, power to grant, s. 10-FZA, p. 306
meaning of, s. 2(1B), p. 32
members, removal of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, resignation of, s. 10-FU, p. 287
—, salary-allowances of, s. 10-FW, p. 289
—, suspension of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, term of office of, S. 10-FT, p. 287
order, communication of, s. 10-FQ, p. 284
procedure and powers of, s. 10-FZA, p. 293
Procedure Rules, 2000 (SEBI), see *App.* 153
Public Servant, Chairperson to be, s. 10-FY, p. 290
Securities Contracts (Regulations) Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal Rules, 2000, see *App.* 248
staff of, s. 10-GA, p. 307
vacancy in, s. 10-FS, p. 286

Appendices, • SEE UNDER "**Table of Contents**"

Applicability, Companies Act, of, s. 1, p. 10

Application for Shares, abridged prospectus to be supplied with, s. 56 (3), p. 645
amount payable on, s. 69(3), p. 824
application money, refund of, s. 73, p. 899
conditional, s. 72, p. 841
distribution of, s. 56, p. 645
issue of two forms with one abridged prospectus, s. 56, p. 646
lapse of, undue delay in allotment, s. 71, p. 836
minimum number, to be applied for, s. 72, p. 839
procedure, SEBI, guideline on, s. 69, p. 831
repayment of, s. 69(5), p. 824, s. 73(3), p. 888
underwriters, allotment to, application not necessary, s. 76, p. 941
withdrawal of, s. 72, p. 842

Application Form for Banker to an issue, date stamp and continuous serial number, fixation of, s. 56, p. 664

Application form, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Shares**"
nationality of applicant, declaration of, s. 56, p. 647
NRIs, for shares, s. 56, p. 647
See also under "*Shares*", s. 56, p. 647

Application form (*Contd.*)
shares for, applicants bank account number mandatory, s. 56, p. 647
shares for, PAN/GIR number, disclosure of, s. 56, p. 748

Application money, allotment of shares, s. 69(3), p. 826
checklist for refund of, s. 73, p. 903
closure of bank account, s. 73, p. 903
default in refunding, rate of interest, s. 73, p. 894
injunction against, withdrawal, s. 71, p. 836
issue price, ratio to, s. 69, p. 831
payment of, mode, s. 69, p. 827
refund of, s. 69(5), p. 824, s. 73, p. 899
—, SEBI Guidelines, s. 73, pp. 857, 901
—, to NRI, s. 73, p. 902
refund orders, seizure of, s. 73, p. 904
restriction on use of, s. 73(3A), p. 898
SEBI Guidelines, as to share application, s. 69, p. 831
SEBI guidelines, on, s. 69, p. 831
separate bank account to be kept in, s. 73, p. 897
transfer to Investor Protection and Education Fund, s. 73, pp. 903, 905
unclaimed, transfer to Investor Education and Protection Fund, s. 73, p. 903

Application of Section 159 to Foreign Companies Rules, 1975, see *App.* 30

Application, Companies (Fees on Applications) Rules, 1999, see *App.* 5
cancellation of variation of rights, for, s. 106, p. 1177
confirmation of reduction of capital, for, s. 101, pp. 1164, 1165
fees on, under, Company Law Board (Fees on Application and Petitions) Rules, 1991, see *App.* 6
shares, for allotment of, s. 72, p. 837
transfer of shares, for, s. 109, p. 1285

Appointment of Compliance Officer, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162

Appointment of Directors, Companies (Appointment of Small Shareholders' Directors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 40

Appointment, Chairperson, Appellate Tribunal, s. 10-FX, p. 289
Companies (Appointment and Qualifications of Secretary) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 7
Companies (Appointment of Sole Agents) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 27
deemed public company, effect of conversion, on managerial personal on, s. 43-A, p. 580
firm or body corporate to office or place of profit, s. 204, p. 1886
judicial member, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FC, p. 261
Members, Appellate Tribunal, s. 10-FX, p. 289
President, Appellate Tribunal, s. 10-FX, p. 289
receiver, effect on company, s. 137, p. 1523
receiver, to be entered in register of charges, s. 137, p. 1522
technical member, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FC, p. 261
underwriters, Lead Merchant Banker to issue, s. 56, p. 656

Arbitration award, rectification, final as to title when, s. 111, p. 1349

Arbitration clause/arbitration agreement/arbitration award, articles in, s. 36, p. 531
oral consent to, directors, by, s. 46, p. 591

Arbitration, intervention of court, with, s. 36, p. 531
statutory provision, reference under, s. 36, p. 532

Arrangement and compromise, financial assistance, purchase of own shares, s. 77, p. 961
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Compromise and Arrangement**"

Article of Association, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Memorandum of Association**"
Act to override, s. 9, p. 176
adoption of Table A, s. 28, p. 452
agreement outside, s. 36, p. 533
agreements, copies of what, to be annexed to, s. 192, p. 1792
allotment to members, equality of treatment, s. 36, p. 531

Article of Association (*Contd.*)
allotment, equality of treatment of members, s. 36, p. 531
alteration during the year, s. 31, p. 467
alteration, *bona fide* for benefit of Company, s. 31, p. 458
—, breach of contract, s. 31, p. 460
—, by unanimous agreement, s. 31, p. 462, s. 189, p. 1788
—, conflicting with memorandum, s. 31, p. 462
—, consent, by, s. 31, p. 462
—, filing with Registrar, s. 31, p. 466
—, for converting public company into private company, Central Govt. approval, s. 31, p. 465
—, for expelling member, Departmental view, s. 31, p. 460
—, for reconverting from public comp any into private company, s. 31, p. 466
—, for rectification of mistakes, s. 31, p. 462
—, increasing member's liability, s. 31, p. 462
—, —, to contribute capital, s. 38, p. 541
—, injunction to restrain, s. 31, p. 459
—, irregular, s. 31, p. 464
—, liability to damages, s. 31, p. 460
—, limits of power to alter, s. 31, p. 457
—, limits upon, s. 31, p. 457
—, Memorandum against, s. 31, p. 462
—, not to deprive minority, s. 31, p. 459
—, notice of alteration, s. 31, p. 464
—, Notice of meeting for, s. 31, p. 464
—, of, s. 31, p. 456
—, on converting public into private company, s. 31, p. 465
—, retrospective, s. 31, p. 463
—, rules and forms for, s. 31, p. 465
—, Secretarial Action Points, s. 31, p. 466
—, statutory power, s. 31, p. 457, s. 36, p. 535
—, to be noted in every copy, s. 40, p. 543
—, to increase number of directors, s. 31, p. 462
—, unanimous agreement by, s. 31, p. 462
alternatives regarding, s. 28, p. 452
amendment, omnibus resolution to amend several articles, s. 31, p. 464
application of Table A, s. 28, p. 452
arbitration in terms of, s. 36, p. 531
benefit of company, *bona fide* for, as a whole, s. 31, p. 458
binding force, s. 36, p. 529
—, company member relationship, s. 36, p. 530
—, third parties, s. 36, p. 534
binding upon company, s. 36, p. 530
change of, new set of regulation, s. 31, p. 460
CLB power to order alternation, s. 31, p. 464
club, registered as company, s. 26, p. 449
common seal, official for use abroad, authorisation, s. 50, p. 616
company bound by, s. 25, p. 445, s. 36, p. 530
company director relationship, s. 36, p. 533
company limited by guarantee shall have, s. 27, p. 450
compliance, declaration of, s. 33, p. 470
conflict of provision with other laws, void, s. 9, p. 178
conflict with Act, other laws, invalidity, s. 26, p. 448
construction of, s. 26, p. 449, s. 36, p. 538
constructive notice of, s. 36, p. 535
—, reference of rule in England, s. 36, p. 537
constructive notice, rule of, s. 13, p. 358
contents of, s. 2(2), p. 32
—, prescribing regulations of the company, s. 26, p. 446
contract as, s. 36, p. 529
contractual force, of, s. 36, p. 530
converting a public into a private void without Government approval, s. 31(1), pp. 456, 465
copies of, supply of, to members, s. 39, p. 542
corrections in, power of attorney for, s. 15, p. 372
declaration to be filed by advocate etc., in connection with registration of, s. 33(2), p. 469
definition, s. 2(2), pp. 23, 32

Article of Association (*Contd.*)
description, meaning of, s. 30, p. 455
directors to work according to, s. 26, p. 450
effect of registration, s. 34, p. 476
effect of, s. 36, p. 528
—, of alteration, s. 38, p. 540
esolutions altering, s. 192, p. 1797
expulsion of member by Board, amendment in article for such power, *ultra vires*, s. 31, p. 460
form of, s. 29, p. 453, s. 30, p. 455
Forms in Tables C, D, E shall be adopted by a company not limited by shares in, s. 29, p. 453
guarantee company, form of, s. 29, p. 454
guarantee, company limited by, of Schedule I, Tables C and D and E, s. 29, p. 453
—, company must have, s. 27, p. 451
how far a contract, s. 36, p. 530
indemnity clause in, void, s. 201, p. 1844
interpretation of, s. 1, p. 15, s. 26, p. 448
interpretation of, s. 36, p. 538
invalidity by reason of conflict, with Act, laws, s. 26, p. 448
irregular acts under ratification, s. 31, p. 464
lacunae, removal of, s. 28, p. 453
liability of members, increasing, not binding, s. 38, pp. 540, 541
matters requiring provision in, s. 28, p. 453
members how far bound, s. 36, pp. 529, 530
memorandum, compared with, s. 26, p. 447
—, of assn, Subordinate to, s. 26, p. 447
—, relation to, in, s. 26, p. 448
mistake in, s. 31, p. 462
money payable by members under, debts as, s. 36, p. 538
nature and scope of, s. 26, p. 447
notice of meeting, for, alteration, s. 31, p. 464
notice, articles as, s. 36, p. 535
notice, of alteration, s. 31, p. 464
NRI, general permission by RBI to subscribe, s. 12, p. 346
power to alter, statutory, s. 31, p. 457
printing of, s. 30, p. 455
private company must have, s. 27, p. 451
private company, registration of, s. 28, p. 453
provision for increase of capital, effect of, s. 94, p. 1134
provision in, conflicting with laws, effect, s. 9, p. 178
provisions in conflict with laws, s. 9, p. 178
public company may have, s. 26, p. 446
public company, adoption of Table 'A', s. 28, p. 453
rbitration, reference under statutory provisions, s. 36, p. 532
registration of, effect of, s. 36, p. 528
registration of, s. 33, p. 469
regulations as, s. 26, p. 446
resolutions, copies by what, to be annexed to, s. 192(2), pp. 1792, 1794
retrospective alterations, s. 31, p. 463
Schedule of Stamps to be affixed on, table of, see *App.* 134
scope of, s. 26, p. 447, s. 31, p. 457
signature of, s. 30, p. 455
signature, description of signatories, s. 30, p. 455
special resolution required for altering, s. 31, p. 456
stamp duty on, s. 30, p. 455
stamp on, improperly stamped, s. 30, p. 455
Stock Exchange company, of, s. 26, p. 449
Table A, • SEE UNDER "**Schedule**"
Table 'A' in lieu of, s. 28, p. 452
terms by implication, s. 26, p. 450
transfer of shares of private company, restrictions not to include prohibition, s. 3, p. 97
transfer of shares, violation of, in, s. 108, p. 1218
unlimited company, forum of, s. 29, p. 454
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Schedule**"
—, shall have, s. 26, p. 446
void if contrary to provisions, of Act, s. 9, p. 176, s. 9, p. 178
xerox copies, not allowed, for filing, s. 15, p. 373

Asset Management Companies, authorised capital of, s. 20, p. 420
Guidelines for establishing, s. 20. p. 420
incorporation of companies, s. 20, p. 420
name, availability of, s. 20, p. 420
registration of, s. 33, p. 475
SEBI approval of, s. 20, p. 420
SEBI Guidelines, s. 72, p. 844
SEBI Guidelines, see *App.* 191
SEBI Regulations, s. 72, p. 844

Assets and Liabilities, Statement of Assets and Liabilities (*Clause* 6.18.7(vi)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XI, *App.* 162

Assets Liability Management (ALM) System, Guidelines, for NBFC, see *App.* 60

Assets, acquisition by transmission, s. 109, p. 1286
assistance in seizure of, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 137
Contingent Assets, Accounting Standards, Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, (AS-29), see *App.* 316
FEM (Remittance of Assets) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 115
fixed assets, (AS-10), see *App.* 316
Holding Company, transfer of, s. 4, p. 125
Impairment of Assets, (IAS 36), see *App.* 319
Impairment of Assets, Accounting Standards, (AS-28), see *App.* 316
Intangible Assets, (IAS 38), see *App.* 319
Intangible Assets, Accounting Standards, (AS-26), see *App.* 316
Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-2)
revaluation of, issue of bonus share, s. 81, p. 1030

Associate, Accounting for Investments in Associates in Consolidated Financial Statements, (AS-23), see *App.* 316
definitions of, s. 2(4), p. 24

Associated Company, piercing the veil in, s. 34, p. 508

Association of Persons, Bombay Stock Exchange, as, s. 11, p. 339
person, meaning, s. 11, p. 336

Association, exceeding certain number of persons—prohibition of, s. 11, p. 335
fees for registration, see *App.* 133
illegal, prohibited, s. 11, p. 336
not for profit, s. 11, p. 338, s. 25, p. 434
not to be formed with more than 10 persons or 20 persons for business of banking unless registered as a company or formed pursuant to law, s. 11, p. 335
restriction on number of members, s. 11, p. 335
unregistered, liability of members of, s. 11, p. 335

Attorney, common seal, acting through, s. 48, p. 609
management through, s. 197-A, p. 1829
power of, Stamp Duty on, see *App.* 136
seal necessary for appointing, s. 50, p. 616

Attribution of knowledge, when not attributable, to company, s. 34, p. 494

Audit Certificate, Format of the Audit Certificate to be issued by Statutory Auditor on cash flow statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-36)

Audit Engagement Letters, Guidance Note on Audit Engagement Letters, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-54)

Audit Engagement, Terms of Audit Engagement, (AAS-26), see *App.* 317

Audit Evidence, audit evidence (AAS-5), see *App.* 317

Audit Materiality, (AAS-13), see *App.* 317

Audit of Liabilities, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-35)

Audit Planning, (AAS-8), see *App.* 317

Audit Report, Format of Audit Report (Revised), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-58)
Guidance Note on Revision of the Audit Report, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-59)
Signature on Statutory Audit Report, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-20)
Guidance Note on Audit Reports and Certificates for special purposes, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-51)

Audit Sampling, (AAS-15), see *App.* 317

Audit working papers, Guidance Note on Clarification on the Auditor's rights where clients and other Auditors seek access to their audit working papers, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-55)

Audit, accounting estimates (AAS-18), see *App.* 317
accounting estimates (AAS-18), materiality (AAS-13), see *App.* 317
—, planning (AAS-8), see *App.* 317
analytical procedures, (AAS-14), see *App.* 317
Audit Considerations Relating to entities using service Organisations, (AAS-24), see *App.* 317
audit evidence (AAS-5), see *App.* 317
Audit under section 115JB of The Income-tax Act, 1961, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-47)
Auditing in a Computer Information Systems Environment, (AAS-29), see *App.* 317
basic principles governing an (AAS-1), see *App.* 317
Certification of Corporate Governance (As stipulated in clause 49 of Listing Agreement), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-46)
Communications of Audit Matters with those charged with Governance, (AAS-27), see *App.* 317
Companies (Branch Audit Exemption) Rules, 1961, see *App.* 25
Comparatives, (AAS-25), see *App.* 317
Cost Audit (Report) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 26
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Cost Audit**"
documentation (AAS-3), see *App.* 317
expert, using the work of an (AAS-9), see *App.* 317
External Confirmations, (AAS-30), see *App.* 317
financial statements regarding the appropriateness of the going cocern assumption (AAS-16), see *App.* 317
financial statements, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in Audit of Financial Statements (AAS-21), see *App.* 317
Format of Audit Report (Revised), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-58)
Format of Auditor's Report to the Board of Directors on consolidated Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-57)
fraud and error (AAS-4), see *App.* 317
Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, Accounting by Dot-com Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-45)
—, Accounting for Changing Prices, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-9)
—, Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-39)
—, Accounting for Depreciation in Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-25)
—, Accounting in Respect of Minimum Alternate Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-40)
—, Accounting Treatment for Excise Duty, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-8)
—, Accounting treatment for MODVAT/CENVAT, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-23)
—, Accrual Basis of Accounting, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-24)
—, Audit of Abridged Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-26)
—, Audit of Accounts of Members of Stock Exchanges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-16)
—, Audit of Cash and Bank Balance, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-34)
—, Audit of Debtors, Loans and Advances, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-32)
—, Audit of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-17)
—, Audit of Inventories, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-28)
—, Audit of Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-30)
—, Audit of Liabilities, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-35)
—, Audit of Miscell. Expenditure shown in Balance Sheet, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-33)
—, Audit of Revenue, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-38)
—, Audit Reports/Certificates on Financial Information in Offer Documents, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-37)
—, Auditing of Accounts of Liquidators, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-10)

Audit (*Contd.*)

Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, Auditor's Report on Revised Accounts of Companies before Circulation to Shareholders, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-11)
—, Auditors Report in case of Nationalised Bank, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-22)
—, Availability ofRevaluation Reserve for issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-31)
—, Certificate to be issue by Auditors of a Company pursuant to Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-12)
—, Certification of Documents for Registration of Charges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-27)
—, Duty Cast on the Auditors under section 45MA of the RBI Act, 1934, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-13)
—, Engagements to perform agreed upon procedures regarding Financial Information, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-44)
—, Engagements to review Financial Statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-42)
—, Format of the Audit Certificate to be issued by Statutory Audtior on cash flow statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-36)
—, Guarantees & Counter-Guarantees given by Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-4)
—, Important Issues arising from amendments of Schedule XIV to the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-29)
—, issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-15)
—, Members' duties regarding Engagements involving Compilation of Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-41)
—, Members' Duties regarding Engagements involving Compilation of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)
—, Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-2)
—, Provision for Liability for Taxation, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-6)
—, Provision for Proposed Dividend, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-5)
—, Reports in Company Prospectuses, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-21)
—, Revision/Rectification of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-19)
—, section 293-A of the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-14)
—, Shortfall in the value of a Banks Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-7)
—, Signature on Statutory Audit Report, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-20)
—, Terms used in Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-1)
—, Treatment of Expenditure during Construction Period, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-18)
—, Treatment of Reserve Created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)
Guidance Note on Accountant's Report on Profit forecast and/or Financial Forecasts, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-52)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-62)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Oil and Gas Producing Activities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-60)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Securitisation, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-61)
Guidance Note on Audit Engagement Letters, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-54)
Guidance Note on Audit of Audit of Non-corporate entities (Bank Borrowers), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-53)
Guidance Note on Audit of Consolidated Financial Statement, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-63)
Guidance Note on Audit of Expenses, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-56)
Guidance Note on Audit of Miscellaneous Expenditure, 2003, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-64)
Guidance Note on Audit Reports and Certificates for special purposes, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-51)
Guidance Note on Clarification on the Auditor's rights where clients and other Auditors seek access to their audit working papers, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-55)
Guidance Note on Revision of the Audit Report, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-59)
Guidance Note on Special Considerations in the Audit of Small Entities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-65)

Audit (*Contd.*)
Independence of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-48)
Initial Engagements-Opening Balances, (AAS-22), see *App.* 317
internal auditor, relying upon the work of an, (AAS-7), see *App.* 317
knowledge of business (AAS-20), see *App.* 317
objective and scope of the audit of financial statements (AAS- 2), see *App.* 317
Preparation of Financial Statements of letter-heads and stationery of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-50)
quality control of (AAS-17), see *App.* 317
Related Parties, (AAS-23), see *App.* 317
representations by management (AAS-11), see *App.* 317
sampling (AAS-15), see *App.* 317
statement on auditing practices, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-1)
—, study and evaluation of the accounting system and related internal control in connection with an audit (AAS-6), see *App.* 317
statement on auditing practices, subsequent events, of (AAS-19), see *App.* 317
—, using the work of another (AAS-10), see *App.* 317
—, payment to auditors for other services, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-4)
—, the responsibility of joint auditors, as issued by ICAI, SAP-12, see *App.* 317
Surprise Checks, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-49)
Terms of Audit Engagement, (AAS-26), see *App.* 317
The Auditor's Report on Financial Statements, (AAS-28), see *App.* 317

Auditing & Assurance Standards, analytical procedures, (AAS-14), see *App.* 317
Audit Considerations Relating to entities using service Organisations, (AAS-24), see *App.* 317
audit evidence (AAS-5), see *App.* 317
audit materiality (AAS-13), see *App.* 317
audit of accounting estimates (AAS-18), see *App.* 317
audit planning (AAS-8), see *App.* 317
audit sampling (AAS-15), see *App.* 317
audit, basic principles governing an (AAS-1), see *App.* 317
Auditing in a Computer Information Systems Environment, (AAS-29), see *App.* 317
auditors responsibilities in the audit of financial statements regarding the appropriateness of the going concerns assumption (AAS-16), see *App.* 317
Communications of Audit Matters with those charged with Governance, (AAS-27), see *App.* 317
Comparatives, (AAS-25), see *App.* 317
documentation (AAS-3), see *App.* 317
expert, using the work of an (AAS-9), see *App.* 317
External Confirmations, (AAS-30), see *App.* 317
fraud and error (AAS-4), see *App.* 317
Initial Engagements-Opening Balances, (AAS-22), see *App.* 317
internal auditor, replying upon the work of an, (AAS-7), see *App.* 317
knowledge of the business (AAS-20), see *App.* 317
objective and scope of the audit of financial statements (AAS- 2), see *App.* 317
quality control for audit work (AAS-17), see *App.* 317
Related Parties, (AAS-23), see *App.* 317
representations by management (AAS-11), see *App.* 317
responsibility of joint auditors (AAS-12), see *App.* 317
study and evaluation of the accounting system and related internal control in connection with an audit (AAS-6), see *App.* 317
subsequent events (AAS-19), see *App.* 317
Terms of Audit Engagement, (AAS-26), see *App.* 317
The Auditor's Report on Financial Statements, (AAS-28), see *App.* 317
using the work of another (AAS-10), see *App.* 317

Auditing Practices, Financial Statements, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in Audit of Financial Statements (AAS-21), see *App.* 317

Auditing Practices, Guidance Note on Statement on Auditing Practices, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-1)
statement on auditing practices, see *App.* 318(A-1)

Auditor's Certificate, Form of Auditor's Certificate Regarding Profit Forecast (*Clause* 6.12.2(iii)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XIV, *App.* 162

Auditors report, financial information on, offer documents in, s. 56, p. 643

Auditors report (*Contd.*)
Guidance Note on Audit Reports/Certificates on Financial Information of Offer Documents and Auditor's Report to Management, as issued by ICAI, Note on Reports in Company Prospectuses, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-21)
Guidance Note on Audit Reports/Certificates on Financial Information of Offer Documents and Auditor's Report to Management, as issued by ICAI, Auditor's Report on Revised Accounts of Companies before Circulation to Shareholders, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-11)
Manufacturing and other Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 1988, see *App.* 24
Non-Banking Financial Companies Auditor's Report (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998—RBI Directions to Auditors of NBFC's Press Release 1997/98/573, dated 3-1-1998, see *App.* 53
Statement on the Manufacturing and Other Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 1988, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-3)

Auditors, analytical procedures, (AAS-14), see *App.* 317
Audit Considerations Relating to entities using service Organisations, (AAS-24), see *App.* 317
Auditing in a Computer Information Systems Environment, (AAS-29), see *App.* 317
avoidance of provisions relieving liability of, s. 201, p. 1844
Communications of Audit Matters with those charged with Governance, (AAS-27), see *App.* 317
Companies (Auditor's) Report/Order, 2003, see *App.* 24
Comparatives, (AAS-25), see *App.* 317
External Confirmations, (AAS-30), see *App.* 317
Financial Statements, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in Audit of Financial Statements (AAS-21), see *App.* 317
Independence of Auditors, Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-48)
Initial Engagements-Opening Balances, (AAS-22), see *App.* 317
internal auditor, relying upon the work of an, (AAS-7), see *App.* 317
liability of, provisions relieving from, to be void, s. 201, p. 1844
meeting, notice of, s. 172, p. 1668
officers for purposes of certain sections, s. 2, p. 60
Preparation of Financial Statements of letter-heads and stationery of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-50)
provision relieving, from liability, void, s. 201, p. 1844
Related Parties, (AAS-23), see *App.* 317
responsibility in the audit of financial statements, etc. (AAS-16), see *App.* 317
responsibility of joint auditors (AAS-12), see *App.* 317
statement on payment to auditors for other services, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-4)
statement on the responsibility of joint auditors, as issued by ICAI (AAS-12), see *App.* 317
statutory report to be certified by, s. 165(4), p. 1613
Terms of Audit Engagement, (AAS-26), see *App.* 317
The Auditor's Report on Financial Statements, (AAS-28), see *App.* 317
using the work of another (AAS-10), see *App.* 317

Authentication, certification of genuineness, s. 54, p. 628
documents and proceedings, s. 54, p. 628
documents, secretary prescribed authority as, s. 2(45A), p. 77
CMM or DM, in favour of, s. 10FP(2), p. 276

Authorised Capital, increase of, Secretarial Action Points for, s. 94, p. 1141
publication of, s. 148, p. 1553
share certificate, not to be mentioned in, s. 148, p. 1553

Authority, 'Actual,' 'Apparent,' and 'Ostensible,' of directors, s. 46, p. 596
ascertainment, persons dealing with company, s. 46, p. 594
clarification of, s. 46, p. 596
contracts for, representation by company, s. 46, p. 599
forgery, liability of company, s. 46, 598
Institute of Company Secretaries as, s. 2(45), p. 30, 70, 80
person acting under company's, s. 46, p. 596

Avoidance of Officer's Liability, provisions, void, s. 201, p. 1844

Bad delivery, shares return of, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1377

Balance Sheet, Audit of Miscell. Expenditure shown in Balance Sheet, Loans and Advances, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-33)
contingencies and events after balance-sheet dates, (AS-4), see *App.* 316
Events After the Balance Sheet Date (IAS 10), see *App.* 319

Balance Sheet (*Contd.*)
Statement on the Amendments to Schedule VI to the Companies Act, 1956, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-2)
brokerage to disclose, s. 76, p. 950
commission earned by a consignee, to disclose, s. 76, p. 950
miscellaneous expenditure, commission, brokerages, etc. to be disclosed, s. 76, p. 946

Ballot, Postal, ICSI Guidance Note on Passing of Resolutions by Postal Ballot, see *App.* 312(4)
postal, passing of resolutions, by, s. 192-A, p. 1805

Bank, Investment in shares/debentures by, s. 81, p. 1078

Bankers to An Issue, SEBI (Bankers to An Issue) Rules, 1994, see *App.* 219
SEBI (Bankers to an Issue) Regulations, 1994, see *App.* 220

Bankers' Books Evidence Act, 1891, see *App.* 291

Banking Account, separate account for application monies before allotment, s. 73(3), p. 888
separate account for application monies before allotment, s. 73(3), p. 897

Banking Companies (Nomination) Rules, 1985 (Relevant Extract), see *App.* 55
Circular No. DNBS.(PD) CC No. 27/02.05/2003-04, dt. 28-7-2003, see *App.* 55

Banking companies, acquisition of shares, for controlling interest, s. 111, p. 1305
alteration of objects, s. 17, p. 393
corporative bank registered as, s. 35, p. 528
definition, s. 2(5), pp. 25, 32
discount issue, by, s. 79, p. 998
extraordinary general meeting, explanatory statement, requirement of, s. 169, p. 1650
formation of, with more than ten persons to be registered, s. 11(1), p. 335
illegal, when, s. 11, p. 336
issue of shares, payment of commission, etc., s. 76, p. 940
lending money, for purchase of own shares, s. 77, p. 957
meaning, s. 2(5), pp. 25, 32
name, change of, s. 21, p. 423
transfer of shares of, s. 111A, p. 1389
transfer of shares, CLB has no jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1304, *et seq.*
voting rights, s. 87, p. 1120
—, RBI Guidelines, s. 87, p. 1120

Banking sector, foreign investments, Guidelines of RBI, s. 72, p. 855

Bankrupt, Bankruptcy, beneficial owner to declare ownership of shares, s. 187-C, p. 1757
beneficial owner to declare ownership of shares, s. 187-C, p. 1762
declaration of name of beneficial owner, s. 18 7-C, p. 1757

Bankrupt/Insolvent, Benami Transactions (Prohibition) Act, 1988, see *App.* 289

Banks Investments, Shortfall in the value of a Banks Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-7)

Banks, Accounting Standards, Guidelines on Compliance with, by, see *App.* 62
Disclosures in the Financial Statements of Banks and Similar Financial Institutions (IAS 30), see *App.* 319
Guidelines on Compliance with Accounting Standards by Banks, see *App.* 62
securities, operation in, guidelines for, s. 111, p. 1306

Basis of Allotment, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162

Belated documents, fees, additional, rates of, see *Sch. X*, p. 1141

***Benami* transaction,** transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1320

Benami Transactions (Prohibition) Act, 1988, see *App.* 289

Bench, Tribunal, notification by Central Government, s. 10-FL(4), p. 269

Beneficial holder, duty to disclose trust holding, s. 187-C, p. 1760

Beneficial holding, dividend, obligation not affected, s. 187-C, p. 1763

Beneficial holdings by company, investments in own name, application of requirement, s. 49, p. 615

Beneficial Interest, agents and principles, s. 187-C, p. 1761
apprehension as to hinderance in trading, s. 18 7-C, p. 1762
banks, declaration by, s. 187-C, p. 1761
benami, shareholding, s. 187-C, p. 1760
benamidar, declaration by, s. 187-C, p. 1762
blank transfer, s. 187-C, p. 1761
Companies (Declaration of Beneficial Interest in Shares) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 18
declaration by person not having, object, s. 187-C, p. 1760
duty to declare, when arises, s. 187-C, p. 1760
failure to declare consequences of, s. 187-C, p. 1762
guardians of minors, declaration by, s. 187-C, p. 1761
Hindu undivided family, declaration by, s. 187- C, p. 1761
individual shareholding, s. 187-C, p. 1760
legal or juristic person, s. 187-C, p. 1760
mutual fund, position of, s. 187-C, p. 1762
partnership firms declaration by, s. 187-C, p. 1760
registered member, executor under will, s. 187- C, p. 1761
shares held in official capacity, s. 187-C, p. 1762
shares, particulars of, s. 187-C, p. 1765
transfer not registered, s. 187-C, p. 1761

Beneficial owner, Depositories Act, s. 2A, p. 91

Beneficial shareholders, rights and liabilities of, s. 153, p. 1572

BIFR, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Sick Industrial Companies**"
(Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 94
Appellate Authority for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 96
Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Financial and Administrative Powers) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 95
Regulations, 1987, see *App.* 93

Bills of Exchange, etc. co.'s liability, s. 47, p. 603
how made, accepted or endorsed on behalf of company, s. 47, p. 603
mode of making, by company, s. 47, p. 603
name, publication of, defect, liability, s. 147, p. 1550
power to make, s. 47, p. 603

Binding force of memorandum and articles, arbitration, intervention of court, with, s. 36, p. 533

Blank Transfers, s. 108, p. 1200 *et seq.*
death, of transferor, effect s. 108, p. 1201
gift of shares, under, s. 108, pp. 1999, 1202
restriction on currency, s. 108, pp. 1188, 1200

Blue Ribbon Committee on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(9)

Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 94

Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction Regulations, 1987, see *App.* 93

Board of Directors, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Directors**"
definition, s. 2(6), pp. 25, 32
Disclosures of Particulars in the Report of, Rules, 1988, see *App.* 22
ICSI Guidance Note on Meetings of the Board of Directors, see *App.* 312(2)
ICSI Guidance Notes on Meetings of the Board of Directors (SS-1), see *App.* 311
meaning of, s. 2(6), p. 25
minutes of proceedings, s. 193, p. 1807
officer who is in default, when, s. 5, p. 140
transfer of shares, delegation of powers as to, s. 108, p. 1216

Body Corporate, aggregate of persons, s. 2(7), p. 33
applicability of, s. 11, p. 342
co-operative societies not covered, s. 2(7), p. 33
corporation is a, s. 2(7), p. 25

Body Corporate (*Contd.*)
defined, s. 2(7), pp. 25, 33
holding company or subsidiary, both may be, s. 4(6), p. 115
includes company incorporated outside India, s. 2(7), p. 25
incorporated company distinguished, s. 2(7), p. 33
institution, can be regarded as, s. 2(7), p. 33
manager, as not, s. 2(24), p. 54
meaning of, s. 2(7), p. 25, s. 2, p. 33, s. 4, p. 125
membership in its holding company forbidden, s. 42, p. 562
ONGC as, s. 2(7), p. 34
registered society not included, s. 2, p. 33
restrictions as to holding office of profit, s. 204, p. 1886
wider than company, s. 2, p. 33

Bonds, amount raised by issue of, not deposit, s. 58A, p. 742
floatation of, PSUs by, SEBI guideline, s. 117, p. 1431
tax free, guideline, SEBI, issue by public sector enterprises, s. 117, p. 1431
unsecured, as deposit, s. 2, p. 42

Bonus Issue, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Bonus Shares**"
guidelines, SEBI, s. 81, p. 1029
NRI's to, s. 81, p. 1034
NRI's under FEMA, s. 81, p. 1033
RBI, report to, by companies, s. 81, p. 1034
SEBI guidelines, s. 81, p. 1029, See SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XV, *App.* 162
Bonus issues by DFIs, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162

Bonus Shares, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Bonus Issue"**
advantage of issue, s. 81, p. 1027
allotment of, return to be filed, s. 75(1)(c)(i), p. 928
Availability of Revaluation Reserve for issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-31)
capital redemption reserve account may be applied in paying up, s. 80(5), p. 1004
English Law, position under, s. 81, p. 1030
ICAI's Guidance note on, s. 81, p. 1031
impact of, on value of shares, s. 81, p. 1027
issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-15)
issue of on revaluation of assets, SEBI clarification, s. 81, p. 1030
issue of revaluation of assets, SEBI guidelines, s. 81, p. 1030
Non-resident under FERA, Issue of, to, s. 81, p. 1033
NRI, issue to, s. 81, p. 1035
reserve, revaluation, ICAI's Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1031
return as to allotment, s. 75, p. 934
See Chap. XV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosures and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
share premiun account may be applied in paying up as fully paid, s. 78(2)(a), p. 988
transfer of shares, effect of, s. 108, p. 1208
vesting of, s. 81, p. 1028
what is, s. 81, p. 1026

Book Building Process, additional disclosures, s. 81, p. 1058
allotment procedure of, through public issue, s. 81, p. 1061
books and records, maintenance of, s. 81, p. 1063
continued listing, conditions for, s. 81, p. 1064
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
green shoe option in, s. 60B, p. 784
information memorandum, and, s. 60B, p. 781
issue of securities through 75%, s. 81, p. 1053
Issue of shares, through, s. 81, p. 1052
mode time frame, Sch. XXI, s. 81, p. 1064
model time frame, Sch. XXI, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1052
Model Time Frame, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXI, *App.* 162
offer for sale, deemed prospectus, SEBI Guidelines on, s. 64, p. 810
post allotment procedure, s. 81, p. 1063
process, offer to public through, s. 81, p. 1055
SEBI Guideline, on, s. 2(19B), p. 45
SEBI Guidelines relating to Book-Building Process, see Chap. XI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Book Building Process (Contd.)
SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1053
underwriting through, s. 56, p. 658

Books and Papers, s. 2(8), p. 25, s. 2(8), p. 34
book and documents, s. 2(8), pp. 25, 34
definition, s. 2(8), p. 25
includes vouchers, s. 2(8), p. 25, s. 2, p. 34
minutes of all meetings to be entered in to be kept for that purpose, s. 193, p. 1807
vouchers included, s. 2, p. 34

Books and Register, Non-Banking Financial Companies directions, maintained under, s. 2(8), p. 35
SEBI Guidelines, maintained under, s. 2(8), p. 35

'Books Debt', s. 125, p. 1487
changes on, requires, registration, s. 125(4) (d), p. 1473
deposits of negotiable instrument to secure an advance not a charge on, s. 125(7), p. 1473

Books of Account, definition of, s. 2(8), p. 25
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Accounts**"

Books, minutes, s. 193, p. 1807
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Accounts**", "**Books of Account**"

Borrowing and Lending in Rupees, FEM (Borrowing and Lending in Rupees) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 109

Borrowing Costs, (IAS 23), see *App.* 319
(AS-16), see *App.* 316

Borrowing or Lending in Foreign Exchange, FEM (Borrowing or Lending in Foreign Exchange) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 100

Borrowing, commencement of business, prior to, s. 149, p. 1554
intra vires, spending *ultra vires*, s. 13, p. 359
restrictions on exercise of powers, by company, s. 149, p. 1554
ultra vires, s. 13, pp. 357, 362

Branch Audit, Companies (Branch Audit Exemption) Rules, 1961, see *App.* 25

Branch Office, abroad, Indian companies, s. 2(9), p. 36
Central Government's power declare as not, an establishment, s. 8, p. 175
defined, s. 2(9), p. 25, s. 2, p. 35
establishment, not amounting to, s. 2(9), p. 36
foreign branch is not foreign concern, s. 2(9), p. 35
foreign branches • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Foreign Branch**"
foreign country, associated companies is not, s. 2(9), p. 36
foreign project sites, s. 2(9), p. 36
jurisdiction at, proceedings for, s. 10, p. 183
meaning of, s. 2(9), p. 35
NBFCs, closure of, s. 2(9), p. 36

Branch or Office or other place of Business, FEM (Establishment in India of Branch or Office or other place of Business) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 124

Breach of contract, transfer of shares, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1374

Brokers and Brokerage, s. 76, p. 946
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Stock Broker**"
balance-sheet to disclose, s. 76, p. 950
foreign brokers, acting for registered foreign institutional investors, SEBI guidelines, s. 76, p. 948
limit of, s. 76, p. 937
limit of, s. 76, p. 937
payment of, s. 76(3), p. 946
power to pay, s. 76, p. 937
power to pay, s. 76, p. 946
SEBI stock brokers and sub-brokers regulations, s. 76, p. 947
service tax on, s. 76, p. 950
stock exchange members, dealing in shares, on behalf of clients, precautions, s. 76, p. 948
transactions with clients, regulations for, s. 76, p. 948

Brokers, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Stock Broker"**
complaints, against, s. 76, p. 948
underwriter, misrepresentation, remedy against, s. 76, p. 945

Business Combinations, (IAS 22), see *App.* 319

Business Letters, name of company on, s. 147, p. 1547

Business, carrying on, with less than minimum members, s. 45, p. 588
commencement of, restriction on, s. 149, pp. 1554, 1558
contracts made prior to incorporation, s. 149, p. 1559
special, what is, s. 173, pp. 1673, 1676

Buy-back of securities, s. 77A, pp. 964, 970
book building process, by, open market through, s. 77A, p. 979
capital gains, tax on, s. 77A, p. 978
capital redemption reserve, transfer to, s. 77AA, p. 986
companies, general obligations of, s. 77A, p. 978
Company Secretary, destruction in presence of, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
conditions and safeguards, s. 77A, p. 971
declaration of solvency, s. 77A, p. 980
delisting not permissible on s. 77A, p. 973
employees stock option scheme, under, s. 77A, p. 979
extinguishment of securities purchased, s. 77A, p. 980
extinguishment, intimation of, s. 77A, p. 980
—, stock exchange, intimation to, s. 77A, p. 981
failure to complete, Board's report on, s. 77A, p. 973
FIIs, investment by, effect of, ceiling on, s. 77A, p. 976
listed companies prohibited to, reducing non-promoters' shareholding, s. 77A, p. 973
listed companies, of, s. 77A, p. 973
listing agreement conditions, s. 77A, p. 974
odd lots of, s. 77A, p. 979
open market from, stock exchange through, s. 77A, p. 978
permitted mode of, SEBI Regulations, s. 77A, p. 973
private company of, s. 77A, p. 978
Private Limited Company and Unlisted Public Limited Company (Buy-Back of Securities) Rules, 1999, see *App.* 12
prohibited modes of, s. 77B, p. 986
register of check list prescribed, s. 77A, p. 983
register of securities bought back, s. 77A, p. 981
return of, S. 77A, p. 981
return on, check list prescribed, s. 77A, p. 983
rules and regulations, relevant, s. 77A, p. 983
rules, private and unlisted companies, for, s. 77A, pp. 977, 981
same/kind of shares, issue of, s. 77A, p. 981
SEBI (Buy-Back of Securities) Regulations, 1998, see *App.* 176
SEBI Regulations, s. 77A, p. 973
secretarial action points, s. 77A, p. 985
securities not purchaseable, s. 77A, p. 975
stock exchange, prior and post intimation of Board Meeting, s. 77A, p. 974
sweat equity scheme, under, s. 77A, p. 979
tax implications, s. 77A, p. 976
tender offer, by, s. 77A, p. 973
transfer of shares, s. 77, p. 961
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Purchase of own Shares"** and **"Buy-back of Securities"**
unlisted public companies, s. 77A, p. 978

Bye-Laws, s. 36, p. 538
of the Kaira District Co-operative Milk Producers' Union Ltd., Anand, see *App.* 306

Cadbury Committee Recommendations on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(7)

Cadbury's Report, non-executive directors on, s. 197-A, p. 1832
secretary, advisory role, on, s. 2(45), p. 76

Calendar Year, financial year for insurance company same as, s. 2(17), p. 26
financial year for insurance company same as, s. 2, p. 49

Call on shares, compliance certificate, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 92, p. 1132
advance payment of, s. 91, p. 1131, s. 91, p. 845, s. 92, p. 1127
—, voting rights not affected, s. 92, p. 1133
advance, payment of, s. 92, p. 1133
call money, SEBI Guidelines, s. 91, p. 1131
call up of issue price, public issues in, SEBI Guidelines, s. 69, p. 831
death of member, effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
directors' shares, s. 91, p. 1129
dividend, in proportion to payment, s. 93, p. 1134
forfeiture and reisue of shares, s. 91, p. 1132
forfeiture, non-payment for, s. 108, p. 1236
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Forfeiture of shares**"
insolvency of member, effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
interest on call money and limitation, s. 91, p. 1130
invalid remedies of shareholders, s. 91, p. 1128
joint holders, s. 91, p. 1129
joint shareholders, payment of, s. 41, p. 553
members' liability in respect of, s. 91, p. 1128
notice of, s. 91, p. 1128
payment of, and set-off, s. 91, p. 1129
power to be exercised in company's interest, s. 91, p. 1127
SEBI Guidelines, s. 91, p. 1131
shareholders informal agreement, s. 91, p. 1127
transfer and forfeitures, effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
transfer and forfeitures, liability after, s. 108, p. 1208
uniform basis for, on same class, s. 91, p. 1127
unpaid share capital not called up, s. 92, p. 1133
valid call, requisites of, s. 91, p. 1127
voting right not exercisable, when unpaid, s. 178, p. 1721

Cancellation of resolutions, s. 189, p. 1777

Capacity Determination, Cost Accounting Standard, (CAS-2), see *App.* 326

Capital Gains Tax, reduction of capital, paying off by, s. 100, p. 1163

Capital issues, restrictions on, s. 117, p. 1420
SEBI control over, s. 56, p. 636
SEBI, control by, s. 56, p. 652

Capital Redemption Reserve Account, s. 80(5), p. 1004
redemption of preference shares o n, s. 80, p. 1003

Capital redemption reserve, s. 77AA, p. 986

Capital, alteration of, s. 94, p. 1134
authorised, not reduced on redemption of preference shares, s. 80(3), p. 1004
authorised, publication of, s. 148, p. 1553
Central Government order converting loan into, s. 94-A, pp. 1141, 1142
classes of, s. 86, p. 1108
clause, multiple currency in, s. 13(4)(a), p. 369
conversion of Government loan into, s. 94-A, pp. 1141, 1142
date of offer, s. 81, p. 1032
dividend not payable out of, payment of, in proportion to paid-up, s. 93, p. 1134
fee, increase of, s. 25, p. 445
further issue of, s. 81, p. 1016
increase of, s. 97, p. 1145
increase, alteration of articles to contribute more, s. 38, p. 542
memorandum to set out, s. 13(4)(a), p. 352
new issues, kinds of, s. 86, p. 1108
paid-up, s. 148, p. 1553
—, capital defined, s. 2(32), p. 29
power to accept unpaid share capital, though not called up, s. 92, p. 1133
preference share, meaning of, s. 85, p. 1103
preferential rights as to, s. 86, p. 1108
publication of, s. 148, p. 1553
redeemable preference shares, s. 80, p. 1003

Capital (*Contd.*)
reduction of, s. 100, p. 1148 *et seq.*
—, necessity of special resolution, s. 100, p. 1153
reserve, liability, s. 99, p. 1147
reserve, meaning and effect, s. 99, p. 1147
restructuring of, by paying dividend, s. 94, p. 1140
share, consolidation of, notice to be filed with Registrar, s. 95, p. 1143
—, kinds of, s. 86, p. 1108
subscribed, s. 148, p. 1553
—, and paid up, s. 148, p. 1553
uncalled, s. 92, p. 1133
variation of shareholders, right to, s. 106, p. 1175
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Alteration of Capital**"

Capitalisation of Profits, carrying business for acquisition of gain, s. 11, p. 337

Capitalisation Statement, Capitalisation Statement (*Clause* 6.18.7.(iii)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XIII, *App.* 162
Clarification Examples, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XX, *App.* 162
Directions by the Board, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVII, *App.* 162

Captive Consumption, Cost Accounting Standard, Cost of Production for, (CAS-4), see *App.* 326

Carry forward systems, SEBI Circular, s. 76, p. 950

Carrying on Business, for acquisition of gains, s. 11, p. 337

Cash and Bank Balance, Audit of Cash and Bank Balance, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-34)

Cash Flow Statements, (IAS 7), see *App.* 319

Casual Vacancy, categories of managerial personnel, s. 197-A, p. 1828
other modes of management, s. 197-A, p. 1828

Central Database, SEBI (Central Database of Market Participant) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 157

Central Excise and Salt Act, 1944, officer in default, under, s. 5. p. 158

Central Government and Regional Director, Functions and Powers of, under the Companies Act, 1956, see *App.* 141

Central Government, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Government**"
alteration of memorandum, power to registered transferred to, s. 19, p. 403
—, satisfaction as to, s. 17(3), p. 379
approval required for removal, change of name of company, s. 21, p. 423
Benches of Tribunal, notification on number of, s. 10-FL(4), p. 269
change of name of company, approval of, s. 21, p. 423
Companies General Rules and Forms, 1956, see *App.* 1
Companies Unpaid Dividend (Transfer to General Revenue Account of the Central Government) Rules, 1978, see *App.* 21
conferring jurisdiction on District Court, power as to, s. 10, p. 178
declaration, not recognising branch offices of companies, s. 8, p. 175
directing change of name of company, s. 21, p. 423
directions as to foreign register, s. 158(3), p. 1587
disproportionate rights on shares, power to exempt, s. 89, p. 1125
District Court, conferring jurisdiction on, s. 10, p. 178
exempting, certain old existing companies as regards excessive voting rights, s. 89, p. 1123
exemption, charitable associations from use of word 'limited', s. 25, p. 434
Forms, Returns, documents and agreements to be filed with the Registrars/Regional Director/ Central Government for which forms are prescribed, see *App.* 147
increase in minimum remuneration in certain case s, s. 198, p. 1835
licensing companies charitable, s. 25, p. 434
licensing companies not for profit, s. 25, p. 436
loans to companies, power to convert into equity, s. 81, p. 1044
management vested with, position of director, s. 2 (13), p. 47
minimum remuneration, increase of, s. 198, p. 1835
name, of company, change of, on directions, s. 22, p. 428

Central Government (*Contd.*)
name, of company, rectification of, on directions, Secretarial Action Points, s. 22, p. 432
power to apply to CLB for relief, condone delays, s. 19, p. 405
—, declare branch office as not, s. 8, p. 175
powers, Stock Exchange in reference to, s. 2(39), p. 65
public financial institution, power to notify, s. 4A, p. 134
Registered Office, change of place, continuation by, s. 17, p. 377
rules for issuing certificates to certain classes of, s. 113, p. 1404
section 25 Companies, articles empowering, to give directions, s. 25, p. 444
stock exchange, power of, to notify, s. 2(39), p. 57

Central Listing Authority, SEBI (Central Listing Authority) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 166

Central Registry, establishment of, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 137

Certificate of Incorporation, effect of illegal objects, s. 12, p. 347
unlawful objects not validated, s. 35, p. 526

Certificate, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Share Certificates**"
annual return, to be annexed to, s. 161, p. 1594
balance of shares, for, s. 112, p. 1393
change of name of company, of, s. 23, p. 432
commencement of business, for s. 149(3), p. 1556
conclusiveness of, s. 35, p. 524
evidence of title, s. 84, p. 1090
incorporation of company of, s. 34, p. 476
—, fresh, on registration of change of name, s. 23(1), p. 432
private company to annex, with annual return, s. 43-A, p. 583
public company to file, with annual return, s. 161(2)(a), pp. 1595, 1596
reduction of capital, s. 102, p. 1169
registration of charge, of, s. 132, p. 1514
shares, duplicate procedure for issue of, s. 84(2), p. 1095
—, limitation of time for issue of, s. 113, p. 1393
—, of, s. 84, p. 1090
—, *prima facie* evidence of title, s. 84, p. 1090
—, transfer instrument to be enclosed with, for registration, s. 108, p. 1185, 1216
time for issue of, share certificate, s. 113, p. 1393
transfer application, necessary to annex, to, s. 108, p. 1185

Certificate of commencement of business, • SEE UNDER "**Commencement of business**"

Certification of Transfer, debenture of, s. 112, p. 1392
guarantee, or warranty, does not amount to, s. 112, p. 1393
representation as a, liability for, s. 112, p. 1392
Secretarial Action Points for, procedure, s. 113, p. 1404
title no evidence of, s. 112, p. 1392

Certified Copies of Orders and Circulars, SEBI Guidelines for Issuing Certified Copies of Orders and Circulars, 2003, see *App.* 158

Chairman, s. 175, p. 1692 *et seq.*
absence of interest necessary, s. 175, p. 1697
adjournment, fair exercise of power, s. 175, p. 1702
—, meeting, some points to be noted, s. 175, p. 1698
—, power as to, s. 175, p. 1701
amendment of resolution, power as to, s. 175, p. 1703
appointment by court, s. 186, p. 1742
appointment of, by Courts (CLB), s. 175, p. 1693
casting vote of, meetings at, s. 175, p. 1694
declaration as to result of voting, s. 175, p. 1704
—, of result of voting, s. 178, p. 1721
defamatory matters, duty to prevent discussion, s. 175, p. 1697
discussion at general meeting, s. 175, p. 1697
disinterested to be, s. 175, p. 1697
duty of, s. 175, p. 1694
duty, to answer question at meeting, s. 175, p. 1702
election of, s. 175, p. 1692
expulsion, power of, s. 175, p. 1703

Chairman (*Contd.*)
general meetings, of, s. 175, p. 1692
impartial to be, s. 175, p. 1697
irregularity in procedure, judicial interference, s. 175, p. 1702
meeting in one room not necessary, s. 175, p. 1701
meetings of, casting vote at, s. 175, p. 1694
—, Hampel Committee report, s. 175, p. 1694
—, member need not be, s. 175, p. 1692
minutes signed by, s. 193 (1-A), p. 1807
poll may be ordered to be taken by, of his over motion or on demand, s. 179, pp. 1722, 1724
poll on the election of, rating of votes, declaration, s. 185, p. 1737
—, to be taken forthwith, s. 175, p. 1692
—, voting at, confidentiality of, s. 185, p. 1737
position of, s. 175, p. 1694
power of, adjourn general meeting, s. 175, p. 1698
—, conduct validity and adjournment of meeting, s. 175, p. 1699
—, to appoint & remove scrutineer on a poll, s.184(2), p. 1735
—, under common law, s. 175, p. 1696
power to withdraw resolution, s. 175, p. 1703
private company, position of, s. 175, p. 1702
privilege to express views, s. 175, p. 1698
removal of, s. 175, p. 1693
responsibility of, s. 175, p. 1694
Secretarial Standard (SS-2), s. 175, p. 1704
speech, publication of in newspaper etc., s. 175 p. 1704
sub-judice matter, duty to prevent discussion, s. 175, p. 1698
wrong decision, liability for, s. 175, p. 1703

Chairperson, Appellate Tribunal, removal of, S. 10-FV, p. 288
Appellate Tribunal, salary allowances of, s. 10-FW, p. 289
—, suspension of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, term of office of, s. 10-FT, p. 287
—, to be a public servant, s. 10-FY, p. 290
—, vacancy in office of, s. 10-FS, p. 286

Chandrashekhran Committee Report on Share Transfer Procedure, see *App.* 154

Change of Name, s. 24, p. 434
effect of, s. 23, pp. 432, 433
existing private limited company, s. 24, p. 434
guidelines, s. 21, p. 424
no objection required from Reserve Bank of India, in the case of a banking co., s. 21, p. 424
other formalities, s. 23, p. 434
registration of, s. 23, p. 432

Change of Registration of Company, unlimited as limited, s. 32, p. 468

Changes, charge includes mortgage, s. 124, p. 1466
crystalisation of, s. 124, p. 1469
date of notice of, s. 126, p. 1507
deposit of title deeds by, s. 125, p. 1466
fixed or floating, s. 124, pp. 1466, 1467
floating, s. 124, pp. 1466, 1469
—, becoming crystallised when, s. 124, p. 1469
—, holding subsidiary relationship, s. 124, p. 1471
future acquisition included, s. 124, p. 1466
meaning of, s. 124, p. 1466
mortgages, to include, s. 124, p. 1466
nature of, s. 124, p. 1466
notice of, s. 126, p. 1507

Changing Prices, Guidance Note on Accounting for Changing Prices, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-9)

Charged property, possession of, right to take, s. 117, p. 1424
sale of, true value, s. 117, p. 1423

Charges, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Register of charges" & "Registration of charges"**
abroad, property situate, s. 125, p. 1503
application of, Act to, under previous law, s. 145, p. 1541
—, prior charges, s. 145, p. 1541
application to CLB for condonation of delay in registration, s. 141, p. 1536
appointment of receiver or manager, entry in register of charges of, s. 137, p. 1522
assignments of book debts, s. 125, p. 1492
block discounting agreement, s. 125, p. 1494
book debt, assignment on, s. 125, p. 1492
—, meaning of, s. 125, p. 1487
—, on, described as fixed, s. 125, p. 1491
calls made but not paid on, requires registration, s. 125(4)(g), p. 1473
calls on, s. 125, p. 1502
certificate of registration, s. 132, p. 1514
—, registration, conclusive, s. 132, p. 1514
Certification of Documents for Registration of Charges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-27)
chairman's assurance to pay out of realisation, does not amount to, s. 125, p. 1474
charge, duties of, s. 125, p. 1503
checklist for forms and formalities guidance note by ICAI, s. 125, p. 1506
CLB's, power to grant relief in case of omission to file, s. 141, p. 1529
commission on debentures, particulars, as to, s. 129, p. 1511
company's duty regarding registration of, and rights of interested party, s. 134, p. 1518
company's Register of, s. 143, p. 1538
compliance certificate on creation/modification/satisfaction, s. 125, p. 1506
compliance certificate, copies of instruments creating, s. 136, p. 1521
condonation of delay in filing documents, s. 141, p. 1531
copies to be kept by company, s. 136, p. 1521
copy of memorandum of satisfaction to be furnished to company, s. 140, p. 1529
copyright or licence under it, on, requires registration, s. 125(4)(i), p. 1473
created by court order, registration of necessary, s. 125, p. 1484
Creation of Charge, in case of Debt Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
crystalisation of, s. 125, p. 1499
crystallisation of, automatic, of floating charges, s. 125, p. 1499
debentures, endorsement of registration of, on s. 133, p. 1517
—, issue of, for securing, requires registration, s. 125(4)(a), p. 1472
—, securing for, Secretarial Action Points, s. 128, p. 1510
—, securing for, Secretarial Action Points, s. 129, p. 1511
deposit of title deeds by, s. 125, p. 1476
distribution rights, on shares, s. 125, p. 1502
duty of company as to registration, s. 134, p. 1518
endorsement of, on debentures, s. 133, p. 1517
extension of time, comprising property within India, s. 141(3), p. 1530
—, for registration of comprising property outside India, s. 125, (5), p. 1473
filing of instrument, registrar's power condonation of delay, s. 125(1)(proviso), p. 1472
fixed or floating, categorisation of, s. 124, p. 1468
—, whether, s. 124, p. 1467
fixed, future debts over, s. 125, p. 1490
floating, on undertaking or property, or stock-in-trade, requires, registration, of, s. 125(4)(f), pp. 1473, 1495
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Floating charge"**
future debts over, s. 125, p. 1490
goodwill, on, requires registration, s. 125(4)(i), p. 1473
—, transfer of, whether, s. 125, p. 1502
hiring agreement, on proceeds of, s. 125, p. 1494
immovable property on, s. 125, p. 1486
index of, s. 131, p. 1514
inspection of, s. 130, p. 1511
—, instruments creating charge, s. 144, pp. 1540, 1541
instrument creating, to be kept at registered office, s. 136, p. 1521
insurance policies on, s. 125, p. 1492
issue of debentures, securing, s. 125, p. 1486
legal obligation to register, s. 125, p. 1505
lien on sub-freight as, s. 125, p. 1477
liquidator, co-existence indefinitely with receiver, s. 137, p. 1525

Charges (*Contd.*)
manager or receiver, appointment of, to be entered in register of, s. 137, p. 1522
memorandum of satisfaction, copy to company, s. 140, p. 1529
—, of, to be furnished to company, s. 140, p. 1529
modification of, s. 135, p. 1519
modification, checklist suggested by ICAI, s. 135, p. 1521
—, filing by chargeholder, s. 135, p. 1520
—, registration of Secretarial Action Points, s. 125, p. 1506
money secured by, to become immediately payable, when it becomes void, s. 125(3), p. 1472
mortgage, promise to create, is not present charge, s. 125, p. 1476
moveable property, on, s. 125, pp. 1494, 1495
non-registration effect of, s. 125, p. 1481
—, objection about, should be raised when, s. 125, p. 1481
particulars in case of series of debentures, s. 128, p. 1509
particulars, filing, compellable, s. 125, p. 1504
patent, on, requires registration, s. 125(4)(i), p. 1473
payment of, or satisfaction of, intimation to be given to Registrar by company, s. 138, p. 1526
penalties for default, s. 142, p. 1537
pledge of movables excluded, s. 125, p. 1494
possessory lien, s. 125, p. 1477
power to borrow, s. 125, p. 1484
priority of registered mortgage, s. 125, pp. 1483, 1501
procedure as to entry of, s. 138, p. 1526
properties movable & immovable, acquired subject to charge, s. 127, p. 1508
—, on, requires registration, s. 125(4)(c) & (e), pp. 1473, 1486, 1494
purchase of property subject to charge, s. 125, p. 1474
receiver or manager, appointment, etc., s. 137, p. 1522
—, effect on company, s. 137, p. 1523
—, sections 137 and 421 applicable to all, s. 137, p. 1524
receiver, co-existence indefinitely with liquidator, s. 137, p. 1525
rectification by CLB of omission or misstatement, s. 141, p. 1529
rectification of omission or misstatement by court, after liquidation, s. 141, p. 1532
—, exercise of power, s. 141, p. 1531
—, register by Company Law Board, s. 141, p. 1530
—, register, not to prejudice existing rights, s. 141, pp. 1531, 1533
register of, index to, s. 131, p. 1514
—, inspection of s. 144, p. 1540
—, rectification of, s. 132, p. 1517
—, rectification of, certain procedural aspects as to, s. 141, p. 1531
—, to be kept by company, s. 144, p. 1540
—, to be kept by Registrar, s. 130, p. 1511
Registrar, powers of, as to entering, s. 139, p. 1528
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Registration of charges**"
registration by liqudator not necessary, s. 125, p. 1483
registration of, company's registration number, mistake in, not material, s. 132, p.1516
registration required of, on book debts, s. 125(4)(d), pp. 1473, 1487
registration, calls made but not paid, s. 125(4)(g), pp. 1473, 1502
—, copyright or licence, s. 125(4)(i), p. 1473
—, court order undoing earlier registration, s. 132, p. 1517
—, delayed, s. 125(1) (Proviso), p. 1472
—, effect of non-registration, s. 125, p. 1481
—, extension of time subject to subsequent charge, s. 141, p. 1535
—, filing of particulars sufficient, s. 125, p. 1472
—, floating, or the undertaking or property including stock-in-trade, s. 125(4)(f), pp. 1473, 1495
—, late filing, additional fee, s. 135, p. 1520
—, late payment of fee, s. 125, p. 1505
—, modification by increase in bank interest, s. 135, p. 1520
—, of, s. 127, p. 1508
—, out of time, ROC not accept without CLB orders, s. 141, p. 1536
—, partnership by, not necessary, even if company a member, s. 125, p. 1473
—, patents, s. 125(4)(i), p. 1473
—, penal fee for delay in, s. 141, p. 1536
—, priorities, s. 132, p. 1516
—, retrospective effect, s. 132, p. 1515
—, rules and forms, s. 127, p. 1509

Charges (*Contd.*)
registration, Secretarial Action Points, procedure for, s. 125, p. 1506
—, ship or any share in a ship, s. 125(4)(h), p. 1473
—, simplification of procedure, s. 125, p. 1479
—, solicitors responsibility, s. 132, p. 1515
—, uncalled share capital, s. 125(4)(b), p. 1472
rental income, assignment of, s. 125, p. 1493
report of satisfaction to Registrar, s. 138, p. 1526
right to inspect copies of instruments creating, s. 144, p. 1540
—, instrument of charges, s. 144, p. 1540
rules, forms, s. 125, p. 1505
satisfaction of, procedure, s. 138, p. 1528
satisfaction on, s. 139, p. 1528
—, copy to be furnished to company, s. 140, p. 1529
—, notice to chargeholder within a week, s. 138, p. 1527
—, procedure as to satisfaction, s. 138, p. 1526
—, supporting letter from chargeholder, s. 138, p. 1526
—, company to report and procedure thereafter, s. 138, p. 1526
—, of, to be, reported by company, s. 138, p. 1526
—, or release of, may be entered by Registrar, s. 139, p. 1528
ship or any share in a ship requires registration, s. 125(4)(h), p. 1473
trust account, construction work, payment for, s. 125, p. 1487
trust, property held on, s. 125, p. 1504
uncalled share capital, on, s. 125(4)(b), p. 1472
unregistered, decree on basis of, s. 125, p. 1482
unsecured creditor cannot apply for rectification, s. 141, p. 1535
void, if unregistered, when, s. 125, pp. 1472, 1482
—, unless registered, s. 125, p. 1472
—, when, s. 125, p. 1472
who may apply for registration of, s. 135, p. 1519

Charitable etc., Companies, allied institutions, s. 25, p. 438
alteration of objects, s. 25, p. 442
application of Manufacturing & Other Companies (Auditor's Report) Order (2003), s. 25, p. 444
Central Government's 'permission' required, s. 25, p. 434
dispensing with use of word 'limited', s. 25, p. 434 *et seq.*
exempted from certain provision of Act, s. 25, pp. 437, 440
exemption from Companies Secretary Qualification Rules, s. 2(45), p. 74
fees for registration, see *App.* 133
firms as members of, s. 25, p. 437, *et seq.*
—, internal management jurisdiction of Civil Court, s. 25, p. 443
meaning, s. 25, p. 438
other law, and, s. 25, p. 444
income and rent, not taxable, s. 25, p. 444

Charitable spending by companies, s. 13, p. 359

Chartered Accountants, registration of memorandum and articles, declaration by, s. 33, p. 469

Cheque, dishonour of, liability under N.I. Act, s. 47, p. 606
dishonoured, absence of signature and company seal, officer in default, s. 5, p. 157
—, averment of being incharge, s. 5, p. 150
—, defence and burden of proof, s. 5, p. 156
—, directors liability, s. 5 p. 148
—, liability of officer, who is in default, s. 5, p. 148
—, resignation by Director, Officer in default, s. 5, p. 156
—, specific role played by Director, s. 5, p. 149
name, publication of, defect, liability, s. 147, pp. 1550, 1551

Chit Funds Act, 1982, see *App.* 293

Chose in-action, charge over, granted to third party, s. 58A, p. 723
depositor's right, s. 58A, p. 723

Circulation of members resolutions, checklist for activities for, s. 188, p. 1770
company's duty, s. 188, p. 1767
requisition by lesser number, s. 188, p. 1770

Circulation of members resolutions (*Contd.*)
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Resolution—Circulation of members**"
special notice, resolutions requiring, relationship with, s. 190, p. 1790

Citizen, company as, s. 34, p. 483

Civil Court, jurisdiction of, s. 10, pp. 186, 202
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Courts and High Courts**"
appointment and removal of director, jurisdiction for, s. 10, p. 205
cannot stay petition under sections 397 and 398, s. 10, p. 197
Debt Recovery Tribunal, jurisdiction, *vis-a-vis*, s. 10, p. 207
director, appointment of questioning of jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 205
director, removal of questioning of jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 205
foreign proceedings, jurisdiction for, s. 10, p. 207
inherent powers of, s. 10, p. 186
interference with internal affairs of Company, s. 10, p. 187
jurisdiction of, suit, place of, s. 10, p. 182
jurisdiction, exclusion of, s. 10. p. 202
jurisdiction, for appointment and removal of director, s. 10, p. 205
jurisdiction, matters over which suit can be filed, s. 10, p. 202
SICA Companies, Jurisdiction over, s. 10. p. 207
suit filing of, matters over, s. 10, p. 202
transfer of shares, intervention by, s. 111A, p. 1384
tribunal, powers of review vested in, s. 10-FM, p. 273

Civil Procedure Code, Company Law Board, powers of, under, s. 10-E, p. 210

Clarifications SEBI, regarding guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, see *App.* 163

Class Meetings, compliance certificate, ICSI guidance note & check list, s. 170, p. 1655
provisions as to, s. 170, p. 1655

Class rights, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Variation of Class Rights**"
alteration, majority needed for, s. 106, p. 1176
dissenting shareholders' application, s. 107, p. 1181
meaning of, s. 106, p. 1176
rights of dissentient shareholders of any class of share holders, members of any, not to be varied without their consent, s. 106, p. 1177
rights of dissentient shareholders of any class of share holders, s. 107, p. 1181
variation, by two methods, s. 106, p. 1177
—, how created, s. 106, p. 1176
—, of, s. 106, p. 1175
—, rights of members of a, special classes of shares, s. 106, p. 1177
what constitutes, s. 106, p. 1176

Closing register of members or debenture-holders, s. 154, p. 1581
Newspaper advertisement in, meaning of, s. 154, p. 1582

Clubs, Articles of Association, registration of, s. 26, p. 449
registered as section 25 companies, s. 25, p. 438

Code of Civil Procedure, Appellate Tribunal, procedural powers under, s. 10-FZA, p. 304
judgment pronounced after hearing case, s. 10-FM, p. 272

Code of Conduct of Business for Members and Dealers of OTCEI—issued by OTCEI, see *App.* 264

Code of Criminal Procedure, tribunal, powers under, s. 10-FZA, p. 306

Collection Agents, Authorised Collection Agents, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162

Collection centers, mandatory, s. 56, p. 664

Collective Investment Schemes, Investors grievance relating to, s. 58A, p. 737
SCRA, application of, s. 58A, p. 738
SEBI Circulars, FAQs on, Collective Investment Schemes—FAQ, see *App.* 189(1)
SEBI Regulations, 1999, see *App.* 188
SEBI Regulations, s. 56, p. 710

Collective Investment Schemes Regulations, 1999, see *App.* 188

Collective Investment, SEBI Guidelines, s. 58A, p. 758

Commencement of business, s. 149, p. 1554, *et seq.*
business 'germane' to existing business, s. 149, p. 1557
certificate of, s. 149(3), pp. 1556, 1558
—, necessary for Part IX Companies, s. 149, p. 1559
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance Notes & Check List, s. 149, p. 1560
contracts made prior to, s. 149, p. 1559
deemed public company, certificate not required by, s. 149, p. 1559
exploratory activities, s. 149, p. 1558
filing of declaration with Registrar, s. 149 (1)(d), p. 1554
meaning of, s. 149, p. 1558
new activity, criterion of 'germane' to original business, s. 149, p. 1558
new business, s. 149, p. 1558
payment in cash, s. 149, p. 1558
pre-incorporation of contracts, s. 149, p. 1559
provisional contracts, s. 147, p. 1559
restrictions on, provisions of companies Act and SEBI Act are independent, s. 149, p. 1559
restrictions on, s. 149, pp. 1554, 1558

Commercial Company, registration as, under English Act, s. 13, p. 355

Commercial Paper, Guidelines for issue of Commercial Paper (CP), 2000, see *App.* 63
guidelines for issue of, s. 58A, p. 756
issue of, NRIs/OCBs, to, s. 58A, p. 756
NRI, foreigners & foreign companies, deposits through, s. 58-A, p. 724
RBI Guidelines for issue of, s. 58-A, p. 754

Commissions and discounts, s. 76, p. 937
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Underwriting Commission"**
"Discounts, Commission, etc."
articles must authorise, s. 76, p. 943
balance-sheet to disclose, s. 76, p. 950
banking companies prohibited from paying, s. 76, p. 940, s. 79, p. 998
brokerages, payment of, s. 76, p. 947
calculations of, s. 199, p. 1842
'commission', meaning, s. 76, p. 937
conditions for payment, s. 76, p. 943
debentures, particulars as to, s. 129, p. 1511
—, registrations, necessity for, s. 129, p. 1511
maximum rate allowed, s. 76, p. 943
—, conditions for payment of, s. 76, p. 943
not restricted to payment out of capital only, s. 76, p. 940
particulars as to, on debentures, s. 129, p. 1511
payment of, s. 76 p. 950
power to pay, in respect of shares etc., s. 76, p. 937
prohibition of certain, s. 76, p. 937
underwriting commission, s. 76, p. 940
word not restricted to payment of money out of capital only, s. 76, p. 940

Common seal, s. 48, p. 607
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Official Seal"**
attestation for affixing, s. 48, p. 608
attorney, appointment of, necessary, s. 50, p. 617
—, necessary for appointing, s. 50, p. 617
—, or agent acting through, s. 48, p. 609
common seal, s. 147, pp. 1547, 1552
companies to have, s. 34, p. 476
dispensed with in England, s. 48, p. 610
documents affixed on, presumption of validity, s. 48, p. 608
exercising all the functions having, s. 34, p. 476
irregularity in use of, s. 48, p. 608
mode and manner of keeping, provision in articles, s. 147, p. 1552
official, authorisation under articles, s. 50, p. 616
—, for use abroad, s. 50, p. 616
presumption of validity, s. 48, p. 608
provisions in articles about use of, s. 147, p. 1552

Common seal (*Contd.*)
requirement of, s. 48, p. 607
share certificate to be under, s. 84, p. 1091
writing under, s. 48, p. 607

Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 10

Companies (Application for Extension of Time or Exemption under sub-section (8) of Section 58-A) Rules, 1979, see *App.* 11

Companies (Appointment and Qualifications of Secretary) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 7

Companies (Appointment of Small Shareholders' Directors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 40

Companies (Appointment of Sole Agents) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 27

Companies (Auditor's) Report/Order, 2003, see *App.* 24

Companies (Branch Audit Exemption) Rules, 1961, see *App.* 25

Companies (Central Government's) General Rules and Forms, 1956, see *App.* 1

Companies (Compliance Certificates) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 38

Companies (Court) Rules, 1959, see *App.* 4

Companies (Declaration of Beneficial Interest in Shares) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 18

Companies (Declaration of Dividend out of Reserves) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 20

Companies (Disclosure of Particulars in the Report of Board of Directors) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 22

Companies (Disqualification of Directors under section 274(1)(g) of the Companies Act, 1956) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 44

Companies (Donations to National Fund) Act, 1951, see *App.* 286

Companies (Fees on Applications) Rules, 1999, see *App.* 5

Companies (Issue of Share Capital with Differential Voting Rights) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 39

Companies (Issue of Share Certificates) Rules, 1960, see *App.* 14

Companies (Official Liquidator's Accounts) Rules, 1965, see *App.* 28

Companies (Particulars of Employees) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 23

Companies (Passing of the Resolutions by Postal Ballot) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 41

Companies (Preservation and Disposal of Records) Rules, 1966, see *App.* 17

Companies (Public Trustee) Rules, 1973, see *App.* 15

Companies (Transfer of Profits to Reserve) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 19

Companies limited by guarantee, definition, s. 37, p. 539
memorandum, s. 13, p. 351

Companies limited by shares, articles of association, s. 26, p. 447
definition, s. 2 (23), p. 27
memorandum, s. 13, p. 351

Companies Liquidation Accounts Rules, 1965, see *App.* 29

Companies not having share capital, annual return by, s. 160, p. 1593

Companies Regulations, 1956, see *App.* 2
declaration under, s. 2(45-A), p. 83

Companies Secretaries, Companies (Compliance Certificates) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 38

Companies Unpaid Dividend (Transfer to General Revenue Account of the Central Government) Rules, 1978, see *App.* 21

Companies, companies barred not to issue security, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
Corporate Identity Number, s. 20. p. 421
distinguished from partnership, s. 11, p. 340
Issue of Securities, See Chap. II of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
minimum number of members, effect of having fewer than, s. 45, p. 588
minimum number of members, s. 11, p. 335
Producer Companies (General Reserves) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 47
Unlisted Companies (Issue of Sweat Equity Shares) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 45
winding up of, exclusive jurisdiction of NCLT, s. 10-FB, p. 256

Company Business, conducting at general meeting, proceedural provision, s. 186, p. 1745

Company court, extent of jurisdiction, s. 2(11), p. 25
inherent powers of, s. 10, p. 185
jurisdiction, foreign company with foreign directors, s. 10, p. 195
extent of jurisdiction, s. 2(11), p. 37
jurisdiction of, s. 10-GB, p. 315

Company Deposits, Certificate to be issue by Auditors of a Company pursuant to Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-12)
jurisdiction in matter of, s. 10-GB, p. 315

Company Directory, category of, s. 20, p. 422

Company Law Administration, s. 10-E, p. 211
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Company Law Board"**
alteration of memorandum, lapse order, revival of, s. 19, p. 404
—, power to extend time for registration of, s. 17, p. 381
—, special resolution for, s. 17, p. 377
appeal against orders of, by aggrieved person, s. 10F, p. 240
—, by aggrieved person, s. 10F, p. 242
—, consent order, s. 10F, p. 247
—, jurisdiction, s. 10F, p. 248
—, order as to alteration, s. 17, p. 382
—, order of, s. 10F, p. 240
—, order, scope of appellate court interventions. 10E, p. 230
—, question of law and of fact, s. 10F, p. 243
appeal from order of Tribunal, s. 10-FQ, p. 279
appeal to High Court and Supreme Court, against decisions, s. 10F, p. 248
appeal, expeditious disposal of, s. 10-FQ, p. 279
—, limitation for filing before NCLT, s. 10-FQ, p. 281
—, no inherent right of, s. 10F, p. 240
—, right of, s. 10-FQ, p. 280
appearance before Bench, memorandum of, s. 10E, p. 235
Appellate Tribunal, Chairperson and members, term of office of, s. 10-FT, p. 287
Bench, appearance before, s. 10-E, pp. 234, 235
—, constitution of, s. 10F, p. 219
—, hearing by three and decision by two members, s. 10E, p. 237
—, inherent powers of, s. 10-E, p. 236
—, order of, s. 10-E, p. 235
—, power of review, s. 10-E, p. 235
Benches of Tribunal, s. 10-FL, p. 268
Central Government's delegation of powers to, etc. s. 10-E, p. 218
Civil Court not to have jurisdiction in, s. 10-GB, p. 308
Civil Procedure Code, powers under, s. 10- E, p. 220
conditional order, power to pass, s. 10-E, p. 222
confirmation by, for alteration of memorandum, s. 17, p. 377
constitution and powers, s. 10-E, p. 211
constitution of Board, s. 10-E, pp. 211, 217
constitution of, s. 10-E, p. 218
constitution, Appellate Tribunal of, s. 10-FR, p. 285
constitutional validity, s. 10-E, p. 218
construction of the provisions as to its powers, s. 10E, p. 228
counter reply, filing of, s. 10-E, p. 235
Criminal Procedure Code, powers under, s. 10-E, p. 222
decision of, s. 10-E, p. 227

Company Law Administration (*Contd.*)
delegated powers and functions, exercise o f, s. 10E, p. 218
delegation of functions, s. 10-E, p. 218
delegation of powers, S. 10-FO, p. 274
destruction of records in offices of, s. 10-E, p. 239
direction by, for repayment of deposits, s. 58-A(9), pp. 717, 726
discretion, duty to act in its, s. 10-E, p. 229
—, manner of exercising, s. 10-E p. 230
—, powers, s. 10-E, p. 231
—, relevant grounds, exercise of, s. 10-E, p. 231
discretion, to confirm alteration of memorandum, s. 17, pp. 377, 384
enforcement of compromise order, s. 10E, p. 222
enforcement of orders, s. 10-E, p. 222
erroneous orders, calling back, s. 17, p. 385
Evidence Act, applicability of, s. 10-E, p. 221
fees, payment of, s. 10-E, p. 236
formation of, s. 10-E, p. 217
function and role in considering refusal of transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1301
functions of, s. 10-E, pp. 211, 217, 237
hearing place of, s. 10-E, p. 233
High Court, jurisdiction, s. 10-F, p. 243
Indian Penal Code, powers under, s. 10-E, p. 222
inherent powers of, s. 10E, pp. 211, 236
inspection of minutes, jurisdiction to order, s. 196, p. 1824
interlocutory application, contents of, s. 10-E, p. 234
judicial review, decisions of, s. 10F, p. 249, s. 111, p. 1301
jurisdiction of, s. 10-E, p. 211
—, Benches, s. 10-E, p. 233
—, nature of, s. 10F, p. 241
—, provisions conferring strict construction, s. 10-F, p. 249
—, Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, s. 111, p. 1302
jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 184
language of the Bench, s. 10-E, p. 233
legal representative, substitution of, s. 10-E, p. 235
limitation period for appeals, s. 10-F, p. 241
members, company secretaries, eligibility of, s. 10-E, p. 219
—, qualifications and experience of, s. 10-E, p. 218
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Appendix 8 for text of Rules**"
memorandum, alteration of, procedure for petition, s. 17, p. 394
—, alteration, creditors interest, s. 17(6), pp. 379, 393
—, power as to alteration, s. 17, p. 377
natural hearing, *nemo debet* rule of, s. 10-E, p. 226
—, rule of vires, s. 10-E, p. 224
natural justice, *audi alteram partem* Rule, s. 10-E, p. 224
—, binding upon, s. 10-E, p. 224
—, fair procedure, s. 10E, p. 227
—, hearing rule of, s. 10-E, p. 224
—, hearing, s. 10-E, p. 225
—, notice, s. 10-E, p. 224
—, requirement, s. 10-E, p. 224
natural justice, rule of vires, s. 10-E, p. 225
order of Tribunal, passed after giving parties opportunity of hearing, s. 10-FM, p. 271
orders enforcement of, s. 10-E, p. 222
—, not appealable, s. 10-F, pp. 241, 243
—, *quasi*-judicial, s. 10-E, p. 227
—, *quasi*-judicial, not appealable, s. 10-E, p. 228
paper book, preparation of, s. 10-E, p. 236
party, non-appearance of, s. 10-E, p. 235
petition before, contents of, s. 10-E, p. 234
—, etc. to be in writing, s. 10-E, p. 234
—, general heading, s. 10-E, p. 234
—, procedure for filing, s. 10-E, p. 234
power of, s. 10-E, p. 217, 220, 237
—, call AGM, s. 167, p. 1636
—, compel grant of inspection of registers etc., s. 163, p. 1602

Company Law Administration (*Contd.*)
power of, direct delivery of copies of debenture trust deed, s. 118, p. 1447
—, direct issue of certificate of share, s. 113, p. 1393
—, order alteration of articles, s. 31, p. 464
—, order extraordinary meeting, s. 186, p. 1739
—, prevent change in board u/s 409, s. 4, p. 133
—, regulate its own procedure, s. 10-E(6), p. 213
powers and functions, s. 10-E, p. 237 *et seq.*
principal bench, s. 10-E, p. 233
—, NCLT, s. 10-FL(5), p. 269
—, transfer of cases to, s. 10-E, p. 233
private company, default by, petition to, s. 43, p. 563
procedure for applications, s. 17, p. 394
procedure to be followed, s. 10-E, p. 232
quasi-judicial body, s. 10-E, p. 227
—, power, s. 186, p. 1740
questions of law and of fact, appeals, s. 10-F, p. 243
reasoned decision, speaking order, s. 10-E, p. 227
—, duty to give, s. 10-E, p. 227
records, inspection of, s. 10-E, p. 236
rectification of register of member, jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1342
reference to, s. 10-E, p. 236
regional (double member) bench, s. 10-E, p. 233
—, (single member) bench, s. 10-E, p. 233
register of charges, power of rectification, s. 141, p. 1531
—, power to order inspection, s. 144, p. 1540
reply, filing of, s. 10-E, p. 235
resignation, of Chairperson and members of Appellate Tribunal, s. 10-FT, p. 287
review, right to seek, s. 10-FN, p. 273
Sachar Committee Recommendations, s. 10E, p. 215
Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, jurisdiction under, s. 111, p. 1302
sitting hours of the bench, s. 10-E, p. 234
special provisions relating to certain matters, s. 10-E, p. 236
Special Resolution, alteration of memorandum, for, s. 17, p. 377
strict construction of provisions, conferring jurisdiction, s. 10-F, p. 249
strict construction of provisions, conferring jurisdiction on Tribunals, s. 10-FQ, p. 284
sufficient cause for appeal, s. 10-F, p. 241
time enlargement of, s. 10-E, p. 236
transitional provisions, s. 10-E, p. 239
Tribunal Benches of, notification by Central Government, s. 10-FL(4), p. 269
Tribunal members, dividend opinion of, s. 10FL, p. 270
Tribunal, composition of special bench, s. 10-FL, p. 270
—, functions of Special Bench, s. 10-FL, p. 270
—, number of Benches, s. 10-FL(4), p. 271
—, powers of principal bench to transfer cases, s. 10-FL(5), p. 271
—, President's power to transfer to larger Bench, s. 10FL, p. 270
—, Principal Bench, s. 10-FL(5), p. 271
—, single-member bench, s. 10-FL, p. 270
—, special benches, s. 10-FL(2), p. 270
—, Two-member Bench, s. 10-FL, p. 270
Tribunal's decision, s. 10-FL (3), p. 270
Tribunal's order, rectification of, S. 10-FM(2), p. 272
validity of acts, of, s. 10-E, p. 219

Company Law Board (Fees on Application and Petitions) Rules, 1991, see *App.* 6

Company Law Board (Qualifications, Experience and other Conditions of Service of Members) Rules 1993, see *App.* 8

Company Law Board Regulations, 1991, see *App.* 3
(Fees on Application and Petitions) Rules, 1991, see *App.* 6
(Qualifications, Experience and other Conditions of Service of Members) Rules 1993, see *App.* 8
Member, Company Law Board (Qualifications, Experience and other Conditions of Service of Members) Rules 1993, see *App.* 8
Offices of the Company Law Board Benches (Destructions of Records) Rules, 1980, see *App.* 31

Company Law Board, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Company Law Administration"**
Additional Principal Bench of, at Chennai, s. 10E, p. 219
Addresses of the Company Law Board and its Bench Offices, see *App.* 145
aggrieved person, right of appeal, s. 10-F, p. 240
Annual General Meeting, not called by, s. 167, p. 1637
banking company, transfer of shares, has no jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1304, *et seq.*
court as, not for all purposes, s. 10-E, p. 232
court means, in s. 75, p. 935
deposits, repayment of, power, s. 58A, p. 737
dissolution of, s. 10-FA, p. 251
functions and powers of, see *App.* 143
functions and role of, in reference, s. 111, p. 1299
inherent powers, rectification of register of members, restoration of petition, s. 111, p. 1360
interim relief, power to grant, s. 10E, p. 222
—, rectification matters, powers, s. 111(6), p. 1360
—, transfer of shares, refusal, powers of, s. 111(6), p. 1360
jurisdiction of, s. 10E, p. 231, s. 10-FZA, p. 303
jurisdiction to issue duplicate shares, has no, s. 111A, p. 1383
matters to be dealt with by the Principal Bench and Regional Benches of the Company Law Board, See Regulation 4(1) of the Company Law Board Regulations, 1991, see *App.* 144
meaning of, s. 2(10A), p. 25
observer instead of chairman, appointment by, s. 175, p. 1693
petition before, s. 111A, p. 1388
power of review of order, s. 10F, p. 248
power to call AGM, members can apply, not company, s. 167, p. 1635
power to order redemption of debentures, s. 121, p. 1456
power to restrict creation of further liability by company, s. 117C, p. 1442
powers, issue of share certificates, extension of time, s. 113, p. 1397
Principal Bench, s. 10E, p. 219
public companies, jurisdiction over, s. 111A, p. 1384
RBI Act, powers under, s. 10-E, p. 237
refusal to register, grounds on which to decide, s. 111, p. 1301
Regional Benches, s. 10-E, p. 220
Regional Director, Forms, Returns, documents and agreements to be filed with the Registrars/ Regional Director/Central Government for which forms are prescribed, see *App.* 147
Relevant Rules and Regulations, s. 10-E, p. 239
Schedule of Court Fee Stamps to be affixed on the Petitions/Applications filed with the Company Law Board, see *App.* 137
scope of powers, s. 111A, p. 1383
transmission of shares, power to refuse, s. 108, p. 1229
writs, not available, against order, s. 111, p. 1307

Company Law Committee, jurisdiction of courts, recommendation of, s. 10, p. 179

Company Law Settlement (Jammu and Kashmir) Scheme, 2003, see *App.* 36

Company Law Settlement Scheme, 2000, see *App.* 35

Company Law Tribunal, Constitution of National, s. 10-FB, p. 253
secretary, legal representation before, s. 2(45-A), p. 83

Company Limited by Guarantee, articles of association of, must be registered, s. 26, p. 447
articles of association of, to state number of members, s. 27(2), p. 451
divisable profits of, provision for participation in, to be void, s. 37(1), p. 539
division of the undertaking of the, into shares or interest, s. 37(2), p. 539
meaning of, s. 2(23), p. 27, s. 12, p. 343
members of, notice of increase of, s. 97 (1), p. 1145

Company Limited by Shares, articles of, may be registered, s. 26, p. 447
meaning of, s. 2(23), p. 27, s. 12(2)(a), p. 343
members, liability of, s. 12, p. 348
Table 'A' when applicable to, s. 28, p. 452

Company Prospectus, Reports in Company Prospectuses, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-21)

Company Secretaries Institute, authority as, s. 2(45), p. 30
eligibility for CLB member, s. 10-E, p. 219

Company Secretary, Advocate, restriction upon practising as, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
Company Secretaries in Practice, see *App.* 313
legal representation before Company Law Board, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
representation before Tribunal, s. 10-GD, p. 322
transfer of shares of listed company, monitoring of process of, by, s. 111A, p. 1390

Company, agent's signature, s. 54, p. 629
annual return to the Registrar, s. 159, p. 1588, s. 160, p. 1593
articles, s. 26, pp. 447, 450
—, bound by, s. 36, p. 530
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Articles of Association**"
asset management companies, registration of, s. 33, p. 475
assets, shareholders cannot treat as their own, s. 34, p. 500
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Asset management companies**"
authority ascertion of, duty of those dealing with, s. 46, p. 594
authority, person acting under, s. 46, p. 592
availability of names for registration, s. 20, p. 411 *et seq.*
body corporate, includes, s. 2(10), p. 25
branch officer abroad, Indian company, s. 2(9), p. 36
business opportunities, diversion of, lifting corporate veil, s. 34, p. 520
buying own shares, restriction on, s. 77, p. 951
carrying on business for acquisition of gain, s. 11, p. 337
certificate of incorporation, s. 35, p. 524
change of management, guarantors not discharged by, s. 34, p. 499
change of name, s. 21, p. 423
—, of, existing Private Ltd., s. 24, p. 434
charitable etc., companies, s. 25, p. 434
—, spending by, donations, by, s. 13, p. 359
citizen as, s. 34, p. 483
commencement of business, restrictions, s. 149, p. 1559
common management, s. 34, p. 502
common seal dispensed with in England, s. 48, p. 610
—, irregularity in use of, s. 48, p. 610
—, writing under, s. 48, p. 607
complaint by, dishonour of cheque for, s. 34, p. 478
contract made before incorporation, s. 46, p. 599, s. 149, p. 1559
contracts, mode of making, s. 46, p. 590
conversions of private into public, s. 44, p. 587
—, public into private, s. 31, p. 465
—, unlimited into limited, s. 32, p. 468
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Conversion**"
copies of memorandum and articles to be given to members, s. 39, p. 542
corporate veil, lifting or piercing of, s. 34, p. 502
court summons, service of, s. 34, p. 486
crime, liability for, s. 34, pp. 486, 489
criminal activities hiding using Corporate Structure, s. 34, p. 519
criminal complaint, lodging by, s. 34, p. 481
decree against, s. 45, p. 590
—, lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 502
deeds by, execution of, in or India, s. 48, p. 607
deemed public company, what is, s. 3, p. 110
defamation of, right to sue, s. 34, p. 479
defamation, liability for, s. 34, p. 486
definition, s. 3, pp. 92, 95, *et seq.*
—, in s. 3 subject to other definitions, s. 3(1)(i), pp. 92, 94
definition, Supreme Court explanation of in LIC v. Escorts, s. 2(10), p. 37
director, disqualifying companies being used as, s. 203, p. 1862
director's liability whether company's, s. 34, p. 501
directors authority to act on behalf, s. 46, p. 592
directors, post dated cheque liability for, s. 34, p. 495
dispense with "Limited", in the name of, s. 25, p. 434
distinct from Board, s. 34, p. 497
—, shareholders, s. 34, p. 497
dues of, managing director, not personally liable, s. 34, p. 523
effect of incorporation, s. 34, p. 476, s. 35, p. 528
enemy character, s. 34, p. 486

Company (*Contd.*)
excluded from Act, s. 3, p. 110
existing, s. 3, pp. 92, 95
—, meaning of, s. 3, pp. 92, 95
extended definition of, s. 4, p. 126
forgery, liability of, in case of, s. 46, p. 598
formation, mode of, s. 12, p. 343
—, subscription by NRI/Foreigner subscriber, s. 12, p. 346, s. 15, p. 373
fundamental rights, right to claim, s. 34, p. 483
general meeting, s. 186, p. 1739 *et seq.*
good faith, person dealing in, s. 36, p. 537
guarantee, limited by, s. 37, p. 539
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Guarantee Company"**
High Court exercising jurisdiction, as under Act, s. 2(11), p. 37
Holding subsidiary, corporate formalities, non observance of, s. 34, p. 510
holding, s. 4, p. 113
—, control over subsidiary, s. 4, p. 118
—, subsidiary relationship, s. 4(3), p. 125
implied powers, s. 13, p. 363
incorporated, forming of, s. 12, p. 343
incorporation, s. 11, p. 335, s. 34, p. 476
—, becomes separate legal person, by, s. 34, p. 476
—, registration of, s. 35, p. 528
—, voting and non-voting rights, provision as to, s. 35, p. 527
Industrial, meaning of, s. 2(19AA), p. 50
internal affairs, interference by Civil Court, s. 10, p. 187
internal rules and bye laws, force of, s. 36, p. 538
investment, restrictions on, s. 49, p. 610
investments in own name, s. 49, p. 610
—, to be made in its own name, s. 49, pp. 610, 612
jurisdiction, foreign company with foreign directors, s. 10, p. 195
kinds of companies, s. 12, p. 349
kinds of, s. 2(10), p. 37
knowledge of director, when company's, s. 34, p. 493
knowledge, when not attributable to, s. 34, p. 494
lease and tenancy, to, change in shareholders, effect, s. 34, p. 520
legal person, as, s. 35, p. 528
—, as, complaint by, substitution of representative, s. 34, p. 482
—, as, dismissal of complaint on default by, s. 34, p. 482
—, as, fraud, liability for, s. 34, p. 489
—, as, fraudulent investment schemes, liability for, s. 34, p. 506
—, as, guardian cannot be, s. 34, p. 481
—, as, legal aid, action in representative capacity by, s. 34, p. 482
—, as, officers, punishment by way of imprisonment, s. 34, p. 497
—, as, perjury, liability for, s. 34, p. 495
legal position, s. 34, p. 502
liability for slander or libel, s. 34, p. 486
—, tort and crime, s. 34, p. 486
—, violation of provisions of the Act, s. 34, p. 489
lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 502
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Lifting of the corporate veil"**
limited by guarantee, provisions as to, s. 37, p. 539
limited by shares, see Company Limited by Shares, s. 26, p. 447
limited, s. 2(23), p. 27
loans for buying own shares prohibited, s. 77, p. 951
management and administration, Part VI, p. 1543
managing director, may have more than one, s. 2(26), p. 57
member as, s. 41, p. 550
—, distinct from, s. 34, p. 497
—, of, severally liable for debts if reduction of members below minimum, s. 45, p. 588
—, resolution to take away property, s. 34, p. 500
membership of, s. 41, pp. 544, 545
memorandum, s. 13, p. 351
mistake in name, in accurate description, s. 23, p. 432
mode of forming, s. 12, p. 343

Company (*Contd.*)
name of, s. 20, p. 405
—, abbreviated approval by regional director, s. 21, p. 425
—, change of, procedure Secretarial Action Points, s. 21, p. 426
—, change of, s. 21, p. 423
—, change on Central Government direction, s. 22, p. 428
—, rectification of, on Central Governments directions, Secretarial Action Points, s. 22, p. 432
—, rectification of, s. 22, p. 428
—, registration of change of, s. 23, p. 432
nationality, s. 34, p. 483
not to appoint or employ certain categories of managerial personnel, same time, s. 197-A, p. 1828
not to be registered with undesirable names, s. 20, p. 405
notice by or to, s. 53, p. 623
notice of meeting of, contents & manner of service, s. 172, p. 1665
notice to, articles providing against Act, effect, s. 51, p. 617
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Notice to Company**"
—, through directors and officers, s. 51, p. 619
objects of, s. 13, p. 354
officer who is in default, Health and Safety legislation, guidelines, s. 5, p. 147
partner as, s. 3, p. 111, s. 12, p. 349
—, liability of, s. 12, p. 348
partnership and, s. 3, p. 111
partnership, distinguished from, s. 11, p. 340
person acting under authority of, s. 46, p. 593
person as, for Consumer Protection Act, s. 34, p. 478
person as, under money Lender's Act, 34, p. 478
piercing veil—holding & subsidiary companies, of, s. 34, p. 510
—, in tax matters, s. 34, p. 508
position of joint shareholders in relation to company s. 41, p. 552
—, shareholders, s. 41, p. 551
power of, have official seal for use outside India, s. 50, p. 616
—, restrict fraudulent persons from managing, s. 203, p. 1850
power to make gifts, s. 13, p. 359
powers of, s. 13, p. 354
pre-incorporation contracts, when binding on, s. 46, p. 602
principal office, s. 3, p. 110
privacy, right of, s. 34, p. 480
private, s. 3, pp. 92, 94, 95
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Private Company**"
proceedings by, requirement as to execution of deeds, not to be set against, s. 48, p. 609
property • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Property of Company**"
prosecution alongwith officer/director, officer in default, s. 5, p. 153
prosecution for evasion of Income-tax, s. 34, p. 496
punishment for contempt, s. 34, p. 495
rectification of name, s. 22, p. 428
reduction of members below minimum, s. 45, pp. 588, 589
registered under Sikkim Act, s. 3(1)(ii), p. 95
registration, cannot be challenged by writ, s. 33, p. 475
—, change of name, s. 23, p. 432
—, effect of, s. 34, p. 476
—, judicial review and writ remedies, s. 33, p. 475
—, number, allotted to, s. 35, p. 524
—, of s. 33, p. 469
registration, unlimited into limited, s. 32, p. 468
remission of stamp duty on transfer of property *inter se*, s. 4, p. 134
re-registration, already registered as limited company, of, s. 32, p. 468
residence of, s. 34, p. 484
returns to the Registrar re. declarations of beneficial ownership of shares, s. 187-C, p. 1757
revisional jurisdiction not barred, s. 10, p. 187
right of the member to challenge any decree passed against, s. 34, p. 497
secretary, must have, with Rs. two crores capital, s. 2(45), p. 72
self incrimination, privilege against, s. 34, p. 486
separate legal person, as, perpetual succession, s. 34, p. 476
service of documents on, depository purposes for, electronic mode by, s. 51, p. 620
—, documents, on registrar b y, s. 52, p. 621, s. 53, p. 623

Company (*Contd.*)
service of documents on, how effected, s. 51, p. 617
—, notice of meeting of, s. 172, p. 1665
shareholders action, *res judicata* against, s. 34, p. 501
shareholders, agent is not, s. 34, p. 499
—, distinct from, s. 34, p. 497
—, experience is not company's experience, s. 34, p. 499
—, property is not, company's property, s. 34, p. 500
shareholding, depository, s. 49, p. 614
Sick Industrial, defined, s. 2(46AA), p. 86
Sick Industrial, meaning of, s. 2(46AA), p. 30
slander or libel, liability for, s. 34, p. 489
status of, s. 3, p. 112
statutory existence, s. 34, p. 484
subscriber as, s. 12, p. 344
subsidiary, s. 3, p. 109 *et seq*
suit, *forma pauperis*, to file, s. 34, p. 481
suits, capacity for, s. 34, p. 480
tax matters, lifting corporate veil in, s. 34, p. 509
tort, liability for, s. 34, p. 486
true legal position, s. 34, p. 502
undertaking, and, two different things, s. 34, p. 482
undesirable names, not to be registered, s. 20, p. 405
unlimited • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Unlimited company"**
undischarged insolvent—not to manage, s. 202, p. 1847
use of official seal by, s. 50, p. 616
use of official seal by, s. 50, p. 616
veil, lifting the corporate, s. 34, p. 502
vicarious liability, *mens rea*, s. 34, p. 493
voting rights, termination of, disproportionate, s. 89, p. 1123
when corporate veil lifted, s. 34, p. 502
winding-up of • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Winding up by Court"**
witness cannot be, s. 34, p. 486
writs against, s. 34, p. 483

Comparatives, (AAS-25), see *App.* 317

Compensation, misrepresentation in prospectus, liability for, s. 62, p. 795
misrepresentation in sale of shares, s. 108, p. 1219
mis-statement in prospectus, directors & promoters liable to pay, s. 62, pp. 787, 795
—, liability for, s. 62, p. 787
seized assets, right to recover, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 137

Competition Act, 2002, s. 1, p. 9, see *App.* 299
Competition Commission of India (Oath of Office and of Secrecy for Chairperson and other Members) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 301
Competition Commission of India (Salary, Allowances and other Terms and Conditions of Service of Chairperson and other Member) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 302
Competition Commission of India (Selection of Chairperson and other Members of the Commission) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 300
Consumer Protection Act, 1986 (As amended by the Consumer Protection (Amendment) Act, 2002), see *App.* 303

Competition Commission of India (Oath of Office and of Secrecy for Chairperson and other Members) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 301

Competition Commission of India (Salary, Allowances and other Terms and Conditions of Service of Chairperson and other Member) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 302

Competition Commission of India (Selection of Chairperson and other Members of the Commission) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 300

Complaints, company by, dismissal on default, s. 34, p. 482
company by, substitution of legal representative, s. 34, p. 482
SEBI, power vested with, s. 68, p. 821
underwriting/brokerage commission, non-receipt of, s. 73, p. 920

Compliance Certificate, Annual General Meeting, s. 155, p. 1631
annual return, s. 160, p. 1593
charges, ICSI guidance note, s. 125, p. 1506
class meeting, s. 170, p. 1655
—, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 106, p. 1181
commencement of business, s. 149, p. 1560
Companies (Compliance Certificates) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 38
copies of instruments creating charges/Register of Charges, guidance note thereon, s. 136, p. 1521
debentures, ICSI guidance note on, s. 117, p. 1432
equity shares, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 86, p. 1112
extraordinary general meeting, s. 169, p. 1652
Foreign Register of Members/Debenture Holders, s. 157, p. 1586
ICSI Guidance Note & check list on change in situation of R/o, s. 146, p. 1546
ICSI Guidance Note & Check List on closure of Register of Members/Debenture-holders, s. 154, p. 1584
ICSI Guidance Note & Check List, Share Certificate, 84, p. 1102
ICSI Guidance Note on Compliance Certificate under proviso to sub-section (1) of section 383(A) of the Companies Act, 1956, see *App.* 312(1)
ICSI Guidance Note on, s. 79A, p. 1002, s. 80, p. 1008
—, Check List Prescribed, s. 81, p. 1081
Minutes of Directors' Meeting/General Meeting, s. 193, p. 1815
notice of meetings, s. 171, p. 1662
Postal Ballot, resolutions passed by, s. 192-A, p. 1805
redemption of debentures, ICSI guidance note, s. 117C, p. 1446
redemption of Irredeemable Preference Shares, on, s. 80-A, p. 1015
regiser of Members/Index of Members, s. 151, p. 1566
register of debenture-holders, s. 152, p. 1569
register of proxy, s. 176, p. 1716
registers and returns, s. 163, p. 1607
registration of resolutions/agreements, s. 192, p. 1797
remuneration of directors, s. 198, p. 1841
share capital, alteration of, s. 95, p. 1144
—, increase of, s. 94A, p. 1142
share certificate deliver, ICSI Guidance Note on, s. 108, p. 1264
statutory meeting, s. 165, p. 1615

Composite Issue, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
differential pricing, s. 56, p. 677
minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
SEBI guidelines, on, s. 81, p. 1026
Promoters Contribution in Case of Composite Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
Reservations in, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Compromise order, enforcement of, before Tribunal, s. 10-FZA, p. 306

Computer Business, name, Change of, guidelines, s. 20, p. 418

Computer floppy, draft offer documents on, s. 56, p. 659

Computer Information Systems Environment, Auditing in a Computer Information Systems Environment, (AAS-29), see *App.* 317

Conflict of Authority, RBI & CLB, between for repayment of deposits, s. 58A, p. 730

Conflict of opinion, Tribunal, matter referred to, s. 10-FL(3), p. 269

Consent order, appeal against, before NCLT, s. 10-FQ, p. 281
appeal against, before Tribunal, s. 10-GF, p. 331

Consent, alteration of article, by s. 31. p. 462
appeal against consent order, before CLB, s. 10F, p. 247
expert's, for issue of prospectus containing statements by him, s. 58, p. 714

Consolidated Financial Statements, (IAS 27), see *App.* 319
Accounting for Investments in Associates in Consolidated Financial Statements, (AS-23), see *App.* 316
Accounting Standards, (AS-21), see *App.* 316
Format of Auditor's Report to the Board of Directors on consolidated Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-57)
Guidance Note on Audit of Consolidated Financial Statement, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-63)

Consolidation of shares, s. 95, p. 1143
notice to Registrar as to, s. 95, p. 1143

Constitution, National Company law Tribunal, s. 10-FB, p. 253

Construction Contracts, (AS-7), see *App.* 316
(IAS 11), see *App.* 319

Construction of mandatory and directory provisions, s. 1, p. 15

Construction of the Act, s. 1, p. 10
beneficial legislation, of, s. 1, p. 22
disqualification, provisions imposing, s. 1, p. 23
legislative intent, s. 1, p. 17
prescribed manner, s. 1, p. 23
constructive notice, s. 126, p. 1507
purposive, s. 1, p. 11

Construction Period, Guidance Note on Treatment of Expenditure during Construction Period, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-18)

Constructive Notice, articles of, memorandum of, rule, s. 13, p. 358
charge, of, s. 126, p. 1507
contents of charge, of, s. 126, p. 1507
doctrine of, s. 26, p. 450
England, rule of reference in, s. 36, p. 537
memorandum and articles of, s. 36, p. 535
reform of, s. 36, p. 537
registration charges, of, s. 126, p. 1507

Constructive trustees, transfer of shares, without proper instrument, s. 108, p. 1195

Consultant, s. 204, p. 1887

Consultation, CJI, removal of member, NCLT, s. 10FJ, p. 266
CJI, removal of President, NCLT, in, s. 10-FJ, p. 266

Consumer Forum, debentures, actionable claim, s. 2(12), p. 42
jurisdiction of, s. 10, p. 208, s. 10-GB, p. 316
—, transfer of shares, s. 108, p. 1262
mutual fund, public issue by, against, s. 72, p. 846
winding up matter, no jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 208

Consumer Protection Act, 1986 (As amended by the Consumer Protection (Amendment) Act, 2002), see *App.* 303
company as person under, s. 34, p. 478
officer in default, s. 5, p. 158

Contempt of court, Appellate Tribunal, power to punish for, s. 10-G, p. 307
company, punishment for, s. 34, p. 495

Contingent Assets, Accounting Standards, Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, (AS-29), see *App.* 316
Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets (IAS 37), see *App.* 319

Contingent Liabilities, Accounting Standards, Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, (AS-29), see *App.* 316
Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets (IAS 37), see *App.* 319

Continuing offence, AGM not holding, s. 168, p. 1642
annual return, default in filing, as, s. 162, p. 1599
when comes to end for AGM, s. 168, p. 1642

Contracts, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Pre-incorporation Contracts"**
actual authority, s. 46, p. 596
allotment of shares for consideration other than cash, filing with registrar, s. 75(1)(b), pp. 928, 934
apparent authority, s. 46, p. 596
arbitration, oral consent to, directors, by, s. 46, p. 591
articles how far are contract, s. 36, p. 530
articles of association when registered has the effect of a binding, s. 36, p. 529

Contracts (*Contd.*)
authority for, on behalf of company, s. 46, p. 592
—, to emanate from company, s. 46, p. 599
authority to contract, s. 46, p. 590
binding, shall not be, entitled to commence business, s. 149(4), p. 1556
company's, assignment to director, s. 47, p. 603
deeds (contracts), execution of, on behalf of company, s. 48, p. 609
delegation of directors authority, s. 46, p. 592
director's, personal liability under, s. 46, p. 592
—, personally not liable for, s. 46, p. 592
—, power to sign, s. 46, p. 591
Foreign Exchange derivative, s. 2(12), p. 46
form of, s. 46, p. 590
good faith, persons dealing in, s. 46, p. 594
lifting the corporate veil, in matters of, s. 34, p. 520
made before or after incorporation, s. 149, p. 1559
memorandum and articles, as, arbitration with intervention of court, s. 36, p. 533
minors are incompetent to enter into, s. 150, p. 1565
mode of signing, s. 46, p. 592
ostensible authority, s. 46, p. 596
outsiders, contracting with company, duty of, s. 46, p. 594
particulars of, to be set out in statutory report, s. 165(3), pp. 1612, 1613
persons acting under authority, s. 46, p. 596
persons dealing in good faith, s. 46, p. 594
pre-incorporation, s. 46, p. 599
—, agreement to subscribe for shares before, s. 46, p. 602
—, contracts, payments made under, s. 46, p. 602
—, shares acquired before, s. 46, p. 602
—, Specific Relief Act, effect of, s. 46, p. 600
provisional, s. 46, p. 602
provisional, shall be, before commencement of business, s. 149(4), p. 1556
quantum meruit, claim under, s. 46, p. 601
representation of authority for, s. 46, p. 599
requirements of a company's contract, s. 46, p. 591
terms, memorandum of association, s. 36, p. 530
ultra vires contracts, s. 46, p. 592
usual authority, to be within, s. 46, p. 596

Contract with Company, • SEE UNDER "**Directors with Company**"

Contributions, section 293-A of the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-14)

Contributory/Contributories, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Winding up (General Provision)**"
member and, s. 41, p. 551
member not interchangeable, s. 41, p. 551

Controller of Capital Issues, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**SEBI**"
administrative orders, judicial review, s. 56, p. 638
Capital Issues Control Act, repeal, consequences, s. 56, p. 638
SEBI, control by, issues of, s. 56, p. 636

Conversion, Government loans into shares, s. 81, p. 1044
Government loans into shares, s. 81, p. 1046
private company into public company, s. 44, p. 587
public company into a private company, s. 31, p. 467
public company into private company, s. 31, p. 465, s. 44, p. 587
Recommendations of Company Law Committee, s. 31, p. 456
—, Secretarial Action Points, s. 31, p. 466
shares into stock, notice to Registrar, s. 95, p. 1143
shares into stock, s. 95, p. 1143
unlimited company into limited, s. 32, p. 468

Convertible debentures, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Debenture**"
issue of, at a discount, s. 79, p. 997
issue of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1029
membership by, s. 41, p. 548

Convertible debentures (*Contd.*)
procedure for issue of shares, on conversion, s. 117, p. 1414
rights basis, issue of, s. 81, p. 1043
roll over of non convertible portions of partly convertible debentures/non convertible debentures by company not being in default, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, see *App.* 162

Convertible security, debentures, promotor's contribution, s. 117, p. 1420

Conviction, member, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

Co-operative societies, body corporate, whether, s. 2(7), p. 25
body corporate, whether, s. 2(7), p. 33
member, as, s. 41, p. 551

Copies & Extracts, annual returns of, to member, debenture-holder any person, s. 163(3), p. 1602
annual returns of, to member, debenture-holder any person, s. 163(3), pp. 1602, 1604
articles and memorandum, copies required by members, supply of, s. 39, p. 542
fees payable for, s. 163(3)(b), pp. 1602, 1605
minutes books of general meeting, to member, s. 196(2), p. 1824
Trust Deed—(debentures of, copies to trustees), Right to have, s. 118, p. 1447

Corporate bodies, quorum, representatives of, s. 174, p. 1687

Corporate Debt Securities, SEBI Guidelines on Issue of Corporate Debt Securities though Private Placement by Listed Company, see *App.* 165

Corporate Dividend Tax, Guidance Note on Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-39)

Corporate Governance, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Cadbury's Report**"
Blue Ribbon Committee, see *App.* 256(9)
Cadbury Committee Recommendations on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(7)
Certification of Corporate Governance (As stipulated in clause 49 of Listing Agreement), Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-46)
Combined Code, London Stock Exchange—June, 1998, see *App.* 256(11)
Confederation of Indian Industries (CII) Code of Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(6)
Corporate Governance Committee Reports and Allied Circulars, see *App.* 256
Greenbury Committee, see *App.* 256(8)
ICSI Note for Effectively Implementing Corporate Governance as Stipulated in Clause 49 on Listing Agreement, see *App.* 256(4)
Institute of Chartered Accountants in England & Wales—Response to the Initial Consultation of the Committee on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(10)
Kumar Mangalam Birla Committee Report on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(1)
listing of initial public offerings, compliance with, s. 73, p. 913
Naresh Chandra Committee Report on Corporate Governance Executive Summary, see *App.* 256(2)
NR Narayana Murthy Committee Report on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(3)
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 2002, see *App.* 256(12)
SEBI Committee on Corporate Governance Guidelines to Indian Commercial Banks Listed in Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 256(5)

Corporate identity number [CIN], s. 20, p. 421
allotment of, s. 20, p. 421
Guidelines, 2000, see *App.* 37

Corporate veil, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Lifting corporate veil**"
lifting of, s. 34, p. 502
using company for diversion of business opportunities, s. 34, p. 520

Corporation, meaning of s. 2(7), p. 33
representation of, at meetings, s. 187, p. 1750
sole, not body corporate, s. 2(7), p. 25, s. 2, p. 33

Corporatisation and Demutualisation of Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 250

Cost Accounting Standard, see *App.* 326
Capacity Determination, (CAS-2), see *App.* 326
Classification of Cost (CAS-1), see *App.* 326
Cost of Production for Captive Consumption, (CAS-4), see *App.* 326
Overheads, (CAS-3), see *App.* 326

Cost and Expenses, appeals in case of refusal of transfer of shares etc., s. 111, p. 1365
appeals in case of refusal of transfer of shares etc., s. 111, p. 1365
derivative action, indemnity for, s. 10, p. 200
disqualification proceedings of, s. 203, p. 1880
members resolutions, circulations, s. 188, p. 1765
petition and litigation for, s. 10, p. 201
transfer of shares, wrongful refusal for, s. 111, p. 1365

Cost Audit (Report) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 26

Costs, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Costs, Charges and Expenses**"
Classification of Cost, Cost Accounting Standard, (CAS-1), see *App.* 326

Counter Guarantees, Guidance Note on Guarantees & Counter Guarantees given by Companies, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-4)

Court Fees, Schedule of Court Fee Stamps to be affixed on the Petitions/Applications filed with the Company Law Board, see *App.* 137

Court orders, transfer of shares, s. 111A, p. 1393

Court proceedings, deemed public company, in its altered name, s. 43-A, p. 579

Court Rules, Companies Court Rules, 1959, see *App.* 4

Court, Civil Court, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Company Court**"
Civil Court's jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 202
cognizance of offence, u/s. 58A & 58AA, s. 58-AAA, p. 771
companies court, meaning of, s. 2(11), p. 37
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Company Court**"
company deposits, jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 207
Company Law Board, means, in s. 75, s. 75, p. 935
—, not a, s. 10-FZA, p. 303
defined, s. 2(11), p. 25, s. 2, p. 37
District Court, s. 10, pp. 178, 180
family, jurisdiction in family companies, s. 10, p. 208
High Court exclusive jurisdiction of, s. 10, p. 180
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**High Court**"
inherent powers of civil court, s. 10, p. 186
inherent powers of company court, s. 10, p. 185
interim relief, power to grant, s. 10, pp. 208, 210
internal irregularities, no jurisdiction to interfere, s. 10, p. 201
'internal affairs', no jurisdiction to interfere, s. 10, p. 187
jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 202
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Jurisdiction**"
—, territorial, s. 10, p. 182
limits of jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 180
non-interferance, in company's affairs, principles of, s. 10, p. 189
ordinary civil Court, s. 10, p. 186
pending proceedings, before passing of 1956 Act, effect, s. 10, p. 185
power to wind up foreign and unregistered companies, compel grant of inspection of registers, etc., s. 163, p. 1602
reduction of capital, confirmation of, s. 100, pp. 1148, 1153
—, duty & power s. 102, p. 1171
revisional jurisdiction not barred, s. 10, p. 187
—, of High Court, s. 10, p. 187
shareholders rights, powers regarding variation of, s. 106, p. 1177
territorial jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 182
wrong Court, proceedings in, s. 10, p. 184

Credit Rating Agencies, see *App.* 205, 267
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

Credit Rating for Debt Instruments, • SEE UNDER "**Eligibility Norms for Companies Issuing Securities**"

Credit Rating, s. 117, p. 1416
agencies Regulations, s. 117, pp. 1416, 1422
debt instrument, credit rating for, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162

Credit Rating (*Contd.*)
debt instrument, required, s. 117, p. 1416
Requirement of credit rating, in case of Debt. Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162

Creditors, alteration of memorandum, interest of, CLB discretion, s. 17, p. 384
meeting of, compliance certificate, s. 170, p. 1655
memorandum, alteration of, consent of, to be obtained for confirmation of, s. 17(3)(b), p. 378
—, protection of, s. 17(6), pp. 379, 392
—, on reduction of capital, s. 100, p. 1149
penalty for concealing name of, s. 105, p. 1175
proxy, by, winding up, in, s. 176, p. 1711
reduction of capital, list of, entitled to object to, to be settled by court, s. 101(2)(b), p. 1164
—, objection by, s. 101, p. 1164
—, payment of, not consenting to, s. 101 (2)(c), p. 1165
representation of corporations at meetings, of, s. 187, p. 1750

Crime, company's liability for, s. 34, pp. 484, 489

Criminal Activities, corporate structure, using, for hiding, s. 34, p. 519

Criminal complaint, company, lodging by, s. 34, p. 481

Criminal liability, Cheques dishonour of, directors, s. 47, p. 606

Crystalisation of Charge, s. 124, p. 1469, s. 125, p. 1499
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Charges**"
specified event, on happening, s. 124, p. 1470
winding up, commencement, on, s. 124, p. 1470
company ceasing to be going concern, on, s. 124, p. 1470

Current Account Transactions, FEM (Current Account Transactions) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 104

Custodian of Securities, Prescribed Uniform Norms & Practices, 1996, see *App.* 204
Regulation of, SEBI by, s. 187-C, p. 1760
SEBI (Custodian of Securities) Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 202

Damages, article of association, alteration, breach of contract, liability, s. 31, p. 460

***De facto* directors,** disqualification under section 203, s. 203, p. 1863
holding company's directors, as, subsidiary in, s. 7, p. 175
liability in, subsidiary, company context, s. 4, p. 124
meaning, s. 203, p. 1863
who is, s. 7, p. 173
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Shadow Directors**"

Demat*, *De mat form, issue of securities, in, SEBI, guideline, s. 108, p. 1192
De mat of receipts, GDR/ADR, of, s. 108, p. 1191
De mat shares, transfer of, no right of refusal, s. 111A, p. 1368
Dematerialised form, evidence as, share certificate, s. 113, p. 1399
Dematerialize shares issue of securities in, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
initial public offer of securities, in, s. 68B, p. 823

Death, shareholder of, effect upon service of documents, s. 53, pp. 623, 627

Debenture certificate, delivery of delay in, made good, s. 113, p. 1401

Debenture Dividends, distribution of, s. 117, p. 1417

Debenture holders, protection of, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
sale of charged property, express power of, s. 117, p. 1423

Debenture Interest, s. 2, p. 38

Debenture Redemption Reserve, creation of, by FI, s. 117C, p. 1443

Debenture Stock, s. 2, pp. 38, 40

Debenture Trust Deed, s. 118, p. 1447
contents of, s. 117A, p. 1435

Debenture Trust Deed (*Contd.*)
copies, members and debenture-holders entitled to on payment, s. 118, p. 1448
CLB, petition to, s. 118, p. 1451
duties of trustees, s. 119, p. 1453
inspection & copies of, s. 117A, p. 1436
inspection, by members and debenture-holders, s. 118, p. 1450
—, fees for, s. 118, p. 1448
—, of, s. 118, p. 1450
position and powers of receivers and managers governed by, s. 123, p. 1463
powers of trustees, s. 119, p. 1453
powers to direct delivery of copies, s. 118, p. 1448
purpose and nature of, s. 117A, p. 1433
remuneration of trustee, s. 123, p. 1464
stamp duty, s. 118, p. 1451
time-limit for execution of, s. 117A, p. 1435
trustees, release from liability, s. 119, p. 1454
trustees, remuneration of, s. 119, p. 1453

Debenture Trustee, appointment of, s. 117, pp. 1416, 1417
appointment of, s. 117B, p. 1438
—, disqualification for, s. 117B, p. 1438
approval of, s. 117, p. 1417
compliance certificate, s. 117B, p. 1441
compliance officer appointed by, s. 117B, p. 1440
consent to act, as, s. 117B, pp. 1436, 1439
duties of, s. 117B, p. 1436, 1439
duty to furnish information to SEBI, s. 117B, p. 1440
Format for due diligence certificate, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. III-A, see *App.* 162
functions of, s. 117B, pp. 1436, 1439
liability, relief from, s. 119, p. 1454
petition to CLB by, s. 117B, p. 1442
powers and duties, s. 119, p. 1453
relief from liability, s. 119, p. 1454
remuneration, s. 119, p. 1453
Requirement in respect of Debenture Trustee, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 218
SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 217
trust deed, execution in favour of, s. 117, p. 1417
trustees, liability for, s. 119, p. 1451
who can act as, s. 117B, p. 1436

Debenture-holder, alteration of company's objects, notice to be given to, s. 17(1), p. 377
alteration of company's objects, notice to be given to, s. 17(1), p. 386
index of, Depositories Act, effect on particulars, s. 152A, p. 1570
index, s. 152, p. 1568
liability of trustee for, s. 119, pp. 1451, 1452
meetings of, s. 118, p. 1449
—, notice of, s. 118, p. 1450
mortgagees, adjustment between, s. 117, p. 1424
receiver, duty to make preferential payment, s. 123, p. 1462
—, officer of court, s. 123, p. 1462
—, position and duty, s. 123, p. 1463
—, right to demand of, appointment, s. 123, p. 1461
register and index of, s. 152, p. 1568
register of, s. 152, p. 1568
remedies of, s. 117, p. 1423
special interest with, s. 118, p. 1450
sureties for, release of, s. 118, p. 1450
trust deed, entitled to copy of, s. 118, p. 1447
trustee, for, liability of, s. 119, p. 1451
—, for, liability of, committee view, s. 119, p. 1452
—, for, liability of, s. 119, p. 1452
—, liability of, provision exempting trustee from liability void, s. 119, p. 1451
—, liability of, s. 119, pp. 1451, 1452
—, release from liability, s. 119, p. 1452
variation of rights, s. 118, p. 1449

Debentures, additional disclosures, s. 117, p. 1419
amount raised by issue of, not deposit, s. 58A, p. 742
application for and allotment of, s. 72, p. 837
as an actionable claim or chose in action, s. 2(12), p. 42
bearer, s. 2(12), p. 40, s. 117, p. 1413, s. 121, p. 1458
bearing interest less than bank rate, s. 117, p. 1420
bonds by public limited companies, floatation of, Guidelines for, s. 117, p. 1431
book closure, notice period, reduction in, s. 154, p. 1583
borrowing on, s. 117, p. 1411
buy back of, s. 77, p. 961
call money, interest on, s. 117, p. 1413
capital issues, resriction on further, s. 117, p. 1420
certificate of, company's obligation as to issue, s. 113, p. 1393
—, registration to be endorsed on certificate of, s. 133, p. 1517
charge, secured by *pari passu* series, registration of particulars, s. 128, p. 1509
commission on, particulars as to, s. 129, p. 1511
company's undertaking, disclosure of, s. 117, p. 1419
complaints, jurisdiction for, s. 117, p. 1429
compliance certificate issue of, s. 117, p. 1432
compliance certificate on redemption of, s. 117C, p. 1446
Consumer Forum and issue of, s. 2(12), p. 42
contracts to take, may be enforced by specific performance, s. 122, p. 1459
convention option, letter of, s. 117, p. 1417
conversion into shares, procedure for, s. 117, p. 1414
convertible debentures, s. 2, p. 41, s. 81, p. 1044
—, membership by, s. 41, p. 548
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Converitible Debentures**"
convertible security, promotor's contribution, computation of, s. 117, p. 1420
convertible, s. 108, p. 1239, s. 117, p. 1414
credit rating for, s. 117, p. 1416
debenture redemption reserve, duty of company to create, s. 117C, p. 1442
debenture trust deed, s. 118, p. 1450
debenture, creating floating charge, s. 123, p. 1460
debenture, stock different from, s. 2, p. 40
debt securities, as, s. 2(12), p. 39
declaration of holding in trust, s. 153-B, p. 1574
defined, s. 2(12), p. 25, s. 2, p. 38
definition of, s. 2(12), p. 38
directors, effect upon appointment of receiver, s. 123, p. 1461
disclosure in Balance sheet of redeemed, which can be issued, s. 121, p. 1458
disclosure of company's undertaking, s. 117, p. 1419
discount on, particulars to be filed for registration, s. 129, p. 1511
discount, issue at, s. 2(12), p. 41, s. 79, p. 997, s. 117, p. 1413
—, issue, conversion into right shares, s. 81, p. 1043
dollar loan, notes, as, s. 2(12), p. 38
fixed deposit is not, s. 2(12), p. 39
floating charge, secured by priority, of, affected by preferential payments, s. 123, p. 1460
foreign companies, s. 118, p. 1450
forfeiture of, s. 122, p. 1459
Fully convertible, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
guidelines, interpretation of, s. 117, p. 1428
Holding Company, holding of, by subsidiary in Holding Company, s. 42, p. 562
holding of, in trust, s. 153-B, p. 1574
includes any security of the company, s. 2, p. 39
interest on, s. 117, p. 1412
interpretation of guidelines, s. 117, p. 1428
'irredeemable', meaning, s. 120, p. 1455
Issue of Debentures Bearing Interest Less Than Bank Rate, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Issue of SEBI Guidelines, s. 117, p. 1416
Issue of, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Guidelines for Issue of Debt Instruments**"
—, (Terms of Issue of Debentures and Raising of Loans with option to convert such Debentures and Loans into Shares) Rules, 1977, see *App.* 13
—, at discount, s. 2(12), p. 41

Debentures (*Contd.*)

—, Secretarial Action Points, procedure, s. 117, p. 1431
issue proceeds, escrow account to be put in, s. 117C, p. 1445
issue, on rights basis minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 829
letter of option, filing of, s. 117, p. 1417
loan capital, method of raising, s. 117, p. 1411
loan distinguished from s. 2(12), p. 40
matured, transfer of, Investor Education and Protection & Fund, s. 117, p. 1428
merchant bankers, responsibility of, s. 117C, p. 1445
NCDS, additional conditions on repatriation basis, s. 117, p. 1430
NCDs, public issue, general permission for borrowing, s. 117, p. 1430
NCDs/PCDs, roll over of, s. 117, p. 1418
non-convertible, investment by NRI/OCB in, s. 117, p. 1429
—, minimum number of allottees, s. 117, p. 1417
—, purchase from subscribers, s. 117, p. 1420
—, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
not a clog on the equity of redemption, s. 120, p. 1455
NRI, purchase by, s. 117, p. 1414
offer for, permission necessary from Stock Exchange before issue of, s. 73(1), p. 886
particulars of charge, to be filed with ROC, s. 117C, p. 1445
Partly convertible, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
PCDs/PCDs, conversion of, s. 117, p. 1419
period date, notice period, reduction in, s. 154, p. 1583
perpetual, not a clog on equity of redemption, s. 120, p. 1455
perpetual, s. 120, p. 1455
power to re-issue, s. 121, p. 1456
premium on redemption, of, s. 78(2)(d), p. 988
prior debts not defeated by appointment of receiver, s. 123, p. 1460
priority of certain debts to, secured by floating charge, s. 123, p. 1460
prospectus required for issue of, s. 64, p. 808
Protection of debenture holders, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
public issue, additional conditions, s. 117, p. 1417
purchase of non-convertible part from subscribers, s. 117, p. 1420
purchase/sale of convertible, by NRI on repatriation basis, s. 108, p. 1252
record date, reduction in notice period for book closure, s. 154, p. 1583
redeemed or reissuable to be shown in balance-sheet, Schedule 'VI', Part I (Note (j)), s. 121, p. 1456
redemption default in, disqualification of directors, s. 117C, p. 1446
Redemption of non-convertible, s. 117, p. 1429
redemption of, s. 117C, p. 1445, s. 120, p. 1456
—, default in, director's disqualification, s. 120, p. 1456
redemption, Company Law Board's power to order, s. 120, p. 1456
—, default in, petition before CLB, s. 117C, p. 1445
registered, transfer of, s. 121, p. 1458
registration of, s. 128, p. 1509
re-issue of, s. 121 (5), pp. 1457, 1458
—, secured by registered mortgage, stamp on, s. 121, p. 1458
remedy of debenture holder, s. 117, p. 1416
—, action by, s. 117, p. 1426
—, adjustment between mortgagees, s. 117, p. 1424
—, foreclosure, s. 117, p. 1426
—, receiver, appointment of, s. 117, p. 1425
—, right to take possession of property, s. 117, p. 1424
—, sale of charged property s. 117, p. 1423
—, valuation of security, s.117, p. 1427
—, winding up petition, s. 117, p. 1427
restriction on creation of further liability, CLB may impose, s. 117B, p. 1441
right to obtain copies of and inspect trust deed, s. 118, p. 1450
roll over of NCDs/PCDs, s. 117, p. 1417
roll over of non convertible portions of partly convertible debentures/non convertible debentures by company not being in default, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, see *App.* 162
SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Regulations, 1993, s. 2(12), p. 41
SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Rules, 1993, s. 2(12), p. 41
SEBI Guidelines, for issue of convertible/non-convertible, s. 117, p. 1416

Debentures (*Contd.*)
SEBI, guidelines for issue of, s. 2, p. 42
security, duty of company to create, s. 117C, p. 1442
series of, containing any charge to be filed with registrar, s. 128, p. 1509
special provisions as to, s. 117, p. 1411, s. 122, p. 1459
specific performance of contract to take, s. 122, p. 1459
stamp duty on debenture trust deed, s. 2(12), p. 42
Stamp duty on letter of allotment of shares or debentures, Table of, see *App.* 135
stamp duty on re-issue of, s. 121, p. 1459
stamp duty on, s. 117, p. 1412
stock, s. 117, p. 1412
tax free bonds, floatation of, s. 117, p. 1431
time-limit for creation of charge, s. 117C, p. 1442
transfer, appeal against refusal to register, s. 111, pp. 1291, 1307
—, bulk lodgement, s. 108, p. 1196
—, of registered, s. 117, p. 1413, s. 121, p. 1458
—, of, s. 108, p. 1185
transferability, s. 2(12), p. 42
trust deed, s. 2(12), p. 41, s. 118, p. 1447
—, execution of, s. 117, p. 1417
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Debenture Trust Deed**"
trustee for, liability of, s. 119, p. 1451
—, liability of, s. 119, p. 1452
Trustee Rules, 1993, SEBI, Trustee Regulations, 1993, SEBI, s. 118, p. 1449
Trustees (Declaration of Holdings of Shares and Debentures) Rules, 1964, see *App.* 16
unsecured, deposit as, s. 2, p. 42
voting rights, new issues not to carry, s. 117, p. 1410

Debt Instruments, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Guidelines for Issue of Debt Instruments**"
credit rating for, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
credit rating required, s. 117, p. 1416
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
Guidelines for issue of, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
listing of, s. 73, p. 909
listing of, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
offer document, vetting, SEBI by, s. 56, p. 652
SEBI Guidelines relating to vetting of offer document for the issue of debt instruments, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
subordinated, issue of, s. 117, p. 1419
unsecured, issue of, s. 117, p. 1419

Debt Recovery Tribunal, appeal, secured creditor to file before, Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137
Civil Court Jurisdiction, *vis-a-vis*, s. 10, p. 207
jurisdiction of, s. 10-GB, p. 315

Debt Securities, s. 2(12), p. 39
listed companies, private placement by, s. 117, p. 1421
private placement of, listed company, s. 117, p. 1421
RBI guidelines, s. 117, p. 1422

Debts Recovery Appellate Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 1994, see *App.* 80

Debts Recovery Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 78

Debts Recovery Tribunal, Appellate Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 1994, see *App.* 80
Notifications for Establishment of Debts Recovery Appellate Tribunals, see *App.* 81
Recovery of Debts Due to Banks and Financial Institutions Act, 1993, see *App.* 77
Notifications for establishment of, with Place and Area of Jurisdiction of the Tribunal, see *App.* 79

Debts, allotment of shares in discharge, s. 81, p. 1035
payment of certain debts out of assets subject to floating charge in priority, s. 123, p. 1460

Decentralisation, Work relating to complaints against brokers and Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 235
Work relating to vetting of offer documents and registration of Merchant Bankers, see *App.* 235

Declaration of beneficial ownership of shares, beneficial interest, meaning of, s. 187-C, p. 1762
consequences of failure to declare, s. 187-C, p. 1762
Departments circular in regard to, s. 187-C, pp. 1757, 1760
duties of ostensible owner, s. 187-C(6), pp. 1758, 1760

Declaration of Holdings, Trustees (Declaration of Holdings of Shares and Debentures) Rules, 1964, see *App.* 16

Declaration, advocate etc, filing of, by, s. 33(2), p. 469
advocate etc, filing of, by, s. 33(2), p. 469
as to shares and debentures held in trust, s. 153-B, p. 1574
Companies Regulations, 1956, under, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
declaration of beneficial ownership of shares, s. 187-C, pp. 1757, 1760

Decree, company, against, s. 45, p. 590
company, same group, satisfaction of, lifting them corporate veil, s. 34, p. 502

Deeds, execution of, s. 48, p. 607

Deemed prospectus, s. 64, p. 808
offer for sale, SEBI Guidelines on, s. 64, p. 810

Deemed public company, s. 43A, pp. 565, 570, *et seq.*
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Private Company" "Public Company"**
abolition of the concept, s. 43A, p. 570
Act, application of, except where exempted, s. 43-A, p. 581
annual submission of certificates by private companies, s. 43-A, p. 583
appointment and remuneration upon managerial personnel, effect upon, s. 43-A, p. 581
commencement of business, certificate not required by, s. 147 p. 1559
computation, percentages of shareholding, s. 43 -A, p.574
conversion, court proceedings in its altered name, s. 43-A, p. 579
—, formalities to be complied with, s. 43-A, p. 575
—, general effects, s. 43-A, p. 579
default, penalty for not complying with provisions, s. 43-A, p. 583
deposits, acceptance or renewal, s. 43A, p. 578
differences between public limited and private limited, s. 43- A, p. 570
directors liability under Income-tax Act, s. 43 A, p. 582
equity and preference, share capital, to be included, s. 43-A, p. 575
exemptions, applicability of, s. 4, p. 133
filing fee, s. 43-A, p. 583
—, information to ROC, s. 43-A, p. 583
foreign company, applicability of deeming provisions, s. 43-A, p. 581
general effects of conversion, s. 43-A, p. 579
Government companies, applicability of provisions, s. 43-A, p. 584
holding 25% or more by public company, in, s. 43-A, p. 574
liability, director's personal, overdue taxes, s. 43-A, p. 582
managing director, effect on appointments & remuneration, on conversion, s. 43-A, p. 581
name change of, converting from Private Limited Company, s. 21, p. 424
percentage of shareholding, computation of, s. 43-A, p. 574
—, share capital means both equity and preference capital, s. 43-A, p. 575
pre-emptive agreement, s. 43A, p. 582
—, effect of conversion, on, s. 43A, p. 582
preference and equity, share capital, to be included, s. 43-A, p. 575
re-conversion into private company, not automatic by operation of law, s. 43-A, p. 582
re-conversion, s. 43-A, p. 582
reduction of number of members, position of, s. 45, p. 589
reduction of numbers, position of, s. 45, p. 590
relevant period, interpretation of, s. 43-A, p. 578
remuneration, managerial, Department's clarification, s. 43-A, p. 580
renunciations, rights of, s. 43-A, p. 581
reverting back, no change of articles necessary, s. 31, p. 466
rights issued, renunciation right of, s. 43-A, p. 581
rights of renunciation, s. 43-A, p. 581
share capital, both equity and preference capital, for computation of shareholding, s. 43-A, p. 575
shares in public company, s. 43-A, p. 582
statement in lieu of prospectus, s. 43A, p. 580
taxes, overdue, personal liability of directors, s. 43-A, p. 582
transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1323
turnover criterion, s. 43-A, p. 575
what is, s. 3, p. 110

Deeming provisions, Interpretation of Statutes, s. 1, p. 22

Defamation, company's, right to sue for, s. 34, p. 479

Default, meaning of, s. 5, p. 159
officers who are in, s. 5, p. 140
'officer in default', s. 2(31), p. 28
private company, in compliance of requirements, s. 43, p. 563

Defending Officer, expenses of, s. 201, p. 1844

Defined, company, s. 3, p. 92

Definitions, s. 2, p. 23
abridged prospectus, s. 2(1), p. 23
'alter', 'alterations', s. 2(1A), p. 18, s. 2, p. 23
Appellate Tribunal, s. 2(1B), p. 23, s. 2(1B), p. 32
'article', s. 2(2), p. 23, s. 2, p. 23
associate, s. 2(4), p. 24
'Banking company', s. 2(5), p. 25
'Board of Directors', s. 2(6), p. 25, s. 2, p. 32
'body corporate', s. 2(7), pp. 25, 33
'book and paper', s. 2(8), p. 25, s. 2, p. 34
'Branch office', s. 2(9), p. 25, s. 2, p. 35
'Company Law Board', s. 2(10A), p. 25
'Company', s. 2(10), p. 26, s. 2, p. 36
'Court', s. 2(11), p. 25, s. 2, p. 37
'debenture stock', s. 2(12), p. 26, s. 2, p. 39
'debenture', s. 2(12), p. 25, s. 2, p. 38
'deposit', s. 58-A, p. 740
Depositories Act, in, s. 2A, p. 91
depository, s. 2(12A), p. 26
derivative, s. 2(12B), p. 26
'director', s. 2(13), p. 26, s. 2, p. 46
'District Court', s. 2(14), p. 26, s. 2, p. 47
dividend, s. 2(14A), p. 26
'document', s. 2(15), p. 26
employees stock option, s. 2(15A), p. 26
'existing company', s. 2(16), p. 26
FEMA, 1999 and Regulations thereunder, s. 72, p. 847
'financial year', s. 2(17), p. 26, s. 2, p. 49
'Government company', s. 2(18), p. 26, s. 2, p. 49
'holding company', s. 2(19), p. 26, s. 4, p. 113
Hybrid, s. 2(19A), p. 26
industrial company, s. 2(19AA), pp. 26, 50
industrial undertaking, s. 2(19B), p. 26
information memorandum, s. 2(19B), p. 27
'insurance company', s. 2(21), p. 27
'issued generally', s. 2(22), p. 27, s. 2, p. 52
'limited company', s. 2(23), p. 27, s. 2, p. 52
Listed Public Companies, s. 2(23A), p. 27
'manager', s. 2(24), p. 27, s. 2, p. 53
'managing agent', s. 2(25), p. 27, s. 2, p. 56
'managing director', s. 2(26), p. 27, s. 2, p. 56
'member', s. 2(27), p. 28, s. 2, p. 58
'memorandum', s. 2(28), p. 28
'modify', 'modification', s. 2(29), p. 28, s. 2, p. 58
Networth, s. 2(29A), p. 28
'officer in default', s. 2(31), p. 28
'officer of functional', s. 2(30), p. 58
'officer', s. 2(30), p. 28, s. 2, p. 58
operating agency, s. 2(31AA), pp. 28, 61
option in securities, s. 2(31A), p. 28
'paid-up capital', s. 2(32), p. 29
'prescribed', s. 2(33), p. 29, s. 2, p. 62
'previous Companies Law', s. 2(34), p. 29
private company, s. 2(35), p. 63, s. 2(37), p. 29

Definitions (*Contd.*)
'private company', s. 2(35), p. 29, s. 3, pp. 92, 94
'prospectus', s. 2(36), p. 29, s. 2, p. 63
'public company', s. 3, pp. 92, 93, 94
'public holiday', s. 2(38), p. 29, s. 2, p. 64
'recognised stock exchange', s. 2(39), p. 29, s. 2, p. 65
'Registrar', s. 2(40), p. 29
'relative', s. 2(41), p. 29, s. 6, p. 168
'Schedule', s. 2(42), p. 29
'Scheduled Bank', s. 2(43), p. 29
SEBI, s. 2(45B), p. 85
'secretaries and treasurers', s. 2(44), p. 29
'secretary', s. 2(45), p. 30, s. 2, p. 70
Securities and Exchange Board of India, s. 2(45B), p. 30
securities, s. 2(45AA), p. 30, s. 2, p. 83
'share', s. 2(46), p. 30
shares with differential rights, s. 2(46A), p. 30
Sick Industrial Company, s. 2(46AA), pp. 30, 86
state level institution, s. 2(46AB), pp. 30, 87
'subsidiary company', s. 2(47), p. 31, s. 3, p. 109, s. 4, p. 113
'total voting power', s. 2(48), p. 31, s. 2, p. 87
'trading corporation', s. 2(49), p. 31
tribunal, s. 2(49A), pp. 31, 89
'variation', 'vary', s. 2(50), p. 31

Defunct Companies, reduction of capital, s. 100, p. 1160
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Winding up General Provisions"**

Delay, filing annual return, liability for, s. 162, p. 1600

Delegation of powers, scope and effect of by CLB, s. 10E, p. 218
tribunal, by, s. 10-FO, p. 274

Delegation, contracts, in connection, with, s. 46, p. 591
power of Central Government, delegated by CLB, s. 10-E, p. 218

Delisting of Securities, SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003, see *App.* 167
buy-back, not permissible on, s. 77A, p. 973

Dematerialised form, • SEE UNDER **"Demat"**

Denomination of equity shares, flexibility to fix, s. 2(46), p. 86

Department of Company Affairs, Addresses of the, and its field officer, viz., Regional Directors, Registrars of Companies, Official Liquidators and Pay and Accounts Officers, see *App.* 148

Departmental instructions, as regards procedure for grant of licence under section 25 of the Companies Act, see *App.* 9

Deployment of issue proceeds, s. 61, p. 786
see Chap. VIII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Deposit Rules, violation of, s. 58A, p. 740

Depositories (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 203

Depositories (Appeals to Central Government) Rules, 1998, see *App.* 200

Depositories and Participants Regulations, SEBI, by, s. 187-C, p. 1760

Depositories (Custodian of Securities) Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 202

Depositories, Act, 1996, s. 1. p. 3, see *App.* 199
agreements with depositories, Pre-issue obligations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
amendment, retrospective effect, s. 111A, p. 1370
appeals to Central Government Rules, 1998, see *App.* 174
appeals to Securities Appellate Tribunal Rules, 2000, see *App.* 203
company shareholding, s. 49, p. 614
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

Depositories (*Contd.*)
definition, s. 2(12A), p. 43
Depositories Act, s. 2A, p. 91
Depository System, advantages to members, s. 150, p. 1562
Directions on Inter-depository Transfer of Beneficial Ownership of Securities, see *App.* 204
electronic mode, service by, s. 51, p. 620
function, how it, s. 108, p. 1189
functioning of, s. 150, p. 1562
meaning of, s. 2(12A), p. 26
membership through, s. 41, p. 545
membership, on record, s. 41, p. 549
Prescribed Uniform Norms & Practices for Custodian of Securities, 1996, see *App.* 204
stamp duty, transfer of shares, not liable to, s. 108, p. 1212
transfer of shares, inter-depository, SEBI directions on, s. 111A, p. 1385
trust holdings, in, s. 187-B, p. 1756
voting rights, s. 187-B, p. 1756
words & expressions, definition, s. 2A, pp. 89, 90

Depositors, secured creditors are not, s. 58A, p. 731

Deposits, s. 58-A, p. 715 *et seq.*
• SEE ALSO UNDER "NBFC"
acceptance of deposits through Commercial Paper, see *App.* 63
acceptance, in excesses of limits, s. 58-A, p. 732
advertisement, s. 58-A, p. 746
—, Company Law Board clarification, s. 58-A, p. 746
—, for inviting, s. 58-A, p. 744
—, non-banking financial companies, s. 58-A, p. 733
—, provisions as to prospectus to apply, s. 58-A, p. 746
—, renewal, s. 58A, p. 743
—, signature on copy, s. 58-A, p. 746
alteration of terms & conditions, s. 58-A, p. 743
Annual Return of Deposits to be submitted by all RNBCs, Form NBS-1A, see *App.* 57
Annual Return of Deposits, NBS-1 First Schedule Annual Return of Deposits to be submitted by all NBFCs accepting/holding public deposits, and MNBCs-except Residuary Non-Banking Companies, see *App.* 51
application for repayment of, s. 10-E, p. 236
auditing practice as to, s. 58-A, p. 747
authorities competent for action, s. 58-A, p. 732
bonds secured by, s. 58-A, p. 742
bonds, or debenture, later secured by mortgage, s. 58-A, p. 742
borrowings included, s. 58-A, p. 740
brokerage, s. 58-A, p. 744
ceiling on interest rate, s. 58-A, p. 743
Certificate to be issue by Auditors of a Company pursuant to Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-12)
Commercial Paper, RBI Guidelines for issue of, s. 58-A, p. 754
Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 10
complaints about default, s. 58-A, p. 724
—, authority competent to take action, s. 58-A, p. 724
complaints, prosecution and penalties, s. 58-A, p. 724
Compliance Certificate, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 758
complicated questions of repayment, s. 58A, p. 730
compound interest, s. 50A, p. 743
constitutional validity of, s. 58-A, s. 58-A, p. 723
Consumer Forum, remedy before, s. 58A, p. 748
Credit Rating Agencies, see *App.* 267
debenture, fixed deposit is not, s.2(12), p. 39
—, secured by, s. 58-A, p. 742
—, unsecured, when, s. 2, p. 42
deemed public companies, acceptance by, s. 58-A, p. 745
—, acceptance or renewal of, s. 43A, p. 578
default, officer, who is in, s. 5, p. 158
—, repayment in, s. 58-A, p. 735
definition of, s. 58-A, p. 740
depositor, right of, payment of, chose-in action, s. 58-A, p. 723
directors interest, HUF, trusts, firm from, s. 58-A, p. 741

Deposits (*Contd.*)
exceeding the limits subsequently prescribed, effect of, s. 58- A(6), p. 716
excluded categories, s. 58-A, p. 732
exempted, bonds, debentures, s. 58A, p. 742
exemption of small scale units, s. 58-A, p. 732
exemption of, directors or shareholders from, s. 58-A, p. 741
extension and exemption, power of, s. 58-A, p. 734
extension of time for repayment, s. 58-A, p. 735
Extension of Time or Exemption under sub-section (8) of Section 58-A, Rules, 1979, see *App.* 11
extension of time, DCA guidelines, s. 58A, p. 734
FEM (Deposit) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 110
firms, in which directors interested, s. 58-A, p. 741
fixed deposit, debenture is not, s. 2(12), p. 39
free reserves, surplus, in profit & loss account, s. 58-A, p. 742
grievances of investors, s. 58A, p. 737
guarantee companies, application to, s. 58-A, p. 745
Housing Finance Companies (NHB) Directions, 2001, see *App.* 64
HUF from in which directors interested, s. 58-A, p. 741
includes loan and borrowings, s. 58-A (Expl.), p. 718
interest rate, ceiling, s. 58-A, p. 743
interest, increase in, prospective to be, s. 58-A, p. 743
—, payment of compound basis, s. 58-A, p. 743
invitation acceptance and renewal of, by private companies, s. 43-A(1C), p. 567
—, for, reflection of depreciation, s. 58-A, p. 718
—, only by advertisement, s. 58-A, p. 715
—, or acceptance of, s. 5 8-A, p. 718
Issue of NOC by SEBI regarding release of deposit placed by Issuer Companies with Regional Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 236
joint names, in shareholders, and non shareholders, s. 58-A, p. 741
jurisdiction for complaints, s. 58-A, p. 748
jurisdiction in matter of, s. 10, p. 207
limits, reduction due to losses, s. 58-A, p. 744
liquid utilisation, s. 58-A, p. 744
loans and other amounts included, s. 58-A (Exp.),-p. 718
maintenance charges, ceiling on processing and, s. 58A, p. 744
management charges, s. 58-A, p. 744
matured but unclaimed, s. 58-A, p. 744
matured, non-payment of, s. 58-A, p. 736
Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1977, see *App.* 56
money advanced when not, s. 58A, p. 740
Monthly Return on Repayment of Deposits, NBS-4 Monthly Return on Repayment of Deposits to be submitted by NBFCs holding public deposits whose application for Certificate of Registration under section 45-IA of RBI Act, 1934 have been rejected, see *App.* 51
moratorium to, SICA Companies, s. 58A, p. 747
NBFC, acceptance of, from NRI, s. 58A, p. 754
Nomination forms of, amendment, s. 58A, p. 739
Nomination Forms, Banking Companies (Nomination) Rules, 1985 (Relevant Extract), see *App.* 55
Non-Banking Financial Companies Acceptance of Public Deposits (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 51
Non-Banking Financial Companies and Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Advertisement) Rules (1977), see *App.* 58
Non-Banking Financial Companies Auditor's Report (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998 see *App.* 53
Non-Banking Financial Companies Prudential Norms (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 52
non-banking financial cos. applicability to and exemption, s. 58-A, p. 733
non-payment, remedy to depositor, s. 58A, p. 736
NRI, from, s. 58A, p. 754
paid-up capital and free reserves, interpretation, s. 58-A, p. 741
payment of, as property, s. 58-A, p. 723
penalty for default, s. 58-A, p. 724
—, authority competent, to take action, s. 58-A, p. 724
performance guarantee, amount received towards, s. 58A, p. 723
period for acceptance of, s. 58-A, p. 743
Private Company, from joint shareholders, s. 3, p. 109
Private Limited NBFC, by, s. 58-A, p. 750
procedure for acceptance of, Secretarial Action Points, s. 58-A, p. 763

Deposits (*Contd.*)
prohibition of, by companies with less NOF, s. 58A, p. 723
promoters, exemption of, s. 58-A, p. 741
proprietorship concern, accepting, from NRI, s. 58A, p. 755
prosecution for default, s. 58-A, p. 724
—, authority competent to take action, s. 58-A, p. 724
prospectus provisions apply, s. 58-B, p. 771
public includes section of public, Department's view, s. 58-A, p. 740
Quarterly Return on Exposure to Capital Market, Forms NBS-6, to be filled by all NBFCs holding public deposits of Rs. 50 crores and above and RNBCs having aggregate liabilities to the depositors of Rs. 50 crores and above as on March 31, 2002, see *App.* 52
RBI (Non-Banking Financial Companies) Returns Specifications, 1997, see *App.* 54
RBI Act, overriding effect of, s. 58-A, p. 723
refund of, s. 58-A, p. 719
—, u/s. 45-QA, s. 58A, p. 731
—, writ remedy, s. 58-A, p. 726
refund, failure to, is not continuing offence, s. 58-A, p. 719
remedies, under Consumer Protection Act, s. 58A, p. 748
—, under CrPC, s. 58-A, p. 748
'renewal', advertisement, need for, s. 58-A, p. 745
—, after commencement of Companies (Amendment) Act, 1988, s. 58-A, p. 715
—, meaning of and period, s. 58-A, p. 743
repayment from working capital loan, s. 58AA, p. 768
repayment of, power of CLB, NBFC, s. 58A, p. 737
repayment, application to CLB for, s. 58-A, p. 763
—, default in, s. 58-A, p. 735
—, direction by CLB, s. 58-A(9), pp. 717, 735
—, enforcement by CLB, s. 58A, p. 749
—, further extension of time, s. 58A, p. 730
—, losses, effect of, s. 58-A, p. 744
—, moratorium to relief undertakings, s. 58-A, p. 747
—, not renewed deposits, s. 58-A(3A), pp. 716, 718, s. 58-A, p. 735
—, rule for, company deposit, s. 58A, p. 735
—, stringent rules for, s. 58-A, p. 736
Reporting Format of Half-yearly statement of Capital Funds, NBS-2, Reporting Format of Half-yearly statement of Capital Funds, Risk Assets/Exposures and Risk Asset Ratio, etc., see *App.* 52
Reserve Bank Directions, RBI (Non Banking Financial Companies) Returns Specifications, 1997, *NBS-3* Quarterly Return of statutory liquid assets to be submitted by NBFCs *vide* section 45-IB(2) of RBI Act, 1934, see *App.* 54
—, *NBS-3A* Quarterly Return of statutory liquid assets to be submitted by NBFCs *vide* section 45-IB(2) of RBI Act, 1934, see *App.* 54
—, *NBS-5* Monitory and Supervisory Return to be submitted by all NBFCs, RNBDs holding public deposits of Rs. 20 crores and above as per the last audited balance sheet, see *App.* 54
Residuary Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1987, see *App.* 57
return as to, failure continuing offence, s. 58-A, p. 719, 724, 749, 759
return of, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 759
return, Nil, not necessary, s. 58-A, p. 745
revolving, investment of equal amount, s. 58-A, p. 745
—, utilization of, s. 58-A, p. 745
rules, violation, unfair trade practice as, s. 58-A, p. 749
Secretarial Practice Notes for MNBCs, s. 58A, p. 763
shareholder, meaning of, s. 58-A, p. 740
SICA Companies, moratorium, s. 58A, p. 747
small depositor, private companies, applicability to, s. 58AA, p. 768
small scale industrial units exemption of, s. 58-A, p. 732
Submission of statutory return on liquid assets and special return by NBFCs, see *App.* 54
subsidy under outright grant or subsidy scheme, s. 58-A, p. 741
terms and conditions of such deposits, as may be prescribed by R.B.I., s. 58-A(3)(a), p. 715
terms and conditions, alteration, s. 58-A, p. 743
trusts, in which directors, interested, s. 58-A, p. 741
unsecured bonds, deposit, when, s. 2, p. 42
unsecured, convertible debentures, s. 58-A, p. 742

Depreciation, depreciation accountings, (AS-6), see *App.* 316
Guidance Note on Accounting for Depreciation in companies, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-25)

Derivative action, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Minority Shareholder Action**" and "**Oppression and Management**"
allowable when, s. 10, p. 191
claim, when can be filed, s. 10, p. 191
cost of petition and litigation, s. 10, p. 201
exceptions not exhaustive, s. 10, p. 200
expropriation, minority rights of, s. 10, p. 199
form of action, s. 10, p. 188
fraud on minority, s. 10, p. 197
fraud, s. 10, p. 197
illegal transactions, s. 10, p. 192
indemnity for costs and expenses, s. 10, p. 200
individual membership rights, s. 10, p. 195
judicial non-interference, reasons for, s. 10, p. 189
minority shareholder, s. 10, p. 188
oppression and mismanagement, s. 10, p. 196
personal rights of shareholder, s. 10, p. 195
reasons for judicial non-interference, business judgment, s. 10, p. 190
—, multiplicity of suits, s. 10, p. 191
—, proper plaintiff doctrine, s. 10, p. 191
—, ratification, s. 10, p. 191
—, wishes of majority, s. 10, p. 190
residuary category, s. 10, p. 200
resolution requiring special majority, s. 10, p. 193
special majority, Act requires, s. 10, p. 193
ultra vires acts, s. 10, p. 192
where lies and where it does not, s. 10, p. 200
wrongdoers in control, s. 10, p. 194

Derivative Contracts, FEM (Foreign Exchange Derivative Contracts) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 125
SEBI Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Trading in Derivative Products, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/011/061/2000, dt. 1-2-2000,* see *App.* 185(6)
SEBI Scheme for Introduction of Exchange Traded Interest Rate Derivative Contracts, see *App.* 169
SEBI Suggestive Bye-laws for Regulation and Control of Trading and Settlement of Derivative Contracts, see *App.* 171

Derivatives Trading, SEBI Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Derivatives Trading, see *App.* 185(52)

Derivatives, s. 73, p. 923
amendment, background of, s. 2(12B), p. 44
contracts, s. 2(12B), p. 45
—, foreign exchange, s. 2(12), p. 46
definition, s. 2(12B), p. 43
FAQs & General Notes, see *App.* 172
meaning of, s. 2(12B), p. 26
—, under SCR Act, s. 2(12B), p. 44
SEBI Advisory Committee on Derivatives—Report on Development and Regulation of Derivative Markets in India submitted to SEBI, see *App.* 170
SEBI Circulars and Press Releases on Derivatives, see *App.* 173
trading in India, s. 2(12B), p. 45
trading, guidelines for participation in, s. 2(12), p. 46
types of, s. 2(12B), p. 45
value of, s. 2(12B), p. 45

Description, meaning of, s. 30, p. 455

Designated Financial Institution, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
Guidelines for Issue of Capital by, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines, s. 67, p. 818

Designated Stock Exchange, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

Destruction of Records, (in the Offices of the Regional Directors) Rules, 1976, see *App.* 32
Office of the Public Trustee (Destruction of Records) Rules, 1984, see *App.* 34
Offices of the Company Law Board Benches (Destructions of Records) Rules, 1980, see *App.* 31
Regional Directors, in the offices of, Rules, 1976, see *App.* 32

Development Financial Institutions, Guidelines on issue of Securities by, see *App.* 190
issue of securities, guidelines f or, s. 4A, p. 140

Differential Pricing, • SEE UNDER **"Pricing by Companies Issuing Securities"**

Differential rights, shares with, detained, s. 2(46A), p. 30
voting power with, s. 2(48), p. 88

Differential voting rights to, share capital with, s. 86, p. 1110
Companies (Issue of Share Capital with Differential Voting Rights) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 39
provisions in foreign enactments, as to, s. 86, p. 1111
variation from one share-one vote, s. 86, p. 1111

Director's Relatives (Office or Place of Profit) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 43

Director's Report, directory Provision, construction of, s. 1, p. 15

Director-in-charge, s. 197-A, p. 1830

Directors, s. 2(13), p. 26, s. 2, p. 46
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Managing Director"** and **"Board of Director"**
accustomed to act as directors, 'persons', s. 7, p. 170
actual authority, s. 46, p. 596
allotment, duty in, s. 69, p. 830
altering liability of directors, s. 16, p. 375
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Alternate Director"**
apparent authority, s. 46, p. 596
appointment, articles of Assn, to work according, s. 26, p. 450
—, civil court jurisdiction, questioning of, s. 10, p. 205
—, notice as to, s. 173, p. 1680
articles providing for relief against liability, s. 201, p. 1844
assignment of company's contract, to, s. 47, p. 603
assistant directors, s. 197-A, p. 1830
authority persons dealing in good faith, s. 46, p. 594
authority to act, on behalf of company, s. 46, p. 593
Board of, s. 2(6), p. 32
—, ICSI Guidance Note on Meetings of the Board of Directors, see *App.* 312(2)
—, ICSI Guidance Notes on Meetings of the Board of Directors (SS-1), see *App.* 311
calls on shares, s. 91, p. 1129
Companies (Appointment of Small Shareholders' Directors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 40
Companies (Disqualification of Directors under section 274(1)(g) of the Companies Act, 1956) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 44
companies contracts, personal liability under, s. 46, p. 592
consent, power to sign, s. 46, p. 591
de facto, who is, s. 7, p. 173
deemed public company, liability for overdue taxes, s. 43-A, p. 582
definition and meaning, s. 2(13), p. 26, s. 2, p. 46
Director's Relatives (Office or Place of Profit) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 43
director-in-charge, s. 197-A, p. 1830
Disqualification of, Companies (Disqualification of Directors under section 274(1)(g) of the Companies Act, 1956) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 44
disqualification of, losses, company running in, s. 203, p. 1856
disqualifications, s. 203, p. 1853
—, failure to file return, s. 159, p. 1590
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Disqualification of directors"**
Essential Commodities Act, s. 5, p. 147
Excise duties, s. 5, p. 158
executive, assistant or special directors, s. 197-A, p. 1830
fiduciary duties, issue of further shares, in, s. 81, p. 1037
fiduciary duty, of rights shares in, s. 81, p. 1037
Food Adulteration Act, s. 5, p. 147
fraudulent persons, disqualification of, s. 203, pp. 1850, 1853
further issue of capital, fiduciary duty of, s. 81, p. 1037
illegal association, liability for, s. 11, p. 339
include persons occupying position as, s. 2(13), p. 26, s. 7, p. 170
increase in remuneration to require Govt. sanction, number, alteration of articles by, s. 31, p. 462
indemnity, expenses of defence against, s. 201, p. 1844

Directors (*Contd.*)
Insecticide Act, s. 5, p. 146
interest in other companies, notice of meetings to be mentioned in, s. 173, p. 1682
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Interested Directors"**
investment by company, in joint name with, s. 49, p. 614
irregular acts, ratification by altering articles, s. 31, p. 464
irregular allotments, liability to compensate, s. 71, p. 837
knowledge of, when company's, s. 34, p. 493
knowledge, company's knowledge as, s. 5, p. 160
Labour Laws, s. 5, p. 144
liability for indemnity clause void, defences against contravention in complying with disclosure requirements, s. 56, p. 649
liability for indemnity clause void, s. 201, p. 1844
—, dishonourned cheques, s. 5, p. 148, s. 47, p. 606
—, in issuing share certificate, s. 84, p. 1093
—, income tax, s. 5, p. 157
—, indemnity against expenses of defence, s. 201, p. 1844
—, insurance against, s. 201, p. 1846
—, s. 56, defences, s. 56, p. 649
—, signing cheque without disclosing his status, s. 47, p. 508
—, under other enactments, s. 5, p. 143
—, under s. 56, p. 649
—, whether company's, s. 34, p. 501
liability of, whether company's, s. 34, p. 501
management, vested in Central Government, position of, s. 2 (13), p. 47
manager, as not, s. 2(13), p. 47
member by qualification shares, s. 41, p. 545
nominated by President of India, s. 26, p. 450
nomination of candidate, improper rejection of, s. 173, p. 1680
nominee, holding company of, s. 4, p. 118
non-executive, role of, s. 197-A, p. 1831
notice to company, served through, s. 51, p. 619
'officer in default' when, s. 5, p. 140
ostensible authority, s. 46, p. 596
perquisites of, person in accordance with whose instructions, treated as, s. 7, p. 170
—, to be included in remuneration, s. 198(4) Expl., p. 1835
person in accordance with whose instructions, accustomed to act, interpretation, s. 7, p. 170
—, treated as, s. 7, p. 170
—, who fulfils functions of, whether, s. 2(13), p. 46
position and function determine, s. 2, p. 47
position in winding-up by Court, when Central Government management, s. 2(14), p. 47
post dated cheque, liability for, s. 34, p. 495
powers of, refusal of transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1307
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Board of Directors"**
privilege in general meeting, s. 175, p. 1698
prospectus, non-compliance, s. 56, p. 649
provision relieving from liability void, s. 201, p. 1844
qualification shares, allotment out of further issue, s. 81, p. 1037
rectification of register of member, exceeding authority in, s. 111, p. 1356
—, powers to, s. 111, p. 1358
rectification, authority, restrictions on, s. 111, p. 1357
removal of, civil court jurisdiction, questioning, s. 10, p. 205
—, requisitioning EGM for, s. 169, p. 1651
servant, distinguished, s. 2(13), p. 47
shadow directors, position of, s. 7, p. 170
special directors, s. 197-A, p. 1830
statement *in lieu* of prospectus, liability of, for mis-statements, s. 44(4), p. 586, s. 70(5), p. 832
tax-free remuneration to, prohibition of payment of, s. 200, p. 1843
uncalled capital, power to call for *bona fide* purposes, s. 92, p. 1133
undischarged insolvent functioning as, punishable, s. 202, p. 1847
undischarged isolvent, offences of strict liability, s. 202, p. 1850
variously described, s. 2(13), p. 46
voting rights, who are also shareholders, s. 182, p. 1734

Director in default, • SEE UNDER **"Officer who is in default"**

'Directory', 'Mandatory' Provisions, Meaning and Construction, s. 1, p. 15

Disclaimer Clause, Inclusion in offer document, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Disclosure and Presentation, Financial Instruments: Disclosure and Presentation (IAS 32), see *App.* 319

Disclosures and Investor Protection Guidelines for Rights Issues, see Chap. III of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Disclosures in Abridged Prospectus and Letter of Offer, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Disclosures, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Director—Disclosure of interest"**
Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance (IAS 20), see *App.* 319
Accounting Policies, disclosure of accounting policies, (AS-1), see *App.* 316
Particulars in the Report of Board of Directors, Rules, 1988, see *App.* 22
See Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Discontinuing Operations, (IAS 35), see *App.* 319
Accounting Standards, (AS-24), see *App.* 316

Discount, Commissions, etc. • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Pricing by Companies Issuing Securities"**
Banking companies, applicability to, s. 79, p. 998
CLB, petition to, s. 79, p. 998
debentures issued at, s. 2(12), p. 41
—, conversion into shares, s. 79, p. 997
default, penalty for, s. 79, p. 998
forfeited shares, issue of, s. 79, p. 997
issue at, allottees liable, s. 79, p. 995
issue of shares at, s. 79, p. 993
particulars to be stated in prospectus, s. 79, p. 998
power to allow, s. 76, pp. 937, 940
prospectus to be disclosed in, s. 79, p. 998
requirement for issue of, s. 79, p. 995
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Commission & Discounts"**

Discretion, Company Law Board, power to use, s. 10-E, p. 229

Dishonour of cheque, s. 34, p. 478
complaint by company, s. 34, p. 478

Disinvestment of shares, ECB proceeds, utilisation, s. 108, p. 1258
public sector enterprises by, s. 73, p. 923
public sector undertakings by, s. 108, p. 1257
public undertakings, s. 108, p. 1257

Disinvestment, public sector undertakings, by, s. 108, p. 1257
public sector undertakings, substantial acquisition by, s. 108, p. 1258
RBI Guidelines for, of equity shares by Foregin Investors, see *App.* 276

Disposal of Records (in the Offices of Registrar of Companies) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 33
Companies (Preservation and Disposal of Records) Rules, 1966, see *App.* 17

Disproportionate Voting Rights, issue of shares carrying, prohibited, s. 88, p. 1122
issue of shares carrying, what amounts to issue of shares carrying, s. 90, p. 1125
private company, executed, s. 88, p. 1122
prohibition of, Department's clarification, import of, Ss. 88 and 93, s. 88, p. 1122
—, repealed, s. 88, p. 1122
termination of, in existing companies, s. 89, p. 1123
—, non-compliance, effect, s. 90. p. 1125

Disputed ownership, shares, transfer, rectification of, s. 111A, p. 1378

Disqualification of directors, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Fraudulent Persons Restraint on Managing Companies"**
accounting records, importance of, s. 203, p. 1857
accounting records, poor, s. 203, p. 1861
administrative receiver, procedure on appointment of, s. 203, p. 1872
allotment of shares to maintain control, s. 203, p. 1856
application for, two companies, in respect of, s. 203, p. 1885

Disqualification of directors (*Contd.*)
civil proceeding, resotration of, s. 203, p. 1878
commercial misjudgment, s. 203, p. 1854
—, morality, s. 203, p. 1854
Companies (Disqualification of Directors under section 274(1)(g) of the Companies Act, 1956) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 44
consent order, without full trial, s. 203, p. 1880
corporate funds, misapplication of, s. 203, p. 1858
cost of litigation, s. 203, p. 1884
costs of application, s. 203, p. 1880
criminal proceedings, postponement hearing pending, s. 203, p. 1878
de facto, directors of, s. 203, pp. 1863, 1865
defective orders, amendment under slip rule, s. 203, p. 1885
delay in presenting application, s. 203, p. 1882
delay in proceedings, s. 203, p. 1882
demerger without consideration, s. 203, p. 1858
disqualifying orders, when to be passed, s. 203, p. 1850
errors, s. 203, p. 1854
European Convention on Human Rights, proceedings whether violative of, s. 203, p. 1883
evidence under compulsion, s. 203, p. 1871
evidence, matters of, s. 203, p. 1870
—, other proceedings, s. 203, p. 1871
expert evidence, proceedings for order, in, s. 203, p. 1872
Factories Act, offences under, s. 203, p. 1872
findings of fact, interference with, s. 203, p. 1872
foreign companies, leave in the context of, s. 203, p. 1875
incompetence, gross, s. 203, p. 1858
insider trading, s. 203, p. 1869
investigation report of inspector, s. 203, p. 1872
investigation, official receiver's power of, s. 203, p. 1872
irresponsible trading, s. 203, p. 1858
jurisdiction, s. 203, p. 1885
leave of court, for using old name, s. 203, p. 1879
leave to disqualified director for use of old name, s. 203, p. 1879
leave to disqualified director in company's interest, s. 203, p. 1879
leave to work as general manager, during period of disqualification, s. 203, p. 1879
leave, commercial approach in granting, s. 203, p. 1880
—, grant of, by court, s. 203, p. 1873
length of, s. 203, p. 1866
—, appeal against, s. 203, p. 1868
limitation, period of, s. 203, p. 1881
losses, company running in, s. 203, p. 1856
low price, property selling at substantially, s. 203, p. 1858
management, meaning, for purposes of, s. 203, p. 1863
miscalculations, s. 203, p. 1854
non-executive director, fitness of, s. 203, p. 1861
non-executive, unfit, s. 203, p. 1860
offence in connection with management, s. 203, p. 1869
privilege of limited liability, non observance of duties, s. 203, p. 1853
proceedings for, duties of directors, in, s. 203, p. 1875
proceedings, nature of, s. 203, p. 1884
resident abroad of, s. 203, p. 1885
revival of, striking out after, s. 203, p. 1882
rules made u/s. 274(1)(g), s. 159, p. 1590
selective payments to creditors, s. 2 03, p. 1861
shadow directors of, s. 203, p. 1863
statement of facts agreed between parties, s. 203, p. 1881
statutory provisions and regulations, violations of, s. 203, p. 1857
stay of proceedings on understanding, s. 203, p. 1878
stay/suspension of orders, s. 203, p. 1884
striking out proceedings, s. 203, p. 1882
ten days notice requirement of, s. 203, p. 1880
trading when financial position unsatisfactory, s. 203, p. 1859
unfitness for management, s. 203, p. 1859
wrongful dismissal proceedings, evidence from, s. 203, p. 1871

Disqualification, Appointment and removal of Directors, jurisdiction for questioning, s. 10-GB, p. 313
provisions imposing, construction of, s. 1, p. 23

Dissenting Shareholders, rights of, s. 107, p. 1181
variation of rights of, s. 106, pp. 1176, 1177

Dissolution, Company Law Board, of, s. 10-FA, p. 251

District Court, defined, s. 2 (14), pp. 26, 47
jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 180
—, without notification, s. 10, p. 184

Diversion, business opportunities, using company for, corporate veil, s. 34, p. 520

Dividend rights, abeyance, till shares fully paid up, s. 88, p. 1122
variation under statutory authorisation, Department's view, s. 106, p. 1180

Dividend Tax, Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-39)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-39)

Dividends, Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-39)
arrears of preferential, s. 85, p. 1105
calls on shares, in proportion to amount paid up, s. 93, p. 1134
capital, restructuring by paying, s. 94, p. 1140
Companies Unpaid Dividend (Transfer to General Revenue Account of the Central Government) Rules, 1978, see *App.* 21
Declaration of Dividend out of Reserves, Rules, 1975, see *App.* 20
disproportionate rights as to, prohibited in future issues of shares, s. 88, p. 1122
—, saving of existing shares, s. 90, p. 1125
distribution of, requiring approval of D/T, s. 117, p. 1417
Guidance Note on Provision for proposed Dividend, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-5)
ICSI Guidance Note on Dividend, see *App.* 312(5)
ICSI Guidance Notes on Dividend (SS-3), see *App.* 311
interim, to include, s. 2(14A), p. 47
joint shareholder, payment to, s. 41, p. 552
meaning of, s. 2(14A), p. 26
paid to transferee, s. 108, p. 1208
payable only out of profits, proportionate to capital paid- up, s. 93, p. 1134
Preference Shares (Regulation of Dividends) Act, 1960, see *App.* 287
preference shares, payment of, s. 85, p. 1105
Proposed, Guidance Note on Provision for proposed Dividend, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-5)
transfer of shares, effect on payment, s. 108, p. 1208

Doctrine, constructive notice, s. 26, p. 450

Documentation, (AAS-3), see *App.* 317

Documents, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Service of Documents"**
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Register of Companies Registration"**
attorney for correction of, s. 33, p. 475
authentication of, s. 54, p. 628
Common Seal, affixed on, presumption of validity, s. 48, p. 608
defined, s. 2(15), p. 26
'duly stamped', s. 108, p. 1212
filed with ROC, rectification of, s. 52, p. 621
filing of, additional fees for belated, s. 33, p. 473
filing with ROC, s. 52, p. 623
manner of service of, on company, s. 51, p. 620, s. 52, p. 621, s. 53, p. 623
meaning of, s. 2(15), p. 26, s. 2(15), p. 48
members, manner of service of, on, s. 53, p. 623
summons, notice etc., includes, s. 2(15), p. 26
transfer of shares, time for, lodgement, s. 108, p. 1196

Domestic concern, issue of shares, when, s. 67, p. 817

Donation, Allotment of shares, by way of, prohibited, s. 70, p. 834

Donations, Companies (Donations to National Fund) Act, 1951, see *App.* 286
section 293-A of the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-14)

Dot.com Companies, Accounting Standards Sub-Committee on, see *App.* 228
Accounting by Dot-com Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-45)

Draft Offer Document, computer floppy on, s. 56, p. 659
public making of, s. 56, p. 661

Draft prospectus, • SEE UNDER "**Prospectus**"

Drugs and Cosmetics Act, officer in default, under, s. 5, p. 148

Due Diligence Certificate, Format for Due Diligence Certificate after the issue has opened but before it closes for subscription (*Clause* 5.3.3.2(iv)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. VI, *App.* 162
Format for Due Diligence Certificate at the tie of opening of the issue (*Clause* 5.3.3.2(iii)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. V, *App.* 162
Format for Due Diligence Certificate at the time of filing the offer document with ROC (*Clause* 5.3.3.2(ii)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. IV, *App.* 162
Format of Due Diligence Certificate to be given by Lead Merchant Banker(s) alongwith draft offer document (*Clause* 5.3.3.1), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. III, *App.* 162

Duplicate shares, Company Law Board's jurisdiction to issue, s. 111A, p. 1383

Earnings per Share, (IAS 3), see *App.* 319
Accounting Standards, (AS-20), see *App.* 316

ECB proceeds, utilisation of, in disinvestment, s. 108, p. 1258

Economic activity, specific, allocation of, s. 20, p. 422

Economic offence, annual return, every default in filing is not an, s. 162, p. 1600
Economic Offences, (Inapplicability of Limitation) Act, 1974, see *App.* 288
Inapplicability of Limitation Act, 1974, see *App.* 288

EDIFAR, see *App.* 229
Contact Details, see *App.* 229(3)
EDIFAR FAQs, see *App.* 229(4)
EDIFAR Registration Form, see *App.* 229(2)
Electronic Data Information Filing and Retrieval (EDIFAR), *SEBI/SMD/SE/Cir-23/2003/18/06*, Dated 2-6-2003, see *App.* 229(12)
—, *SMD/POLICY/Cir-13/02, Dated 20-6-2002*, see *App.* 229(7)
—, *SMD/Policy/Cir-23/02, Dated 17-9-2002*, see *App.* 229(9)
—, *SMD/Policy/Cir- 27/02, Dated 20-12-2002*, see *App.* 229(10)
—, *SMD/Policy/Cir-10/2003, Dated 17-3-2003*, see *App.* 229(11)
Electronic Data Information Filing and Retrieval System (EDIFAR), *SMD/POLICY/Cir-17/02, Dated 3-7-2002*, see *App.* 229(8)
SEBI to Look into Internet Surveillance, Enforcement and other Related Regulatory Issues, Press Release, Ref. No. PR 192/2000, dated 20-9-2000, see *App.* 229(5)
Unified Electronic Information Gathering and Retrieval System, Press Release Reference No. PR 203/2000, dt. 16-10-2000, see *App.* 229(6)
Various Forms to be Filed by Various Companies, see *App.* 229(1)

EEC Developments, form of contracts, s. 46, p. 597

Effects of Changing Prices, Information Reflecting the Effects of Changing Prices (IAS 15), see *App.* 319

Electronic media, notice, through, s. 53, p. 627
publication of consultation document, s. 53, p. 627

Eligibility Norms For Companies Issuing Securities, Conditions for issue of securities, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Credit Rating for Debt Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Exemption from Eligibility Norms, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Filing of offer document, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Outstanding Warrants or Financial Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Partly Paid-up Shares, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Public Issue by Listed Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Public Issue by Unlisted Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162

Emblems and Names (Prevention of Improper Use) Act, 1950, see *App.* 290

Employee Benefits, (IAS 19), see *App.* 319

Employees Retirement Benefits, Accounting for Retirement Benefits in the Financial Statements of Employees, (AS-15), see *App.* 316

Employees Stock Option, meaning of, s. 2(15A), p. 26
Employees Stock Option Scheme and Employees Stock Purchase Scheme, Guidelines, 1999, see *App.* 174
Government decides to extend employees stock option to all companies engaged in 'it software' and 'it services', see *App.* 174(1)
Guidelines for issue of ADR/GDR Linked Employees Stock Options by the Indian Companies Engaged in Information Tech-nology Software and Information Technology Services—Expansion in the Scope to Cover Employees of Subsidiary Companies, see *App.* 174(2)
Further Liberalisation in the Guidelines for issue of ADR/GDR Linked Employees Stock Options by the Indian Companies, see *App.* 174(3)
Employees Stock Option Scheme for Public Sector Enterprises, see *App.* 279
Employees Stock Option Scheme, s. 81, p. 1048
Bona fide employees, to be allotted to, s. 81, p. 1048
buy-back of securities under, s. 77A, p. 979
definition, s. 2(15A), p. 48
resident outside India, issue to, under, s. 81, p. 1049
SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1048

Employees, Companies (Particulars of Employees) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 23
financial assistance to, for purchasing shares, s. 77, pp. 954. 958
knowledge of, when company's, s. 34, p. 493
National Company Law Tribunal, of, s. 10-FK, p. 268
shares purchase for benefit of, s. 77, pp. 952, 958

Enemy character, company as, s. 34, p. 486

Enforcement, Companies (Second Amendment) Act, 2002, of, s. 1, p. 9
order of Tribunal, s. 10-FZA, p. 306

English Law, s. 23, p. 434
application of, s. 1, p. 14

Enquiry Officer, SEBI (Procedure for Holding Enquiry by Enquiry Officer and Imposing Penalties) Regulations, 2002, see *App.* 155

Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, Guidance Note on Accounting for Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-62)

Equity share capital, s. 4, p. 121, s. 86, p. 1109
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Premium"**
equity shares, meaning, s. 86, p. 1110
nominal value of, s. 4, p. 121

Equity shares, denomination of, flexibility to fix, s. 2(46), p. 86
differential rights with, s. 86, p. 1109
ICSI guidance note on and check list, s. 86, p. 1112
meaning of, s. 86, p. 1112
private company, applicability of, s. 86, p. 1112

Equity Stock Futures and Options, Guidance Note on Accounting for Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-62)

Equity Support Scheme, Guidelines for Equity Support Scheme, see *App.* 272

ESOPS, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Employees Stock Option Scheme"**
issue of sweat equity, s. 79, p. 997
issue of capital under, s. 81, p. 1048

Essential Commodities, officer in default, s. 5, p. 147

Establishment in India of Branch or Office or other place of Business, FEM (Establishment in India of Branch or Office or other place of Business) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 124

Estoppel, allotment of shares, payment as to, s. 84, p. 1092
allotment of shares, recission, against, s. 71, p. 837

Estoppel (*Contd.*)
allotment of shares, share certificate, dividend payment does not create, s. 84, p. 1091
—, title as to, s. 84, p. 1091
Register, company estopped by contents of, s. 164, p. 1609

Euro Convertible Bonds, salient features of, s. 72, p. 876

Euro Issue (GDR), s. 72, pp. 874, 881
Global Depository Receipt, Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds and Ordinary Shares (Through Global Depository Receipt Mechanism) Scheme, 1993, see *App.* 119
Guidelines for, see *App.* 120
listing of, s. 72, p. 881
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Global Depository Receipt**"

European Communities Act, impact, on company law in UK, s. 13, p. 358
ultra vires and dealings in goods faith, s. 13, p. 359

European Community Directives, alteration of capital, s. 94, p. 1137

European Community, Registration of branch in member state of, s. 33, p. 475

European Convention on Human rights, directors' disqualification proceedings, whether violative of, s. 203, p. 1883

Evidence, audit evidence (AAS-5), see *App.* 317
certificate of incorporation to be conclusive, as to registration, s. 35, p. 524
certificate of shares to be, of, title, s. 84, p. 1090
chairman's declaration as to result of voting to be conclusive, s. 178, p. 1721
charge certificate of compliance with Act issued by ROC to be, s. 132, p. 1514
Conclusive, chairman's declaration as to voting, s. 178, p. 1721
—, permission to commence business, s. 149(3), p. 1556
—, Registrars certificate, as to incorporation, s. 35, p. 524
—, registration of charge, s. 132, p. 1514
—, registration of charge, s. 132, p. 1514
dematerialised shares as, s. 113, p. 1399
Evidence Act, applicability of, before Tribunal, s. 10-FZA, p. 305
minutes to be, s. 194, p. 1820
registers as *prima facie*, s. 164, p. 1608
share certificate as, of title, s. 84, p. 1090
The Bankers' Books Evidence Act, 1891, see *App.* 291

Exchange Board of India, meaning of, s. 2(45B), p. 30

Exchange Traded Interest Rate Derivative Contracts, SEBI Scheme for Introduction of Exchange Traded Interest Rate Derivative Contracts, see *App.* 169

Excise Duty, Guidance Note on Accounting Treatment for Excise Duty, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-8)
officer who is in fault, s. 5, p. 158

Execution of Deeds, s. 48, p. 607
company's proceedings, s. 48 not to be set against, s. 48, p. 609

Executive Assistant, s. 197-A, p. 1830

Exempted Deposit, bonds, debentures, s. 58A, p. 742
amount received by way of security for business purpose, s. 58A, p. 723
amounts received towards performance guarantee, s. 58A, p. 723

Exemption from Eligibility Norms, • SEE UNDER "**Eligibility Norms for Companies Issuing Securities**"

Exemptions, Application for Extension of Time or Exemption under sub-section (8) of Section 58-A, Rules, 1979, see *App.* 11
deposits of company, repayment of, exemption to, s. 58A, p. 735
public issues by listed companies, eligibility norms, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
security interest, of, Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137

Existing company, definition, s. 2(16), p. 49

Expenditure, Guidance Note on Treatment of Expenditure during Construction Period, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-18)

Expenses, Guidance Note on Audit of Expenses, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-56)
pre-incorporation contracts, reimbursement of, s. 46, p. 603

Expert, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Prospectus"**
conditions for giving consent, s. 58, p. 714
consent to issue of prospectus, s. 58, p. 714
includes engineer, valuer, accountant etc., s. 59, p. 771
meaning, s. 59, p. 772, s. 62, p. 789
prospectus, wrong statement in, prosecution, power delegated to SEBI, s. 59, p. 271
right of indemnity of, s. 59, p. 771
statements by, in prospectus, s. 58, p. 714, s. 62, p. 799
untrue statements, liability for, s. 62, pp. 787, 795
who should function as, s. 57, p. 713

Explanatory statement, banking company, EGM, requirement of, s. 169, p. 1650
concern or interest, meaning of, s. 173, p. 1682
Directors' concern or interest, s. 173, p. 1682
Directors' interest in other companies, s. 17 3, p. 1682
disclosures, under SEBI Takeover Norms, s. 173, p. 1679
Extraordinary general meeting, on notice by requisitionist, not necessary, s. 173, p. 1683
insufficient notice of special business, s. 1 73, p. 1676
material facts, what are, s. 173, pp. 1677, 1678
meeting, requisitioned by shareholder, not necessary in notice, s. 173, p. 1683
meetings, notice of in, filing with ROC, s. 192, p. 1796
notice of meetings, Supreme Court ban on sale of property, material particular, s. 173, p. 1679
notice with requirement mandatory, s. 173, p. 1674
Private Companies, requirements as to, s. 173, p. 1685
requisitionist notice, explanatory statement not necessary, s. 169, p. 1649
SEBI Regulations/Guidelines requirements under, s. 173, p. 1684
special and ordinary, business relating to, s. 173, p. 1673
special business, s. 173, p. 1671
—, resolution, regarding, s. 173, p. 1680
—, to set out material facts of each item, s. 173, pp. 1672, 1677, 1684
tricky notice, s. 173, p. 1675
true information of nature of business, s. 173, p. 1675
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Notice of Meeting"**

Export and Import of Currency, FEM (Export and Import of Currency) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 6/2000, see *App.* 111

Extension of time, deposits, Company, power of, s. 58A(9), p. 735
repayment of deposits, s. 58A, p. 730
SEBI Guidelines on, refund of moneys, for, s. 73, p. 901

External Commercial Borrowings, Guidelines Policy Procedure and Circulars, see *App.* 108

External Confirmations, (AAS-30), see *App.* 317

Extraordinary General Meeting, s. 169, p. 1642 *et seq.*
agenda for, s. 169, p. 1645
agenda, validity, s. 169, p. 1645
banking company of, explanatory statement, requirement of, s. 169, p. 1650
called by requisitionists, s. 169, p. 1642
calling of on requisition of members, s. 169, pp. 1642, 1644
class meetings, modifications, s. 185, p. 1738
CLB, power, after calling, s. 186, p. 1747
—, can prescribe agenda, s. 186, p. 1740
—, single member attending meeting, order for, s. 186, p. 1749
—, to call, confined to EGM, s. 186, p. 1741
—, —, court cannot usurp, s. 186, pp. 1740, 1748
—, —, discretionary, s. 186, p. 1744
—, —, guidance from judicial rulings, s. 186, p. 1746
—, —, impracticable, when, s. 186, p. 1743
—, —, who can apply, s. 186, p. 1740
—, to give ancillary direction, s. 186, p. 1748
company cannot be restrained from cal ling, s. 169, p. 1647
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance notes & check list, s. 169, p. 1652

Extraordinary General Meeting (*Contd.*)
default by board, penalty for, s. 169, p. 1651
director, removal of, interim relief against, s. 169, p. 1651
evidence of holding, s. 169, p. 1649
impracticable, CLB, power to call, s. 186, p. 1743
institutional shareholder's right of, s. 169, p. 1645
judicial interference, when, s. 169, p. 1646
listing in agenda, effect of failure, s. 169, p. 1647
members not paying calls, right of, s. 169, p. 1642
members' right not lost because of petition u/s. 391, s. 169, p. 1647
notice by requisitionist, explanatory statement not necessary, s. 169, p. 1649, s. 173, p. 1683
refusal by directors to call, requisitionists' ability to call, s. 186, p. 1746
reimbrusement of expenses, s. 169, p. 1651
removal of director, requisitioning for, s. 169, p. 1651
requisition on, s. 169, p. 1642
—, directors duty to call, s. 169, p. 1647
requisitionists ability to call, s. 186, p. 1746
requisitionists, director's default, on, s. 169, p. 1648
resolution, chairman's power to withdraw, p. 175, p. 1703
Secretarial Action Points for holding, on requisition, procedure, s. 169, p. 1652
Secretarial Standards (SS-2), s. 169, p. 1653
stay of requisitioned, s. 169, p. 1648
venue of, s. 169, p. 1650

Factory Manager, not a manager, s. 2(24), p. 54

False Personation of Shareholder, s. 116, p. 1408

Family arrangement, transfer of shares, not automatic, s. 108, p. 1243

Family Companies, jurisdiction of, s. 10-GB, p. 317

Family Courts, companies, family, jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 208

Fax, proxy form, deposit by, s. 176, p. 1710
service of notice by, s. 51, p. 620

FCCBs, automatic route for issue of, s. 72, p. 873

Fees, additional, charges, registration of, s. 33, p. 473
—, fee for belated filing of documents, s. 33, p. 473
—, increase in share capital of, s. 33, p. 473
—, recovery of, s. 33, p. 473
—, standardisation of, s. 33, p. 473
—, table of fees, s. 33, p. 471
association not for profit, Table of, see *App.* 133
belated documents, filing, rates of, see *Sch. X*, p. 1141
Companies (Fees on Applications) Rules, 1999, see *App.* 5
Company Law Board (Fees on Application and Petitions) Rules, 1991, see *App.* 6
concession, s. 192, p. 1797
deemed public company, filing, for, s. 43-A, p. 583
filing of documents, belated for, s. 33, p. 473
increase of capital on, s. 25, p. 445
—, Notice to ROC fee for belated documents, s. 97, p. 1146
List of Specified Branches of Punjab National Bank, for payment of Fees, see *App.* 138
Listing fee payable, by companies, s. 73, p. 911
payable to Registrar for Registration of Companies having share capital, see *App.* 131
payable to Stock Exchanges, fees payable by companies (Bombay Stock Exchange), see *App.* 253
petition, fees for, s. 111, p. 1367
registration, increase of capital, is capital expenditure, s. 94, p. 1140
stock exchange, collection of, s. 73, p. 912
table of stamps & fees payable to registrar, see *App.* 131

FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of immovable property in India) Regulations, 2000, and circulars, see *App.* 123

FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of Immovable Property Outside India) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 7/2000, see *App.* 112

FEM (Borrowing and Lending in Rupees) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 109

FEM (Borrowing or Lending in foreign Exchange) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 107

FEM (Current Account Transactions) Rules, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 104

FEM (Deposit) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 110

FEM (Establishment in India of Branch or Office or other place of Business) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 124

FEM (Export and Import of Currency) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 6/2000, see *App.* 111

FEM (Foreign Currency Accounts by a Person Resident in India) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 114

FEM (Foreign Exchange Derivative Contracts) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 125

FEM (Guarantees) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 113

FEM (Issue of Security in India by a Branch Office or Agency of a Person Resident Outside India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 106

FEM (Permissible Capital Account Transactions) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 105

FEM (Remittance of Assets) Regulations, 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 115

FEM (Transfer or issue of any Foreign Security) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 116

FEM (Transfer or issue of Security by a Person Resident Outside India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 118

FEM (Withdrawal of General Permission to Overseas Corporate Bodies (OCBs)) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 126
Notification
—, Notification No. FEMA 101/2003-RB, Dated October 3rd, 2003, see App. 126

FEM Act, 2000, see *App.* 101

FEMA Notifications, see *App.* 101

FEMA, 1999, foreign firm or body corporate, appoints to office of profit, s. 204, p. 1888

Fiduciary duties, directors, further issue of shares, s. 81, p. 1037

FII, Trade Investment in exchange traded securities by, s. 72, p. 866

Final Meeting and Dissolution, Financial Year, defined, s. 2(17), p. 26
Financial Year, defined, s. 2, p. 49

Finance companies, issues of securities by, see Chap. XII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Finance, financial position, changes in, (AS-3), see *App.* 316
means of, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162

Financial Assistance, professional fee, payment of as, s. 77, p. 962
provision for purchase of its own shares, s. 77 (2), p. 954
subsidiary, foreign, for, purchase of own shares, s. 77, p. 957

Financial forecasts, Guidance Note on Accountant's Report on Profit forecast and/or Financial Forecasts, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-52)

Financial Information, Engagements to perform agreed upon procedures regarding Financial Information, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-44)

Financial Institutions, Disclosures in the Financial Statements of Banks and Similar Financial Institutions (IAS 30), see *App.* 319
firm allotments to, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1040
power to interfere, choice of registered office, s. 13, p. 368
registered office, power to interfere charge in, s. 13, p. 368
shareholder as, right to requisition EGM, s. 108, p. 1187

Financial Instruments, s. 114, p. 1406
Disclosure and Presentation (IAS 32), see *App.* 319
Recognition and Measurement (IAS 39), see *App.* 319
see Chap. XII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Financial interest, member, NCLT, removal on acquisition of, s. 10FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, removal on acquisition of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

Financial Reporting, Accounting Standards, (AS-25), see *App.* 316
Hyperinflationary Economies, in, (IAS 29), see *App.* 319
Joint Ventures, Accounting Standards, Financial Reporting of Interests in Joint Ventures, (AS-27), see *App.* 316

Financial Reporting of Interests in Joint Ventures, (IAS 31), see *App.* 319

Financial Statements, Audit of Abridged Financial Statements (• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Schedule VI**"), Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-26)
Auditor's Report on Financial Statements, (AAS-28), see *App.* 317
Consideration of Laws and Regulations in Audit of Financial Statements (AAS-21), see *App.* 317
Consolidated, Accounting Standards, (AS-21), see *App.* 316
Disclosures in the Financial Statements of Banks and Similar Financial Institutions (IAS 30), see *App.* 319
Engagements to review Financial Statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-42)
framework for preparation and presentation of, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316
issue of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 114, p. 1405
Members' duties regarding Engagements involving Compilation of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-41)
Objective and scope of the audit of financial statements (AAS- 2), see *App.* 317
Preparation of Financial Statements of letter-heads and stationery of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-50)
Presentation of Financial Statements, (IAS 1), see *App.* 319
Revision/Rectification of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-19)
Terms used in Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-1)

Financial Terminology, Guidance Note on Terms used in Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-1)

Financial year, definition, s. 2(17), p. 49
definition, in relation to a body corporate, s. 2(17), p. 26

Firm Allotment, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
in public issue, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1049
Reservations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Firm, illegal, consequences of, s. 11, pp. 336, 341
maximum number of individuals permitted to be, s. 11, p. 335
member, as, s. 25(4), pp. 435, 439
membership of, in charitable, etc. associations, s. 25, pp. 434, 444
register of member, entry of, s. 150, p. 1565
restrictions on appointment to office or place of profit, s. 204, p. 1886
validation of existing registration, s. 25, p. 440

Fishing Regulations, officer in default, s. 5, p. 148

Fixed Assets, Audit of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-17)
Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-2)
Treatment of Reserve Created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)

Fixed deposit, debenture, is not, s. 2(12), p. 39
security, as, s. 2, p. 39

Floating Charge, s. 124, p. 1467, s. 125, p. 1472
automatic crystallisation, provision for, s. 125, p. 1499
burden of proof, s. 124, p. 1472
crystallisation, and rights of set off, s. 125, p. 1500
—, automatic, provision for, s. 125, p. 1499

Floating Charge (*Contd.*)
crystallisation, of subsequent floating charge, s. 124, p. 1470
—, of, effect, s. 124, p. 1470
—, on event, happening, s. 124, p. 1470
example of, s. 125, p. 1502
fixed becoming, effect of, s. 124, p. 1470
fixed becoming, effect of, s. 124, p. 1470
foreign companies, s. 124, p. 1472
holding subsidiary relationship, s. 124, p. 1471
priority of certain debts over, s. 123, p. 1460
protection, real not illusory, s. 124, p. 1471
registration, s. 125, p. 1472
undertaking on, s. 125, p. 1495
undertaking or any property, on, s. 124, p. 1470
when become crystallised, s. 124, p. 1470

Food Adulteration Act, officer in default, s. 5, p. 147
officer who is in fault, effect of filing nomination under, s. 5, p. 147

Forefeiture of Shares, balance price, limitation for recovery of, s. 108, p. 1238
bona fide is, necessary for, s. 108, p. 1233
calls on shares, effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
calls, non-payment, grounds other than, s. 108, p. 1236
cancellation of forfeited shares, s. 108, p. 1238
challenge, right to, s. 108, p. 1237
companies interest, to be, in, s. 108, p. 1233
debenture, s. 122, p. 1459
fully paid shares, s. 108, p. 1237
liability after, s. 108, p. 1238
notice of, s. 108, p. 1236
Reallotment after forfeiture of shares, s. 108, p. 1238
Reissue at discount, s. 79, p. 997
reissue, return as to allotment not to cover, s. 75, p. 935
sale of forfeited shares, effect of invalidity, s. 108, p. 1237
strict compliance with provision, s. 108, p. 1234

Foreign Branch, Associated Companies, is not, s. 2(9), p. 36
foreign concern, is not, s. 2(9), p. 36
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Branch Office"**

Foreign Broker, registered FIIs, acting for, SEBI Guidelines, s. 76, p. 947

Foreign Collaborators, foreign body corporate, s. 4, p. 126
subsidiary of, s. 4, p. 126

Foreign Companies, Application of section 159 to Foreign Companies Rules, 1975, see *App.* 30

Foreign Companies, and foreigners, applicability of section, s. 11, p. 342
deemed public company, applicability of deeming provisions, s. 43-A, p. 581
interest, remittances of, s. 117, p. 1415
restriction on transfer of shares, s. 108, p. 1246, s. 108-C, p. 1275
restriction on transfer of shares, time limit for decision by Government, s. 108-C, p. 1275
transfer of shares, restriction on, s. 108-C, p. 1275
transfer of shares, time limit for Government decision, s. 108-C, p. 1276
• SEE UNDER **"NRIs, Foreigners OCBs and Foreign Companies"**

Foreign Contribution (Regulation) Act, 1976, see *App.* 102

Foreign Currency Accounts, FEM (Foreign Currency Accounts by a Person Resident in India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 114

Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds, definition of, FEMA, 1999, under s. 72, p. 882
automatic route for issue of, s. 72, p. 873
issue of, FEMA, 1999, under, s. 72, p. 872

Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds and Ordinary Shares (Through Depository Receipt Mechanism) Scheme, 1993, ADR's/GDRs, sponsoring of, s. 108, p. 1258

Foreign Direct Investment (FDI), Indian venture capital undertaking, in, s. 72, p. 866

Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) (*Contd.*)
Industrial Policy and Foreign Direct Investment, see *App.* 122
merchant banking, undertaking, s. 56, p. 652
NRIs, convertible debentures, purchase and sale of, s. 72, p. 863
policy, s. 72, p. 848
shares, purchase and sale of, s. 72, p. 863

Foreign Direct Investment Non-Banking Financial Sector, and Circular, see *App.* 65

Foreign Direct Investment Scheme, FEMA 1999, under, s. 72, p. 857

Foreign Exchange, derivative contracts, s. 2(12), p. 46

Foreign Exchange Derivative Contracts, FEM (Foreign Exchange Derivative Contracts) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 125

Foreign Exchange Management Act, 1999, and Circulars, see *App.* 101

Foreign Exchange Rates, changes in, (AS-11), see *App.* 316
Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates (IAS 21), see *App.* 319

Foreign Exchange Regulation Act, 1973, relaxations of provisions, as to appointment of agents, technical and management advisors, s. 81, p. 1035
restriction on, share transfers, s. 108, p. 1246
—, subscribing for shares, s. 12, p. 345
transfer of shares in, compliance with, s. 108, p. 1246, *et seq.*

Foreign Institutional Investors (FIIs), preferential allotment by listed companies, s. 81, p. 1071
preferential allotment to, s. 81, p. 1071
registered, foreign brokers for, SEBI guidelines, s. 76, p. 947
SEBI Guidelines for, see *App.* 192
SEBI, Regulations, 1995, see *App.* 193

Foreign Investment, Banking sector, RBI Guidelines for FDI in, s. 72, p. 855
banking sector, RBI Guidelines, s. 72, p. 855
eligibility in India, s. 72, p. 849
equity shares, purchase by person residing outside India, s. 72, p. 857
FEMA, under s. 72, pp. 846, 847
Guidelines for the Consolidation of Foreign Directs Investment (FDI) Proposals by the Foreign Investment Promotions Board (FIPB), see *App.* 121
list of activities, s. 72, p. 849
nature of, s. 72, p. 849
non-resident shareholders within sectoral cap, s. 72, p. 862
person resident outside India, other than in shares/convertible debentures, s. 72, p. 864
persons resident outside India, sectoral cap on, s. 72, p. 850
policy, s. 72, p. 848
preference shares in, Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1064
prohibited areas, FEMA 1999, under, s. 72, p. 846
regulations under, s. 72, p. 846
regulatory provisions, s. 72, p. 849
sectoral cap on, s. 72, p. 850
shares and convertible debentures by FIIs, portfolio investment scheme, s. 72, p. 862
sick industries in, s. 72, p. 871

Foreign Investment Promotion Board, Guidelines for the Consolidation of Foreign Directs Investment (FDI) Proposals by the Foreign Investment Promotions Board (FIPB), see *App.* 121

Foreign Investments in India, FEMA, 1999, Regulations thereunder, s. 72, p. 846
statutory provisions, s. 72, p. 848

Foreign Investors, RBI Guidelines for Disinvestment of Equity Shares by Foreign Investors, see *App.* 276

Foreign members, meeting, notice of, s. 172, p. 1668

Foreign Proceedings, jurisdiction for, tribunal by, s. 10-GB, p. 316

Foreign Registers of Members and Debenture-holders, s. 157, p. 1585 *et seq.*
compliance certificate, ICSI Guidance Note & Checks List, s. 157, p. 1586

Foreign securities, transfer of, s. 108, p. 1248

Foreign Stock Brokers, SEBI guidelines for dealing by foreign brokers in India on behalf of registered foreign institutional investors, see *App.* 225(A)

Foreign Stock Exchange, Indian companies, listing in, s. 72, p. 876

Foreign Trade (Development And Regulation) Act, 1992, see *App.* 103

Foreign Venture Capital Investor Regulations, 2000 (SEBI), see *App.* 197

Foreign Venture Capital Investors, s. 72, p. 846

Foreigners, interest remittances of, s. 117, p. 1415

Forfeited Shares, reissue of, s. 79, p. 997
sale of, s. 108, p. 1237

Forfeiture of Convertible Debentures, s. 108, p. 1239

Forfeiture of shares, s. 108, p. 1233
call on shares, s. 91, p. 1132
debenture, convertible, s. 108, p. 1239
jurisdiction challenging, s. 108, p. 1239
lien, exercise of right, s. 108, p. 1237
reissue at lower price, s. 108, p. 1239
resale of forefeited shares, excess realisation, refund, s. 108, p. 1237

Forged transfer, s. 108, p. 1203
- SEE ALSO UNDER "*Rectification*"
- SEE ALSO UNDER "*Transfer of Shares*"

rectification, time bar and nullity of, s. 111A, p. 1376
shares, limitation of, s. 111, p. 1337

Forged documents, transfer of shares, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1377

Forgery, liability of company, in case of, s. 46, p. 598

Form, of memorandum, s. 14, p. 371
notice to Registrar for increase of share capital, Form No. 5 (Appendix 1) s. 81, p. 1046

Form of Application for Certificate of Registration to Commence/Carry on the Business of a Securitisation Company or Reconstruction Company, see *App.* 73

Form of contracts, EEC developments, s. 46, p. 597

Forms, Returns, documents and agreements to be filed with the Registrars/Regional Director/ Central Government for which forms are prescribed, see *App.* 147

Fraud, company's liability for, s. 34, p. 489
fraud and error (AAS-4), see *App.* 317
Serious Fraud Investigation Office (SFIO), see *App.* 48
transfer of shares, limitation, s. 111A, p. 1387

Fraud on minority, prevention of, by minority action, s. 10, p. 197

Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices, SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 181
SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 1995, see *App.* 182

Fraudulent Conduct of Business, case liability for, s. 34, p. 507
crime, liability for, s. 34, p. 489

Fraudulent Inducement to Invest, s. 68, p. 819
complaints, power delegated to SEBI, s. 68, p. 820
penalty, s. 68, p. 819

Fraudulent Investment Schemes, liability for, s. 34, p. 507

Fraudulent Persons, collateral companies, conduct in, s. 203, p. 1862
crown debts, non-payment, of, s. 203, p. 1862

Fraudulent Persons (*Contd.*)
director, misapplication of corporate funds by, s. 203, p. 1858
director, trading when financial position unsatisfactory, s. 203, p. 1859
directors, disqualifying companies being used as, s. 203, p. 1862
non-executive director, fitness of, s. 203, p. 1861
probity and competence, s. 203, p. 1856
restrictions on, From Managing Companies, s. 203, p. 1850

Fraudulent Persons, restraint on managing companies, errors, miscalculations and commercial misjudgment, s. 203, p. 1854
grant of leave, s. 203, p. 1873
gross incompetence, s. 203, p. 1858
insider trading, s. 203, p. 1869
length of, disqualification, s. 203, p. 1866
limitation, s. 203, p. 1881
management, meaning of, s. 203, p. 1863
offences in connection with management, s. 203, p. 1869
person who can be disqualified, s. 203, pp. 1853, 1866
privilege of limited liability, non-observance of duty connected with, s. 203, p. 1853
selling property at low price, s. 203, p. 1858
ten days notice, s. 203, p. 1880
to be passed, s. 203, p. 1853

Fraudulent Trade Practices, securities markets in, prohibition by SEBI, s. 56, p. 650

Free Reserves, profit and loss A/C, surplus in, to be treated as, s. 58A, p. 742
share premium account, not to be treated as, s. 58A, p. 742

Freedom to denomination of share value, SEBI Guidelines, s. 13, p. 370

Functions and Powers of the Central Government and Regional Director under the Companies Act, 1956, see *App.* 141

Functions and Powers of the Company Law Board, see *App.* 143

Fundamental rights, company's claim to, s. 34, p. 483

Further Capital Issues, Restriction on further Capital Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Further issue of shares, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Issue of Shares"**
allotment contrary to, s. 81, p. 1037
allotment of shares in discharge of debts whether amounts to, s. 81, p. 1035
application of, s. 73, p. 894
approval in principle for, s. 73, p. 892
Bonus shares, issue of, s. 81, p. 1026
Central Government, power to convert loans into, appeal against order, s. 81, p. 1047
—, capital, s. 81, p. 1044
—, guidelines, s. 81, p. 1044
—, terms and condition of, s. 81, p. 1044
conversion of debentures and loans into share s, exception, s. 81, p. 1043
convertible debentures, terms of issue, s. 81, p. 1046
date of offer, notice of, s. 81, p. 1032
debentures, issued at discount, conversion of, s. 81, p. 1044
debentures, of, preferential basis, s. 81, p. 1042
debentures, with option to convert, rules as to, s. 81, p. 1044
employees stock option scheme, s. 81, p. 1048
fiduciary duty of director, s. 81, p. 1037
Government loans, conversion into equity, prospective, s. 81, p. 1044
holder of shares, entitled to rights shares, s. 81, p. 1032
joint holder and renunciation, s. 81, p. 1037
loans with option to convert, rules as to, s. 81, p. 1044
NRI and foreigners, allotment to, s. 81, p. 1035
one year period, counting of, s. 81, p. 1032
practical hints, for issue of rights shares, s. 81, pp. 1023, 1083
preemptive rights, exclusion of, s. 81, p. 1041
—, waiver of, s. 81, p. 1042
private company, department's view as to applicability, s. 81, p. 1044

Further issue of shares (*Contd.*)
private company, renunciation not applicable, s. 81, p. 1037
renouncee, allotment to, s. 81, p. 1036
renunciation of right shares, limitation governing, s. 81, p. 1043
rights basis on, not linked with members' capacity, s. 81, pp. 1018, 1022
rights shares, transferers duty to transferee, s. 81, p. 1033
terms of, not alterable by court, s. 81, p. 1042
unsubscribed portion of capital, allotment out of, s. 81, p. 1022

Future contracts, s. 73, p. 924

GAAP (US), International Accounting Standards, Comparative study (Indian GAAP, IAS and US GAAP), see *App.* 322
sources of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP–US), see *App.* 321

GDR/ADR, *de mat* of, s. 108, p. 1191

General Clarifications, General Clarification (GC)-1/2002, Earnings per share, applicability of AS 20, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-20)
—, (GC)-2/2002, Related party disclousres, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
—, (GC)-3/2002, Revenue Recognition Disclosure of Revenue from Sales Transaction, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-9)
—, (GC)-4/2002, Accounting for Amalgamation, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-14)
—, (GC)-5/2002, Consolidated financial statements, notes to, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
—, (GC)-6/2002, Accounting for investments in associates consolidated financial statements, treatment of proposed dividend in, Consolidated financial statements, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-23)
—, (GC)-7/2002, Accounting for investments in associates consolidated financial statements, adjustments in carrying amount of investment arsing from changes in equity, in Consolidated financial statements, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-23)
—, (GC)-8/2002, Accounting for investments in associates consolidated financial statements, consideration of poetnetial equity shaers for determining whetehr an investee is an associate, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-23)
—, (GC)-9/2002, Meaning of the term intermediaries, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
—, (GC)-10/2002, Earnings per share, disclosure of earnings per share figures in case of extraordinary items, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-20)
—, (GC)-11/2002, segment reporting, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-17)
—, (GC)-12/2002, applicability of accounting standards to co-operative societieis, announcementsof the council regarding status of various documents, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316
—, (GC)-13/2002, Non-executive directors on the board—whether related parties, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
—, (GC)-14/2002, Treatment of interest for determining segment expense, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-17)
—, (GC)-15/2002, Remuneration paid to key management personnel—whether a related party transaction, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-18)
—, (GC)-16/2002, Consolidated financial statements, definition of control, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
—, (GC)-17/2002, Consolidated financial statements, Exclusion of a subsidiary from consolidation, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)
—, (GC)-18/2002, Consolidated financial statements, Accounting for taxes on income in the consolidated financial statements, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316(AS-21)

General Meetings, adjournment of meetings, some points regarding, s. 175, p. 1698
amendment to resolutions, s. 189, p. 1773
annual, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Annual General Meeting"**
annual, s. 166, p. 1616
calling of, on requisition, s. 169, pp. 1642, 1644
chairman, s. 175, p. 1692
circulation of members' resolutions, s. 188, p. 1765
CLB's power to call, s. 167, p. 1636
CLB's, in what cases, s. 186, p. 1739

General Meetings (*Contd.*)
conducting company business at, provision of procedural nature, s. 186, p. 1745
corporation, how represented, at, s. 187, p. 1750
extending time by Board, s. 166, pp. 1624, 1628
extraordinary calling of, by directors, s. 169, p. 1643
ICSI Guidance Notes on General Meetings, see *App.* 312(3)
—, (SS-2), see *App.* 311
irregularity in procedure, s. 175, p. 1702
length of notice, s. 171, p. 1656
minutes of proceedings of, s. 193, p. 1807
modes of exercising, voting rights, s. 177, p. 1718
notice of, s. 53, p. 624
notice served by post, when effective, s. 53, p. 624
observer, appointment by Company Law Board, s. 175, p. 1693
place of, court direction that it may be held at 3 places, invalid, s. 166, p. 1619
poll, demand of, s. 179, p. 1722
—, manner and time of taking of poll, s. 180, p. 1727
—, scrutiny at, s. 184, p. 1735
private company of, s. 166, p. 1622
privilege, s. 175, p. 1698
—, restrictions on exercise of, s. 182, p. 1730
—, right to use votes differently, s. 183, p. 1734
prospectus, alteration therein, giving authority to, s. 61, p. 785
provisions applicable to, s. 170, p. 1654
provisions as to, ss. 171 to 186, s. 170, p. 1654
—, exemption of certain private companies, s. 170, p. 1654
proxies, s. 176, p. 1705 *et seq.*
public holiday, not to be held on, s. 166, p. 1618
publication of proceeding, s. 197, p. 1828
quorum, s. 174, p. 1685
representation of President of India or Governor of a State as member, s. 187-A, p. 1753
resolutions, amendments to, s. 189, p. 1773 *et s eq.*
Secretarial Standard, (SS-2), s. 165, p. 1612
show of hands, chairman's declaration as to result, s. 178, p. 1721
—, voting by, s. 177, pp. 1718, 1720
voting rights, restrictions on, s. 181, p. 1729, s. 182, p. 1730

General Reserves, Producer Companies (General Reserves) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 47

General Rules & Forms, see *App.* 1

Germane, meaning of, s. 149, p. 1557

Gifts, power to make, by company, s. 13, p. 359
transfer of shares, by way of, s. 108, p. 1210

Global Depository Receipts, s. 72, p. 867
defenition of, FEMA, 1999, under, s. 72, p. 882
Foreign Currency Convertible Bonds and Ordinary Shares (Through Global Depository Receipt Mechanism) Scheme, 1993, see *App.* 119
issue structure of, s. 72, p. 872
overseas market, disinvestment of shares in, s. 72, p. 876
shares, taxation under, s. 72, p. 880

Good and Bad Delivery, Guidelines for Good or Bad Delivery of Documents (Dated 30-8-1991), see *App.* 258
SEBI uniform norms, s. 108, p. 1216

Good faith, company, person dealing with, s. 36, p. 537
protection of action taken in by Tribunals, s. 10-FZ, p. 291

Government Companies, annual general meeting, exemption from provisions, s. 166, p. 1630
annual return, exempt from filing of, s. 159, p. 1591
deemed public company, conversion of, applicability, s. 43-A, p. 584
Government loans, conversion into shares, s. 81, pp. 1044, 1046
meaning of, s. 2(18), pp. 26, 49
NBFC, exempted, s. 58A, p. 751

Government Companies (*Contd.*)
omission of words Pvt. Ltd. and Ltd. in case of, s. 13, p. 370
piercing the veil in, s. 34, p. 521
reduction of share capital, modification in reference to, s. 100, p. 1164

Government Grants, (AS-12), see *App.* 316

Governor, member as, s. 41, p. 560

Green Shoe Option, book building, in, s. 60B, p. 784
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
final report of green shoe option, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXIX, see *App.* 162
meaning of, s. 81, p. 1053
SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIIIA, see *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines, s. 60B, p. 784

Greenbury Committee on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(8)

Grievances, investors of, jurisdiction, s. 10, pp. 209, 210
redressal of investors, decentralisation, s. 10, p. 209

Grounds for removal, member, NCLT, s. 10-FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

Group Companies, economic unit, single as, s. 34, p. 514

Guarantee Company, articles of association, form of, s. 29, p. 454
articles, to state number of members with which registered, s. 27, p. 451
company limited by shares distinguished from, s. 37, p. 539
company limited by, s. 13, p. 369, s. 37, p. 539
FEM (Guarantees) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 113
Guidance Note on Guarantees & Counter Guarantees given by Companies, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-4)
members, liability of, s. 12, p. 348
nature of, s. 37, p. 539
private company in essence, s. 37, p. 539
profits distribution of, s. 37, p. 540
provisions as to, s. 37, p. 539
transfer of interest in, and refusal, s. 27, p. 452
transfer of member's interest, s. 37, p. 539
ultra vires, s. 13, p. 362

Guarantor, change of management, discharged on, s. 34, p. 499

Guardian, company cannot be, s. 34, p. 481

Guidance Note as issued by ICAI & SEBI, Accounting by Dot-com Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-45)
Accounting for Changing Prices, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-9)
Accounting for Corporate Dividend Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-39)
Accounting for Depreciation in Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-25)
Accounting in Respect of Minimum Alternate Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-40)
Accounting Treatment for Excise Duty, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-8)
Accounting treatment for MODVAT/CENVAT, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-23)
Accrual Basis of Accounting, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-24)
Audit of Abridged Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-26)
Audit of Accounts of Members of Stock Exchanges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-16)
Audit of Cash and Bank Balance, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-34)
Audit of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-17)
Audit of Inventories, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-28)
Audit of Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-30)
Audit of Liabilities, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-35)
Audit of Miscellaneous Expenditure shown in Balance Sheet, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-33)
Audit of Revenue, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-38)

Guidance Note as issued by ICAI & SEBI (*Contd.*)
Audit Reports/Certificates on Financial Information in Offer Documents, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-37)
Audit under section 115JB of The Income-tax Act, 1961, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-47)
Auditing of Accounts of Liquidators, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-10)
Auditor of Debtors, Loans and Advances, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-32)
Auditor's Report on Revised Accounts of Companies before Circulation to Shareholders, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-11)
Auditors Report in case of Nationalised Bank, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-22)
Availability of Revaluation Reserve for issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-31)
Certificate to be issue by Auditors of a Company pursuant to Companies (Acceptance of Deposits) Rules, 1975, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-12)
Certification of Corporate Governance (As stipulated in clause 49 of Listing Agreement), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-46)
Certification of Documents for Registration of Charges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-27)
Duty Cast on the Auditors under section 45MA of the RBI Act, 1934, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-13)
Engagements to perform agreed upon procedures regarding Financial Information, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-44)
Engagements to review Financial Statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-42)
Format of Audit Report (Revised), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-58)
Format of Auditor's Report to the Board of Directors on consolidated Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-57)
Format of the Audit Certificate to be issued by Statutory Auditor on cash flow statement, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-36)
Guarantees & Counter-Guarantees given by Companies, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-4)
Guidance Note on Accountant's Report on Profit forecast and/or Financial Forecasts, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-52)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Equity Index and Equity Stock Futures and Options, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-62)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Oil and Gas Producing Activities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-60)
Guidance Note on Accounting for Securitisation, as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-61)
Guidance Note on Audit Engagement Letters, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-54)
Guidance Note on Audit of Accounts of Non-corporate entities (Bank Borrowers), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-53)
Guidance Note on Audit of Consolidated Financial Statement, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-63)
Guidance Note on Audit of Expenses, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-56)
Guidance Note on Audit of Miscellaneous Expenditure, 2003, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-64)
Guidance Note on Audit Reports and Certificates for special purposes, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-51)
Guidance Note on Clarification on the Auditor's rights where clients and other Auditors seek access to their audit working papers, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-55)
Guidance Note on Revision of the Audit Report, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-59)
Guidance Note on Section 227(3)(e) and (f) of the Companies Act, 1956, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-43)
Guidance Note on Special Considerations in the Audit of Small Entities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-65)
Independence of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-48)
issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-15)
Members' duties regarding Engagements involving Compilation of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-41)
Members' Duties regarding Engagements involving Compilation of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-41)
Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-2)
Preparation of Financial Statements of letter-heads and stationery of Auditors, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-50)
Provision for Liability for Taxation, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-6)

Guidance Note as issued by ICAI & SEBI (*Contd.*)
Provision for Proposed Dividend, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-5)
Reports in Company Prospectuses, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-21)
Revision/Rectification of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-19)
SEBI Guidence Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257
section 293-A of the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-14)
Shortfall in the value of a Banks Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-7)
Signature on Statutory Audit Report, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-20)
Some Important Issues arising from amendments of Schedule XIV to the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-29)
Surprise Checks, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-49)
Terms used in Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-1)
Treatment of Expenditure during Construction Period, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-18)
Treatment of Reserve Created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)

Guidance Notes for Acquisition of Financial assets and issue of Security Receipts by Securitisation Companies and Reconstruction Companies, see *App.* 75

Guidelines, Commercial Paper, Guidelines for issue of Commercial Paper (CP), 2000, see *App.* 63
trading in derivative products, s. 2(12), p. 46

Guidelines (RBI) for Disinvestment of Equity Shares by Foreign Investor, see *App.* 121

Guidelines for Advertisement by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/4/51/2000, dt. 5-6-2000,* see *App.* 185(9)

Guidelines for Bonus issues, See SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162

Guidelines for Book Building, An issuer company proposing to issue capital through book building shall comply with the, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI, *App.* 162
—, —, 75% Book Building Process see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI, *App.* 162
In an issue of securities to the public through a prospectus option for 100% Book Building shall be available to any issuer company subject to, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI, *App.* 162
In an issue of securities to the public through a prospectus the option for 75% book building shall be available to the issuer company subject to, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI, *App.* 162
—, —, 100% Book Building Process, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI, *App.* 162

Guidelines for Calculation for Sale and Repurchase Price and Rounding Off NAV, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/08/514/2002, dt. 22-7-2002,* see *App.* 185(31)

Guidelines for Chit Fund and NBFCs, see *App.* 62(27)

Guidelines for Corporate Identity Number, see *App.* 37

Guidelines for Disclosures and Investor Protection in case of Rights Issues, see Chap. III of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Guidelines for Employees Stock Option Scheme and Employees Stock Purchase Scheme, Guidelines, 1999, see *App.* 174

Guidelines for Entry of NBFCs into Insurance, see *App.* 62(34)

Guidelines for Equity Support Scheme, see *App.* 272

Guidelines for EURO issues, and Circulars, see *App.* 120

Guidelines for Flotations of Public Sector Bonds, see *App.* 277
Clarification—Clarification regarding Public Issue of Bonds and other Securities by State Level PSU's, see *App.* 277

Guidelines for Foreign equity investment in NBFCs revised, see *App.* 62(33)

Guidelines for Good or Bad Delivery of Documents, see *App.* 258

Guidelines for Indian Direct Investment in Joint Ventures and Wholly Owned Subsidiaries Abroad, and Circulars, see *App.* 117

Guidelines for Investment in Foreign Securities by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/17/419/2002, dt. 30-3-2002,* see *App.* 185(26)

Guidelines for Investment/Trading in Securities by Employees of Asset Management Companies and Mutual Fund Trustee Companies, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 4/216/2001, dt. 8-5-2001,* see *App.* 185(18)

Guidelines for Investments in Foreign Securities by Mutual Funds, *SEBI/MFD/CIR No. 2/6855/2003, dt. 4-4-2003,* see *App.* 185(42)

Guidelines for Issue Advertisement, see Chap. IX of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Guidelines for Issue of Capital by Designated Financial Institutions, Bonus issues by DFIs, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Issue of debentures including bonds, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
New financial instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Other Requirements, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Pricing of issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Promoters' contribution, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Protection of the interest of debenture/bond holders, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Reservation for employees, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Rollover of debentures/bonds, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Specific disclosures, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162
Utilisation of money before allotment, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XII, *App.* 162

Guidelines for issue of Commercial Paper (CP), 2000, and Circulars, see *App.* 63

Guidelines for issue of Debt Instruments, Additional Disclosures in respect of debentures, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Creation of Charge, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Creation of Debenture Redemption Reserves(DRR), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Distribution of Dividends, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Other requirements, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Redemption, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Requirement in respect of Debenture Trustee, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Requirement of credit rating, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162
Requirement of letter of option, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. X, *App.* 162

Guidelines for Issue of Securities by Companies and their listing on over the Counter Exchange of India (OTCEI), see *App.* 262

Guidelines for Issues of "Tax Free" Bonds by Public Sector Enterprises, see *App.* 278

Guidelines for Launch of Additional Plans by Mutual Funds under Existing Schemes, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 12/175/01, dt. 15-2-2001,* see *App.* 185(14)

Guidelines for Listing of Securities on recognised Stock Exchanges in Relaxation of Rules, 19(2)(b) of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957, see *App.* 251

Guidelines for Merchants Bankers, and Circulars, see *App.* 208

Guidelines for Mutual Funds, see *App.* 183

Guidelines for Opening of Trading Terminals Abroad, see *App.* 268

Guidelines for OTCEI issues, Eligibility norms, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIV, *App.* 162
Pricing Norms, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIV, *App.* 162
Projections, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIV, *App.* 162

Guidelines for Overseas Venture Capital Investment in India, see *App.* 274

Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Derivatives Trading, see *App.* 185(52)

Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Securities Lending Scheme, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/01/047/99. dt. 10-2-1999,* see *App.* 185(2)

Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Trading in Derivative Products, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/011/061/2000, dt. 1-2-2000,* see *App.* 185(6)
MFD/CIR/21/25467/2002, dt. 31-12-2002, see *App.* 185(38)

Guidelines for percentage of assets to be maintained (Notification No DFC 120/ED(G)-98, dated 31-1-1998), see *App.* 57

Guidelines for Preferential Issues, Certificate from Auditors, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
Currency of financial instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
Currency of shareholders resolutions, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
Non-Applicability of the guidelines, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
Non-transferability of financial instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
Preferential allotments to FIIs, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162

Guidelines for Proportionate Allotment, see Chap. VII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Guidelines for the Consolidation of Foreign Directs Investment (FDI) Proposals by the Foreign Investment Promotions Board (FIPB), see *App.* 121

Guidelines for Valuation of Equity Shares of Companies and the Business and net assets of Branches, see *App.* 275

Guidelines for Valuation of Securities for Mutual Funds and Guidelines for Identification and Provisioning for NPAs, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/8/92/2000, dt. 18-9-2000,* see *App.* 185(11)

Guidelines for Valuation of Securities in Case of Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/14/088/2001, dt. 28-3-2001, Issued by SEBI,* see *App.* 185(15)

Guidelines for Valuation of Securities, Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 14/442/2002, dt. 20-2-2002,* see *App.* 185(23)

Guidelines for Valuation of unlisted equity shares for calculation of NAVs of mutual funds schemes, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/03/526/2002, dt. 9-5-2002,* see *App.* 185(27)

Guidelines for Venture Capital, see *App.* 273

Guidelines on Advertisement, Guidelines on Advertisements, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IX, *App.* 162
Lead Merchant Banker shall also comply with, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IX, *App.* 162

Guidelines on Assets Liability Management (ALM) System for NBFC, see *App.* 60
Circular No. DNBS (PD).CC No. 15/02.01/2000-2001, dt. 27-6-2001

Guidelines on Compliance with Accounting Standards by Banks, and Circulars, see *App.* 62

Guidelines on Initial Public Offers through the Stock Exchange On Line System (E-IPO), Agreement with the Stock Exchange, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162
Appointment of Brokers, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162
Appointment of Registrar to the Issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162
company proposing to issue capital to public through, etc., see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162
Listing, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162
Mode of operation, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162
Responsibility of the Lead Manager, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162

Guidelines on preferential allotment of shares or warrants/FCDs/PCDs to select group of persons under section 81(1A), see Chap. IV, XIII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Guidelines on sale of financial assets to Securitisation Company (SC)/Reconstruction Company (RC) (created under the Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002) and related issues, see *App.* 76

Guidelines on Small Stock Exchanges and their Subsidiary Companies, see *App.* 255

Guidelines relating to Book-Building Process, see Chap. XI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Guidelines relating to Disclosures in Prospectus, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Guidelines relating to eligibility of body corporate for public issues, see Chap. II of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

---

* For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise

Guidelines relating to vetting of offer document for the issue of debt instruments, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Half Yearly Report, Format for Half yearly report to be submitted by Merchant Bankers (*Clause* 16.3.2.1(a)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXVII, *App.* 162

Head Office of Company, s. 2, p. 36

Hearing, provisions of Civil Procedure Code provide, s. 10-FM, p. 272
Tribunal to pass orders after giving parties opportunity of, s. 10-FM, p. 271
Tribunal, power of President rehearing, s. 10-FL(3), p. 271

High Court, appeal against CLB decisions, territorial jurisdiction of, in, s. 10-GF, p. 333
exclusive jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 180
'holder of shares', s. 81, p. 1032
jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 178
jurisdiction to entertain appeal, against, CLB order, s. 10-F, p. 241
power to review own order, s. 10, p. 185
revisional jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 187
territorial jurisdiction of, s. 10-GB, p. 320
writ jurisdiction of, s. 10-GB, p. 318

Hindu Joint Family, exempted from the prohibition under sections, s. 11, pp. 335, 339

Hindu Undivided Family, member, register of member, s. 153, p. 1573
members as, s. 41, p. 556
members of, as relatives, s. 6, p. 170
partition, transfer of shares, execution of transfer by manager, s. 108, p. 1243
shares on behalf of, s. 153, p. 1573
transfer of shares, on partition, s. 108, p. 1243

Holding Company, advantages of holding-subsidiary relationships, s. 4, p. 128
assets, transfer of, s. 4, p. 125
avoiding relationship of subsidiary, s. 4, p. 127
beneficial holding, whether necessary, s. 4, p. 128
charitable company as, s. 25, pp. 434, 438
composition of Board, control, over, s. 4, p. 118
concept of, s. 4, p. 118
control over Board up to next A.G.M., s. 4, pp. 118, 120
control through nominee directors, s. 4, p. 118
control, meaning of, s. 4, p. 118
controlling Board without majority holding, s. 4, p. 120
controlling interest, s. 4, p. 118
corporate formalities with subsidiary, non observance of, s. 34, p. 511
de facto directors, s. 7, p. 175
debenture-holders, s. 42, p. 563
debentures, holding by subsidiary in, s. 42, p. 562
deemed to control composition, when, s. 4, p. 121
defined, s. 4, p. 113
dilution of its shareholding, s. 34, p. 516
directors, position in subsidiaries, s. 4, p. 123
economic entity, for lifting veil, s. 34, p. 511
employees, subsidiary and, lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 523
group accounts, s. 4, p. 118
holding subsidiary relationship, position under English Law, s. 4, p. 128
individual receipt, company's receipt treated as, lifting them corporate veil, s. 34, p. 519
insolvent subsidiary, liability for, s. 34, p. 516
investment in subsidiary, limit, where relation due to control over board, s. 4, pp. 118, 128
know-how, exclusive, grant by, subsidiary, s. 34, p. 515
loans and investments in subsidiary, s. 4, p. 130
majority shareholding, what is, s. 4, p. 123
membership of, s. 42, p. 562
nominee, directors, control through, s. 4, p. 118
—, member, s. 42, p. 563
nominee, s. 42(4), s. 42, p. 563
officer as, s. 2(30), p. 61
piercing the veil in subsidiary relationship, s. 34, p. 510

Holding Company (*Contd.*)
preference shares, s. 4(1)(b)(1), p. 123
right of members and representatives as regards affairs of, subsidiaries, s. 42, p. 562
shadow directors, liability, s. 4, p.124
shareholding, loss of value in corporate veil, s. 34, p. 521
shares not to be purchased by subsidiary, s. 42, p. 562
subsidiaries, transfer of shares between, s. 4, p. 129
subsidiary as agent, s. 34, p. 513
subsidiary, not agent of, s. 4, p. 125
—, not to become member of, s. 42, p. 562
—, provisions affecting relationship, s. 4, p. 128
—, relationship with, s. 4(3), p. 125
—, subsisting holding in, s. 42, p. 562
subsidiary's assets, transfer to, nor restructuring under, s. 34, p. 517
subsidiary's relationship, lifting veil in USA and UK, s. 34, p. 511
Trade Marks, of subsidiary interest in, s. 4, p. 129
voting right not to be exercised by subsidiary, s. 42, p. 562

Holding company's shares, loan by company for, s. 77, p. 963

Holding subsidiary relationship, creation of, s. 4, p. 128

Holding, meaning of, s. 4, p. 113

Holiday Remuneration, priority of, s. 123(2), p. 1460

Holiday, Public, s. 2, p. 64, s. 2(38), p. 29
annual general meeting not to be held on, public holiday, s. 166, p. 1618

Housing Finance Companies (NHB) Directions, 2001, see *App.* 64
Notification—No. NHB, HFC. DIR 1/CMD/2001

Housing Finance Companies, special features of, s. 58-A, p. 756

Housing finance scheme (HFC), special features, s. 58A, p. 756

Hybrid, definition, s. 2(19A), p. 50
meaning of, s. 2(19A), p. 26

Hyperinflationary Economies, Financial Reporting in Hyperinflationary Economies (IAS 29), see *App.* 319

ICSI, Compliance with Secretarial Standards
Guidance Note on Compliance Certificate under proviso to sub-section (1) of section 383(A) of the Companies Act, 1956, see *App.* 312(1)
Guidance Note on Dividend, see *App.* 312(5)
Guidance Note on General Meetings, see *App.* 312(3)
Guidance Note on Meetings of the Board of Directors, see *App.* 312(2)
Guidance Note on Passing of Resolutions by Postal Ballot, see *App.* 312(4)
guidelines, displaying particulars on websites, s. 2(45-A), p. 82
need for Secretarial Standards
Preface to the Secretarial Standards
procedure for issuing Secretarial Standards
Scope and Functions of the Secretarial Standards Board
Scope of Secretarial Standards
Secretarial Standard, Guidance Notes as issued of Company Secretaries of India, see *App.* 307
Secretarial Standard, Guidance Notes as issued of Company Secretaries of India, see *App.* 312
Secretarial Standards Board and its Objectives

ICSI, Guidance Notes as issued of Company Secretaries of India, Dividend (SS-3), see *App.* 311
General Meetings (SS-2), see *App.* 311
Meetings of the Board of Directors (SS-1), see *App.* 311

Illegal Association, s. 11, p. 336
acquisition of gain, carrying of business for, s. 11, p. 337
business, s. 11, p. 336
co-ownership not covered, s. 11, p. 341
defence of illegality, Company's right to, s. 11, p. 342
director's liability, s. 11, p. 342
gain, acquisition of, s. 11, p. 336
illegality of business not necessary, s. 11, p. 336

Illegal Association (*Contd.*)
illegality, right to set up as defence, s. 11, p. 342
joint rights and ownership, s. 11, p. 340
members cannot initiate legal proceedings, s. 11, p. 341
personal liability of members, s. 11, p. 341
position of joint families, s. 11, p. 339
professional firms, whether covered, s. 11, p. 339
shares, sale of s, 11, p. 342
sub-partners not to be counted, s. 11, p. 340
theft, indictment of members for, s. 11, p. 342
winding up, s. 11, pp. 336, 342

Immovable property, FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of immovable property in India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 123

Immovable Property Outside India, FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of Immovable Property Outside India) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 7/2000, see *App.* 112

Immunity, action taken in good faith, of by Tribunals, s. 10-FZ, p. 291

Impairment of Assets, Accounting Standards, (AS-28), see *App.* 316

Implied Powers, s. 13, p. 363
powers not implied, s. 13, p. 364

Impracticable, meeting, when is, see under '*meetings*', s. 186, p. 1743

Incentives to Prospective Shareholders, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

'Includes', s. 2, p. 31

Income, pre-incorporation, tax on, s. 46, p. 602

Income-tax, (IAS 12), see *App.* 319
officer who is in fault, to file return, s. 5, p. 157
payments to directors may not be free of, s. 200, p. 1843
pre-incorporation, income on, s. 46, p. 602
prosecution of company for evasion, s. 34, p. 496
tax-free payment of remuneration prohibited, s. 200, p. 1843

Incorporation, certificate of, s. 34, p. 476
company, registration number, allotment of, s. 35, p. 524
—, voting and non-voting rights, s. 35, p. 527
conclusiveness of certificate, s. 35, p. 524
contracts made before, s. 46, p. 427, s. 149, p. 1559
effect of incorporation, s. 34, p. 476, s. 35, p. 528
impeaching, s. 35, p. 527
lawful purpose, s. 12, p. 347
liability, s. 12, p. 348
lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 502
mode of forming company, s. 12, p. 343
NRI, subscriber as, s. 12, p. 345
piercing the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 508
Private Company, procedure, Secretarial Action Points, s. 12, p. 350
prize chit companies, precautions in, s. 12, p. 348
public company, procedure, s. 12, p. 350
registration of computer laser printed documents, s. 15, p. 373
subscriber, company as, s. 12, p. 344
—, partnership as, s. 12, p. 345
unlimited company of, s. 12, p. 348

Increase of Capital, s. 97, p. 1145
automatic on conversion of Govt. loans into capital, s. 94A, pp. 1141, 1142
effect of provisions in articles on power to, s. 94, p. 1135
guidelines for converting Govt. loans into capital, s. 94A, p. 1142
increase of share capital, s. 94, p. 1135
power of company, fetters on, s. 94, p. 1136
registration fee, is capital expenditure, s. 94, p. 1140
shareholders by, ratification by directors, s. 97, p. 1146

Increase of remuneration, increase by conversion of Government loan in to shares, s. 81, p. 1044

Indemnity, against liability, directors liability, insurance against, s. 201, p. 1846
costs, provisions against, s. 201, p. 1846
derivative action, costs and expenses for, s. 10, p. 200
expenses of defence in connection with civil and criminal cases, s. 201, p. 1845
management, incurred in, s. 201, p. 1845
provision as regards any officer void, s. 201, p. 1844
trustee for debenture-holders, void, s. 119, p. 1451

Index of Members, s. 151, p. 1566
debenture-holders, s. 152, p. 1568
Depositories Act, effect on particulars, s. 152, p. 1569

Indian Penal Code, tribunal, powers under, s. 10-FZA, p. 306

Indoor management rule, rights issue, allottees protected by, s. 81, p. 1042

Industrial company, meaning of, s. 2(19AA), pp. 26, 50
sick, defined, s. 2(46AA), p. 86
sick, meaning of, s. 2(46AA), p. 30

Industrial Policy and Foreign Direct Investment, see *App.* 122

Industrial Policy and Procedures, s. 72, p. 846

Industrial undertaking, meaning of, s. 2(19AB), p. 50, s. 2(19B), p. 26
ownership of, s. 2(19AA), p. 50

Industries Development Regulations Act, 1951, see *App.* 296

Informal Guidance, SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003, see *App.* 156

Information memorandum, definition, s. 2(19B), p. 51
meaning of, s. 2(19B), p. 27

Infrastructure Companies, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
Promoters Contribution in Case of Public Issues by Infrastructure Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
public issue by, minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
—, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 678

Infrastructure Facility, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

Infringement of trade name, liability, intention to deceive not necessary for, s. 20, p. 407

Inherent powers, appointment of chairman for, s. 186, p. 1742
civil courts, s. 10, p. 186
CLB, s. 10-E, p. 236
CLB, of, rectification of register of members, restoration of petition, s. 111, p. 1360
company courts, of, s. 10, p. 185
company of, refusé registration of transfer, to s. 111, p. 1307
company of, s. 13, p. 364

Initial Public offer, financing of investment in, banks by, s. 81, p. 1078
unlisted companies, by, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162

Injunction, adverse criticism of prospectus against, s. 56, p. 638
alteration of articles to restrain, s. 31, p. 459
application money, withdrawal, against s, 71, p. 836
name of company, passing off, against, s. 20, p. 407
rights issue, against, s. 81, p. 1040

Insecticides Act, officer in default, s. 5, p. 146

Insider Trading, SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 1992, see *App.* 180

Insolvency, *Benami* Transactions (Prohibition) Act, 1988, see *App.* 289
calls on shares, effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
member, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

*** For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise**

Insolvency (*Contd.*)
subsidiary of, liability of holding for, s. 34, p. 516
undischarged insolvent not to manage company, s. 202, p. 1847

Inspection, debenture holder's right, s. 163, p. 1605
minutes of board meeting, members right of, ss. 193, 196, p. 1815
minutes of general meeting, s. 196, p. 1824
register of members, closure, during, s. 163, p. 1604
registers and returns, debenture holders, right, s. 163, p. 1605
registers maintained by company, s. 163, pp. 1602
strangers, right of, on payment, s. 163, pp. 1602, 1604
subsidiary of, liability of holding for, s. 34, p. 516

Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, Guidance Notes issued by, see *App.* 318
Statement and standard on accounting issued by, see, *App.* 318
Statements on Standard Auditing Practices, issued by, see *App.* 317

Institute of Company Secretaries, authority as, s. 2(45), pp. 30, 70
authority, within Art. 12 of Constitution, s. 2(45), p. 80

Institution, body corporate, regarded as, s. 2(7), p. 34
state level, defined, s. 2(46AB), pp. 30, 87

Insurance Companies, company's property of, members cannot, s. 34, p. 500
defined, s. 2(21), p. 27
name of, allowability of, s. 20, p. 418
RBI Act, partial exemption, s. 58A, p. 751
winding up of, s. 10-FB, p. 256

Insurance sector, NBFC, Guidelines for entry, s. 58A, p. 756

Insurance, broker's duty to shareholder, s. 34, p. 523
name, availability, guidelines, s. 20, p. 418

Intangible Assets, (IAS 38), see *App.* 319
Accounting Standards, (AS-26), see *App.* 316

Inter-connected Stock Exchange, s. 2(39), p. 68

Intercorporate Investments, exemption to s. 25 company, (Western U.P. Chamber of Commerce & Industry), s. 25, p. 443

Interest, debentures, call money on, s. 117, p. 1413

Interest on Debentures, Issue of Debentures Bearing Interest Less Than Bank Rate, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Interest Rate Derivative Contracts, SEBI Scheme for Introduction of Exchange Traded Interest Rate Derivative Contracts, see *App.* 169

Interim dividend, definition, s. 2(14A), p. 47

Interim Financial Reporting, (IAS 34), see *App.* 319
Accounting Standards, (AS-25), see *App.* 316

Interim Relief, Appellate Tribunal, power to grant, s. 10-FZA, p. 306
consumer forum, jurisdiction to give, s. 10, p. 208
power to court to grant, s. 10-GB, p. 318
powers of court to grant, s. 10, pp. 207, 210
rectification, CLB's power of, s. 111(6), p. 1360

Interlocutory Applications, CLB before, contents, s. 10-E, p. 234

Intermediaries, Action against intermediaries, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVII, *App.* 162
Appointment of Intermediaries, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
complaints from, s. 73, p. 920
compliance officer, appointment by, s. 73, p. 919
Stock Brokers, Intermediaries, making an application for registration under section 12 for different categories of, see *App.* 224
Stock Brokers, Intermediaries, making an application for registration under section 12 for different categories of, Intermediaries associated with the securities market-dealers in securities outside the stock exchanges, registration of, see *App.* 224

Internal Auditor, relying upon the work of an, (AAS-7), see *App.* 317

Internal Control, study and evaluation of the accounting system and related internal control in connection with an audit (AAS-6), see *App.* 317

Internal Management, s. 10, p. 187

International Accounting Standards, Accounting and Reporting by Retirement Benefit Plans (IAS 26), see *App.* 319
Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance (IAS 20), see *App.* 319
Agriculture (IAS 41), see *App.* 319
Borrowing Costs (IAS 23), see *App.* 319
Business Combinations (IAS 22), see *App.* 319
Cash Flow Statements (IAS 7), see *App.* 319
Comparative study (Indian GAAP, IAS and US GAAP), see *App.* 322
Consolidated Financial Statements (IAS 27), see *App.* 319
Construction Contracts (IAS 11), see *App.* 319
Disclosures in the Financial Statements of Banks and Similar Financial Institutions (IAS 30), see *App.* 319
Discontinuing Operations (IAS 35), see *App.* 319
Earnings per Share (IAS 3), see *App.* 319
Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates (IAS 21), see *App.* 319
Employee Benefits (IAS 19), see *App.* 319
Events After the Balance Sheet Date (IAS 10), see *App.* 319
Financial Instruments: Disclosure and Presentation (IAS 32), see *App.* 319
—, Recognition and Measurement (IAS 39), see *App.* 319
Financial Reporting in Hyperinflationary Economies (IAS 29), see *App.* 319
Financial Reporting of Interests in Joint Ventures (IAS 31), see *App.* 319
Impairment of Assets (IAS 36), see *App.* 319
Income Taxes (IAS 12), see *App.* 319
Information Reflecting the Effects of Changing Prices (IAS 15), see *App.* 319
Intangible Assets (IAS 38), see *App.* 319
Interim Financial Reporting (IAS 34), see *App.* 319
Inventories (IAS 2), see *App.* 319
Investment Property (IAS 40), see *App.* 319
Investments in Associates (IAS 28), see *App.* 319
Leases (IAS 17), see *App.* 319
Net Profit or Loss for the Period, Fundamental Errors and Changes in Accounting Policies (IAS 8), see *App.* 319
Presentation of Financial Statements (IAS 1), see *App.* 319
Property, Plant and Equipment (IAS 16), see *App.* 319
Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets (IAS 37), see *App.* 319
Related Party Disclosures (IAS 24), see *App.* 319
Revenue (IAS 18), see *App.* 319
salient features, objective and disclosures requirements, see *App.* 319
Segment Reporting (IAS 14), see *App.* 319
sources of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP–US), see *App.* 321
Superseded by IAS 1 (IAS 5), see *App.* 319
Superseded by IAS 1(IAS 13), see *App.* 319
Superseded by IAS 15 (IAS 6), see *App.* 319
Superseded by IAS 16, IAS 22 and IAS 38 (IAS 4), see *App.* 319
Superseded by IAS 27 and IAS 28 (IAS 3), see *App.* 319
Superseded by IAS 38 (IAS 1), see *App.* 319
Superseded by IAS 39 and IAS 40 (IAS 25), see *App.* 319

Internet Related Issues (SEBI), Unified Electronic Information Gathering and Retrieval System, see *App.* 229

Interpretation and Interpretation of Statutes, Acts in *pari materia*, s. 1, p. 13
applicability of English Law, s. 1, p. 14
articles and memorandum of, s. 36, p. 538
Articles of Association, s. 1, p. 15, s. 2(2), p. 23, s. 26, p. 448
carrying on business for acquisition of gain, s. 11, p. 337
case law, different statutes, relevancy, s. 1, p. 23
cognate subject, relevancy of, s. 1, p. 23
committee reports, s. 1, p. 16
contemporanea expositio, s. 1, p. 22

Interpretation and Interpretation of Statutes (***Contd.***)
contemporary legislation in other countries, s. 1, p. 13
decisions under other statutes, s. 1, p. 23
deeming provisions, of, s. 1, p. 22
definition clause, s. 1, p. 21
departmental instructions, s. 1, p. 20
Depositories Act, words & phrases, s. 2A, p. 89
draft bill s. 1, p. 16
explanation, s. 1, p. 19
free reserves, s. 2(29A), p. 28
headings in statutes, s. 1, p. 12
headings, use of, for removal of doubts, s. 1, p. 12
history of legislation, consideration of s. 1, p. 13
includes, s. 2, p. 31
internal rules & bye-laws, s. 36, p. 538
legislative intent, s. 1, p. 17 (• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Construction of the Act"**)
main objects, rule of, s. 13, p. 357
mandatory and directory provisions, construction of, s. 1, p. 15
Memorandum of Association, of, s. 1, p. 15
memorandum, s. 2(28), p. 28
non obstante clause, s. 1, pp. 16, 20
Notes on Clauses, s. 1, p. 16
notifications, s. 1, p. 20
objects and reasons, s. 1, pp. 5, 6, 7, 8, 16
objects of, s. 13, p. 355
pari materia s, 1, p. 13
—. Acts of, s. 1, p. 13
parliamentary debates, s. 1, p. 20
persons with whose directions..... directors are accustomed to act, s. 7, p. 170
prospectus, provisions of, s. 65, p. 811
proviso, s. 1, p. 19
retrospective effect, s. 1, p. 18
retrospective or prospective, of, s. 1, p. 18
title of enactment, s. 1, p. 22
travaux preparatories, asserting draftmen's intentions, s. 1, p. 17
unless the context otherwise requires, s. 2, pp. 23, 31

***Interse* Allocation of Responsibilities** (*Clause* 5.3.2.1), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. II, *App.* 162

Invalidation, acts and proceedings, vacancy in Tribunal not to, s. 10-GC, p. 321

Inventories, (IAS 2), see *App.* 319
Audit of Inventories, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-28)
Guidance Note on Audit of Inventories, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-28)
Valuation of inventories, (AS-2), see *App.* 316

Investigation, beneficial ownership of shares, as to, s. 18 7-D, p. 1765
Serious Fraud Investigation Office (SFIO), see *App.* 48
transfer of shares, jurisdiction, s. 111A, p. 1384

Investment Property, (IAS 40), see *App.* 319

Investments, s. 49, pp. 612, 615
Accounting for Investments in Associates in Consolidated Financial Statements, (AS-23), see *App.* 316
accounting for, (AS-13), see *App.* 316
Audit of Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-30)
company, of in its own name, s. 49, p. 612
Guidance Note on Audit of Investments, as issued by ICAI, see *App. 318*(B-30)
holding company, by, subsidiary company, in, s. 4, p. 130
meaning, s. 49, p. 615
preventing abuse of company's, s. 49, p. 612
purchase of securities in the name of scheduled bank, s. 4 9, p. 613
register of, inspection by shareholder, petition before CLB on refusal, s. 49, p. 615
shares registered in joint names with director, s. 49, p. 615
Shortfall in the value of a Banks Investments, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-7)

Investments (*Contd.*)
time-limit for holding by bankers, s. 49, p. 613
trading over prices, lawful purpose, whether, s. 12, p. 347

Investments Abroad, Guidelines for Indian Direct Investment in Joint Ventures and Wholly Owned Subsidiaries Abroad, see *App.* 117

Investments in Associates, (IAS 28), see *App.* 319

Investments of Company, beneficial holdings, s. 49, p. 614
register of, petition to CLB for inspection, s. 49, p. 615
required to be kept in company's own name, s. 49, pp. 610, 612

Investor Complaints, jurisdiction for, s. 76, p. 950

Investor Education and Protection Fund (Awareness and Protection of Investors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 42
application money, unclaimed, transfer to, s. 73, p. 903
debentures, matured, transfer to, s. 117, p. 1428
unpaid matured deposits, transfer, to s. 58A, p. 744

Investor Grievance, (1) DoCA Related Grievances Investor Complaints to be settled within 90 days (2) Investors Advised to approach RBI for complaints regarding NBFCs, see *App.* 234(7)
Computerised Process of Redressal of Investors Grievances, see *App.* 234
Computerised Process of Redressal of Investors Grievances, Circular dated 16-9-1993, see *App.* 234(2)
Investor grievances filed with SEBI, awaiting redressal—Quoting of Acknowledgement Reference Number, see *App.* 234(6)
Investor grievances to Deposits, Mutual Funds, Collective Investment Scheme, Companies in Liquidation and other Investor Complaints, see *App.* 234(8)
jurisdiction for, s. 76, p. 950
Protection of Investors Interest—Investor Education for Holders of Securities, Efforts of SEBI—An Information Pamphlet "A Quick Reference Guide for Investors" Brought out by SEBI Portion of Text Reproduced, see *App.* 234(1)
SEBI Press Release on Investor Grievance Redressal—Decentralisation, see *App.* 234(5)
SEBI to Collaborate with Investor Associations, SEBI Press Release, dated 26-4-1994, see *App.* 234(3)
Serious Fraud Investigation Office (SFIO), see *App.* 48
Standardisation of Investor Complaints Lodged with SEBI against Companies, Press Note VIII, dated 15-2-1996, see *App.* 234(4)

Investor Guidance Grievances Complaints, jurisdiction, complaint as to debentures, s. 117, p. 1429
jurisdiction for, s. 10-GB, p. 317

Investor Guidance, jurisdiction for, s. 76, p. 950

Investor Protection and Education Fund, application money, to be transferred to, s. 73, p. 903, 905

Investor protection, complaints, grievances guidance, jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 209
financial services, English cases, s. 76, p. 949

Investor's Complaints, companies in liquidation, deposits with, s. 58A, p. 737
Non-Banking Financial Companies, against, s. 10, p. 210

Investor's Protection Bill, 1999, depositors' interest, s. 58A, p. 758

Investors Protection Fund, Investor Education and Protection Fund (Awareness and Protection of Investors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 42

Investors, indoor management, protection by, to *bona fide,* s. 81, p. 1042
misled by prospectus, liability to, s. 62, p. 801
remedies available to, depositor non-payment for, s. 58A, p. 736

IPO, issue of certificate on, s. 68B, p. 824

Irredeemable preference shares, procedure for redemption, Secretarial Action Points, s. 80, p. 1008

Irregularities, no Judicial interference in mere, s. 10, p. 201

Issue Advertisement, SEBI Guidelines for, see Chap. IX of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Issue Material, Despatch of Issue Material, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162

Issue of certificates, IPO, on, s. 68B, p. 824

Issue of Securities, Sweat Equity, SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002, see *App.* 175

Issue of Security in India by a Branch Office or Agency of a Person Resident Outside India, FEM (Issue of Security in India by a Branch Office or Agency of a Person Resident Outside India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 106

Issue of Share Capital, Companies (Issue of Share Capital with Differential Voting Rights) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 39

Issue of shares at Discount, issue at over 10%, p. 79, p. 996
power to, s. 79, p. 993
violation of section, s. 79, p. 997

Issue of shares, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Issue Requirements**"
amalgamation, under scheme of, s. 81, p. 1042
book building processes, s. 81, p. 1052
Consumer Protection, irregular allotment, is not dispute, s. 81, p. 1040
date of offer, s. 81, p. 1032
directors' fiduciary duty, in, s. 81, p. 1037
discount at, s. 79, p. 995
—, Secretarial Action Points, s. 79, p. 999
donation, of fully paid, not allowed, s. 70, p. 834
fully paid, donation by way of, not allowed, s. 70, p. 834
further issue of shares, s. 81, p. 1018
issue of rights, important aspects, s. 81, p. 1023
OTC Exchange of India, through, see Chap. XIV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
par, when to be SEBI Guidelines, s. 67, p. 818
premium, when chargeable, SEBI Guidelines, s. 67, p. 818
prohibition on, foreign by person RII, s. 72, p. 873
Unlisted Companies (Issue of Sweat Equity Shares) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 45

Issue Opening Date, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Issue price, Basis for issue price (*Clause* 6.13.1(G)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XV, *App.* 162
See Chap. III of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Issue proceeds, deployment of, jurisdiction for complaint, s. 61, p. 786
deployment of, s. 61, p. 786
deployment of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 73, p. 899
see Chap. VII, VIII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
unutilised, accounting treatment of, s. 61, p. 786
wrong deployment, jurisdiction, s. 61, p. 786

Issue Requirements, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Issue of Shares**"
Capital Structure, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Compliance Officer to be Appointed by Lead Merchant Banker, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Firm Allotments and Reservations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Incentives to Prospective Shareholders, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Issue of Debentures Bearing Interest Less Than Bank Rate, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Issue Opening Date, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Listing of pure debt/convertible instruments issued by Unlisted infrastructure companies and Municipal Corporations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
New Financial Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Option to Receive Securities in Dematerialised Form, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Period of Subscription, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Price Band, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Public Offer by Unlisted Companies with Post Issue Capital upto Rs.5 crores, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Requirement of Monitoring Agency, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Restriction on further Capital Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Retention of Oversubscription, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Rule 19(2)(b) of SC (R) Rules, 1957, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Safety Net or Buy Back Arrangement, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Terms of the Issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Underwriting, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Issue Requirements (*Contd.*)
Updation of Offer Document, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
Utilisation of funds in case of Rights Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

'Issued Generally', s. 2(22), p. 27, s. 2, p. 52
'allotment of shares in discharge of debts whether a mounts to, s. 81, p. 1035
conversion of Government loans into shares, s. 81, pp. 1044, 1045

Issuer Company, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

Issues of Securities, Code of Conduct of Business for Members and Dealers of OTCEI—issued by OTCEI, see *App.* 264
Guidelines for Issue of Securities by Companies and their listing on over the Counter Exchange of India (OTCEI), see *App.* 262
Norms for Sale/Transfer/Surrenders of Dealership/Membership of OTCEI, 1997, see *App.* 265
Trading Mechanism and Business Rules of OTCEI, see *App.* 263

Issues, Bonus Shares, see Chap. XV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
companies barred not to issue security, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
Credit Rating Agencies, see *App.* 267

Jammu and Kashmir, Company Law Settlement, Scheme, 2003, see *App.* 36

Joint Auditors, Guidelines for Indian Direct Investment in Joint Ventures and Wholly Owned Subsidiaries Abroad, see *App.* 117
Responsibility of Joint Auditors (AAS-12), see *App.* 317
Statement on the Responsibility of Joint Auditors, as issued by ICAI (AAS-12), see *App.* 317

Joint Family, s. 11, p. 339
application of s. 11, p. 339
male and females members to be included, s. 11, p. 340
position of, illegal association in, s. 11, p. 339

Joint Hindu Family, s. 11, p. 339

Joint Holders of Shares, s. 3, p. 107
calls on shares, s. 91, p. 1129
calls, payment of, s. 41, p. 553
death of, transfer of shares, s. 108, p. 1245
director, investment in joint name with, s. 49, p. 614
dividend, payment to, s. 41, p. 552
meeting, notice of, s. 172, p. 1668
—, requisition of, s. 41, p. 552
notices, service of, s. 41, p. 552
NRI, conversion of, between residents & NRI, s. 108, p. 1254
private company, counting of number of member s, s. 3, p. 107
—, oppression and mismanagement, s. 41, p. 552
proxy, s. 41, p. 552, s. 176, p. 1712
quorum, counting of, s. 174, p. 1688
register of members, entry in, s. 150, p. 1565
—, entry of, s. 150, p. 1565
rights shares, renunciation, s. 81, p. 1037
share qualifications, s. 41, p. 553
splitting up, joint holdings, s. 41, p. 552, s. 110 p. 1291
Table A, provision, s. 41, p. 553
transfer and transmission, s. 41, p. 553
transfer by, s. 108, p. 1244
transfer of shares, petition signed by, s. 111A, p. 1389
transmission, in case of, s. 108, p. 1227
voting and attendance, s. 41, p. 552
voting and quorum, s. 41, p. 553
voting, position of, s. 177, p. 1719, s. 182, p. 1733

Joint holding, splitting up, refusal to accept rectification, s. 111A, p. 1378

Joint Members, s. 3, p. 107, s. 41, p. 551
joint members, position and rights of, s. 41, p. 552

---

* For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise

Joint Members (*Contd.*)
joint share holders, s. 41, p. 552
nominee, s. 41, p. 552

Joint Shareholders, deposits from, s. 3, p. 109

Joint venture company, use of corporation name, s. 20, p. 410

Joint Ventures, Accounting Standards, Financial Reporting of Interests in Joint Ventures, (AS-27), see *App.* 316
Financial Reporting of Interests in Joint Ventures (IAS 31), see *App.* 319
transfer of shares, agreement amongst, s. 108, p. 1219

Judicial review, administrative orders, of CCI, s. 56, p. 638
availability of, s. 10-GF, p. 333
CLB decisions of, s. 111, p. 1301
Company Law Board's order, s. 10-F, p. 251
contractual matters, grounds of, s. 10-FN, p. 273
registration of memorandum, s. 33, p. 475
unlawful objects, of, s. 35, p. 526

Judicial Scrutiny, bar of, s. 10-FP, p. 277

Jurisdiction, appeal against CLB order, s. 10-F, p. 249
branch office, proceedings at, s. 10, p. 183
Civil Court not to have, s. 10-GB, p. 308
Civil Courts, s. 25, p. 443
—, no bar in personal rights, s. 10, p. 195
—, no bar in personal rights, s. 10, p. 201
—, power to interfere in management, s. 10, p. 186
Company Law Board, s. 10, p. 185
Company Law Board benches, s. 10-E, p. 233
Company Law Board, of, s. 10-E, p. 231, s. 10-FZA, p. 303
complaint under, s. 5, for, p. 160
consumer forum of, s. 10, p. 208
—, for interim relief, s. 10, p. 208
—, winding up matter, s. 10, p. 208
court, powers vested with, s. 10, p. 180
criminal liability for misrepresentation in prospectus, complaint for, s. 63, p. 807
deposits, company, in, s. 10, p. 207
District Court, s. 10, p. 180
effect of Registration, s. 34, p. 476
foreign proceedings, Civil Court, s. 10, p. 207
High Court, s. 10, p. 180
internal management, over s. 10, p. 201
Investor Guidance, Grievances and Complaints, s. 76, p. 950
issue proceeds, misuse of, for, s. 61, p. 786
Jurisdiction of Regional Offices/Head Office of the Board Regional Offices Territorial Jurisdiction Address of Head Office/SEBI Office (*Clause* 16.1.1.(b), 16.2.3.1, 16.2.4.3), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXII, *App.* 162
MRTP Commission, relief to investors, s. 10, p. 208
National Company Law Tribunal, of, s. 10, p. 179
notification, without, s. 10, p. 184
notified jurisdiction of District Courts, s. 10, p. 184
offer document, filing of, s. 56, p. 660
ordinary Civil Court, s. 10, p. 186
oversubscription, refund, filing suit, s. 73, p. 893
power of review, of courts, s. 10, p. 185
prospectus, mis-statement for, criminal liability, s. 63, p. 807
revisional jurisdiction of High Court, s. 10, p. 187
SICA Companies, in case of, s. 10, p. 207
Securities Appellate Tribunal of, s. 10, p. 208
service of document, complaint against default, s. 53, p. 628
shares, challenging forfeiture of, s. 108, p. 1239
Societies Registration Act, over, s. 10, p. 202
suit, filing of, s. 10, p. 207
territorial, s. 10, p. 182
transfer of shares, CLB's, s. 111A, p. 1384

Knowingly, meaning of, s. 5, p. 159

Knowledge, attribution of, to company, s. 34, p. 494

Kumar Mangalam Birla Committee Report on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(1)

Labour laws, officer in default, s. 5, p. 144

Lawful Purposes, s. 12, p. 347
trading over prices by investment company, s. 12, p. 347

Lead merchant bankers, post issue obligations, SEBI guidelines, s. 73, p. 913

Lease of tenancy, s. 34, p. 520
company to, effect of change of shareholders, s. 34, p. 520

Leases, (IAS 17), see *App.* 319
Accounting Standard (AS-19), see *App.* 316

Legal aid, entitlement of company to, s. 34, p. 481

Legal Representation, Company Law Tribunal, by secretary before, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
right to, appear before Tribunal, s. 10-GD, p. 322

Legal Representative, transfer of shares, by, s. 109, p. 1285

Letter of allotment, Stamp duty on letter of allotment of shares or debentures, Table of, see *App.* 135

Letter of offer [Loo], Capital structure of the company, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
company, management and project, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
contents of the, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
contents of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, pp. 1023, 1025
cover pages, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
debentures, disclosure of undertaking in, s. 117, p. 1419
disclosures in Abridged Prospectus and, see Chap. II, VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
expert opinion obtained if any, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
financial performance of the company for the last five years, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
following particulars in regard to the listed companies under the same management within the meaning of section 370(1B) which made any capital issue in the last three years, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
format of, s. 56, p. 646
general information, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
information for the period between the last date of the balance sheet and profit and loss account sent to the shareholders and up to the end of the last but one month preceding the date of the letter of offer shall be furnished, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
letter of offer shall fulfil the requirements and shall contain disclosures as specified under Section I of this Chapter for the prospectus under the following heads, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
management discussion and analysis of the financial conditions and results of the operations as reflected in the financial statement, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
outstanding litigation, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
particulars of the issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
regd. post, to be issued by, s. 73, p. 901, s. 81, p. 1026
statutory and other information, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
terms of the present issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
undertaking by directors, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162

Letter of option, filing, of debentures, s. 117, p. 1417

Letters, name of company on, s. 147, p. 1547
receiver appointment to be notified on, s. 137, p. 1522

Liabilities, Audit of Liabilities, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-35)
Contingent Liabilities, Accounting Standards, Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, (AS-29), see *App.* 316

Liability for Taxation, Provision for Liability for Taxation, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-6)

Liability, civil, for prospectus, s. 62, pp. 787, 795
criminal, for prospectus, s. 63, p. 805
director's provision avoiding, void, s. 201, p. 1844
—, void, indemnity against expenses, s. 201, p. 1844
guidance notes on provision for liability for taxation, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-6)
member of, company limited by shares s. 12, p. 348
—, guarantee company, s. 12, p. 348
—, unlimited company, s. 12, p. 348
provision relieving officers, from void, s. 201, p. 1844
subscribers of, s. 13, p. 369, s. 15, p. 373
unlimited, of directors, s. 16, p. 375
when membership, below minimum, s. 45, p. 589

Licenses, Departmental instructions, as regards procedure for grant of licence under section 25 of the Companies Act, see *App.* 9

Lien on Goods Sold, change as, registration, s. 125, p. 1476

Lien on shares, s. 108, p. 1229
discharge of, s. 108, p. 1232
enforcement of, s. 108, p. 1231
express provision, needed for, s. 108, p. 1229
extent of, s. 108, p. 1230
forfeiture, exercise of right, s. 108, p. 1237
loss of, s. 108, p. 1232
postponement of, s. 108, p. 1231
priority of, s. 108, p. 1232
waiver of, s. 108, p. 1230

Lien with Parent Cadre, members, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FE, p. 264
President National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FF, p. 264

Lien, register of members, by solicitor, s. 163, p. 1604

Lifting of the Corporate Veil, s. 34, p. 502
American law, s. 34, p. 508
associated company, piercing veil in, s. 34, p. 517
company and its undertakings, two different things, s. 34, p. 482
contracts in, s. 34, p. 520
economic entity, doctrine of, s. 34, p. 511
employees, holding, and subsidiary, s. 34, p. 513
evasion of personal and statutory obligations, s. 34, p. 517
fraudulent conduct of business, s. 34, p. 507
Government companies, s. 34, p. 521
group companies, as single economic unit, s. 34, p. 514
holding company, transfer of subsidiary's assets under normal restructuring, s. 34, p. 517
holding subsidiary, in USA and England, s. 34, p. 511
—, corporate formalities, non observance of, s. 34, p. 510
lease and tenancy, effect of change in shareholders, s. 34, p. 520
name, improper use of, s. 34, p. 507
personal and statutory obligation, evasion, s. 34, p. 517
piercing the veil in liquidation proceedings, s. 34, p. 508
—, holding—subsidiary relation-ship, s. 34, p. 508
—, tax matters, s. 34, p. 508
principle or policy, s. 34, p. 506
property matters, in, s. 34, p. 520
reduction of membership, s. 34, p. 507
small scale industries of, s. 34, p. 516
solicitors duty to principal shareholder, s. 34, p. 521
statutory provision, under s. 34, p. 507
suit by company, *forma pauperis*, s. 34, p. 481
tax matters, permissibility in, s. 34, p. 509
true legal position of tax matter, s. 34, p. 508

Limitation, appeal to Appellate Tribunal, applicability of, S. 10-GE, p. 323
calls on shares, interest on call money, s. 91, p. 1130
CLB order, period for appeal against, s. 10-F, p. 241

Limitation (*Contd.*)
Economic Offences, (Inapplicability of Limitation) Act, 1974, see *App.* 288
forfeiture of shares, recovery of unpaid balance for, s. 108, p. 1238
issue of share certificates, s. 113, p. 1393
prospectus, liability under suits for, s. 56, p. 649
prospectus, misrepresentation, limitation for compensation, s. 62, p. 801
Rectification of members for, s. 111, p. 1362
share certificate, for taking cognizance, s. 113, p. 1401
transfer of shares, conditional and, s. 111, p. 1336
—, conditional refusal, s. 111, p. 1337
—, condonation of, s. 111A, p. 1387
—, forged transfer and, s. 111, p. 1137
—, fraud involved, s. 111A, p. 1387

Limited Company, conversion from unlimited company, s. 32, p. 468
definition of, s. 12, p. 343
definition of, s. 2(23), p. 52
power to alter share capital, s. 94, p. 1134
refusal to register transfer of shares, reference to CLB, s. 111, p. 1301
registration of unlimited, as, s. 32, p. 468
reserve liability of, s. 98, p. 1147
transfer of shares, grounds for refusal, s. 111, p. 1298

Limited Liability, attached to company's name, s. 13, p. 351
bills, cheques etc. to bear, s. 147, pp. 1549, 1550
licence to dispense with use of, s. 25, p. 439
Memorandum to contain Statements of, s. 13, p. 351
name on goods, s. 147, p. 1550
personal liability of officer in default, s. 147, p. 1550
'private limited', s. 13, p. 351, s. 24, p. 434

Liquidation proceedings, piercing veil in, s. 34, p. 508

Liquidation, Companies Liquidation Account Rules, 1965, see *App.* 29

Liquidators, Auditing of Accounts of Liquidators, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318 (B-10)
Companies (Official Liquidator's Accounts) Rules, 1965, see *App.* 28

List of Members, Annual, s. 159, p. 1588

List of Recognised Stock Exchanges and their Addresses, see *App.* 261

List of Specified Branches of Punjab National Bank for payment of Fees, see *App.* 138

Listed companies, buy-back of, reduction of non-promoters' shareholding prohibited, s. 77A, p. 973
companies intending to get SEBI, powers, s. 55A, p. 633
Corporate Debt Securities, SEBI Guidelines on Issue of Corporate Debt Securities though Private Placement by Listed Company, see *App.* 165
debt securities, private placement by, s. 117, p. 1421
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
definition, s. 2(23A), p. 52
initial public offer by, in demat form, s. 68B, p. 823
meaning of, s. 2(23A), p. 27
notice of closure, requirements of, s. 154, p. 1583
notice of meetings, listing agreement requirements, s. 172, p. 1670
Postal Ballot, resolution by, s. 17, p. 382
postal ballot, special resolution by, s. 31, p. 465
pre-emptive rights in transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1327
preferential allotment, Foreign Institutional Investors, s. 81, p. 1071
private placement of debt securities of, s. 117, p. 1421
public issues by, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
refusal to register transfer of shares, reference to CLB, s. 111, p. 1301
see Chap. II of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
transfer of shares of, company secretary to monitor, s. 111A, p.1389
transfer of shares, Board's powers, delegation of, s. 111A, p. 1371
—, grounds for refusal, s. 111, p. 1298

Listing Agreement, see *App.* 251
action on, s. 73, p. 913
Amendments to, and Related Circulars, see *App.* 254
notice of meetings, listed companies, of, s. 172, p. 1670
postal ballot, s. 192-A, p. 1800
transfer of shares, requirements under, s. 111A, p. 1389
amendments to, s. 2(39), p. 68

Listing permission, disclaimer clause, s. 73, p. 892

Listing, agreement form, s. 73, pp. 911, 913
appeal against refusal to grant by stock exchange, s. 73, pp. 886, 894
application, appeal under s. 22A SCRA, s. 73, p. 896
Authority, SEBI (Central Listing Authority) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 166
body corporate, for public issue, s. 73, p. 860
cancellation of, appeal against, s. 73, p. 896
Cash Flow Statement, Requirements of, see *App.* 251
Code of Conduct of Business for Members and Dealers of OTCEI—issued by OTCEI, see *App.* 264
conditions for continued, s. 73, p. 912, s. 81, p. 1068
debt instruments, of, s. 73, p. 909
debt instruments, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
delisting, SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003, see *App.* 167
eligibility for, guidelines, s. 73, p. 908
failure by stock exchange, to dispose off, application, s. 73, p. 892
fee payable by company, s. 73, p. 911
fees payable by companies (Bombay Stock Exchange), see *App.* 253
Fees, Payable by the Companies for the period of 5 years from 1992-93 to 1996-97 (Bombay Stock Exchange), see *App.* 253
Form of Letter of Application, see *App.* 251
Guidelines for Issue of Securities by Companies and their listing on over the Counter Exchange of India (OTCEI), see *App.* 262
Guidelines for Listing of Securities on recognised Stock Exchanges in Relaxation of Rules, 19(2)(b) of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957, see *App.* 251
Guidence Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257
initial public offerings, s. 73, p. 913
listing agreement, see *App.* 251
listing, guidelines for eligibility, s. 73 p. 908
name, rectification of, duty to notify to stock exchange, s. 21, p. 426
Nasdaq Stock Market, Stock Exchange, see *App.* 266
NCDs & DSCIs of unlisted company, SEBI Guidelines, s. 73, p. 909
new companies, eligibility of, s. 73, p. 905
non-compliance of, agreement, s. 73, p. 913
Norms for Sale/Transfer/Surrenders of Dealership/Membership of OTCEI, 1997, see *App.* 265
OTCEI, Guidelines for eligibility, s. 73, p. 908
procedure for, on OTCE, Secretarial Action Points, s. 73, p. 922
—, on stock exchange Secretarial Action Points, s. 73, p. 920
public offer, minimum lowering of, s. 73, p. 908
public sector enterprises, share of, s. 73, p. 911
refusal by stock exchange, appeal to SEBI under, SCRA, s. 73, p. 896
refusal, failure to refund, complaint, powers delegated to SEBI, s. 73, p. 903
refusal, single stock exchange, by, s. 73, p. 891
rights shares, requirement, as to s. 81, p. 1040
SEBI (Central Listing Authority) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 166
SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003, see *App.* 167
time-limit for, s. 73, p. 888
Trading Mechanism and Business Rules of OTCEI, see *App.* 263
two stages, public issue, s. 73, p. 862

Loan to member, knowledge that he is not beneficial member, no protection, s. 153, p. 1572

Loans and Advances, Audit of Miscell. Expenditure shown in Balance Sheet, Loans and Advances, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-33)
Bonus, Guidance Note on Audit of Debtors, Loans and Advances, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-32)

Loans and Advances (*Contd.*)
debenture distinguished from, s. 2(12), p. 40
Guidance Note on Audit of Debtors, Loans and Advances, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-32)
holding company, by, subsidiary company, to, s. 4, p. 130
preference shares, conversion of, into, s. 80, p. 1008
purchasing own shares, for, s. 77, p. 951
purchasing own shares, what amounts to, s. 77, p. 954
Raising of, (Terms of Issue of Debentures and Raising of Loans with option to convert such Debentures and Loans into Shares) Rules, 1977, see *App.* 13
shares, conversion into, s. 81, p. 1044
ultra vires, s. 13, p. 362

Locked-in securities, inter-se transfer of locked-in securities amongst promtoers, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, see *App.* 162

Lock-in requirements, *inter se* transfer of, s. 81, p. 1076
promoters contribution in public issue, s. 81, p. 1075

Lock-in-period, First issues by existing private/closely held companies, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines, preferential allotments in, s. 81, p. 1040
Preferential allotments, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Promoters contribution in, Public issue by existing listed companies, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Promoters Contribution, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Main Objects, rule of interpretation, s. 13, pp. 355, 357

Malegam Committee Report, see *App.* 168 and see *App.* 231

Management and Administration, commencement of business, restriction o n, s. 149, pp. 1554, 1558
general provision, p. 1543
importance of registered office, s. 146, p. 1543
personal liability of officer in default, s. 147, p. 1550
publication of name, s. 147, p. 1547
registered office, s. 146, p. 1543

Management, company, of two companies, s. 34, p. 502
disqualification for, s. 203, p. 1853
fraudulent persons not to manage, s. 203, p. 1850
insolvent, prohibited from, s. 202, p. 1847
manager, managing director, distinguished, s. 2, p. 54
meaning of, s. 203, p. 1863
no right to participate in, before membership, s. 41, p. 547
prevention, court's power to relieve from, s. 203, p. 1878
—, of undesirable persons from management, s. 202, p. 1847
Representations by Management (AAS- 11), see *App.* 317
undesirable/persons, by, prevention of, s. 202, p. 1847
whole or substantially the whole, s. 2(24), p. 55

Manager, agreement of appointment, filing along with Memorandum/Articles of association, s. 33, p. 469
appointment, along with wholetime Director, no prohibition against, s. 197-A, p. 1829
body corporate, cannot be, s. 2(24), p. 54
covered under expression 'officer in default', s. 5, p. 140
defined, s. 2(24), pp. 27, 53
director is not, s. 2(13), p. 47
distinction between managing director, and manager, s. 2, p. 56
factory manager is not, s. 2(24), p. 54
managing director, compared with, s. 2(26), p. 56
one, not more then, s. 2(24), p. 53
president, when not, s. 2(24), p. 53
remuneration, s. 198, p. 1835
shop manager is not, s. 2(24), p. 54
site manager, s. 2(24), p. 54
statutory provisions, s. 2, pp. 48, 57

Manager (*Contd.*)
undesirable persons prohibited, s. 202, p. 1847
who is, s. 2(24), pp. 27, 53

Managerial Personnel, appointment and remuneration, distinguished from employment, s. 197-A, p. 1830
appointment and remuneration, distinguished from employment, not to provide for reappointment, s. 204, p. 1888
—, of different categories at the same time, s. 197-A, p. 1828
appointment in contravention, consequences, s. 204, p. 1886
attorney, management by Board, through, s. 197-A, p. 1828
director incharge, s. 197-A, p. 1830
executive, assistant or special, s. 197-A, p. 1830
manager, along with wholetime director, no prohibition against appointment, s. 197-A, p. 1829
Nomenclatures, adoption of new, watch by ROC, s. 197-A, p. 1832
non-executive director, appointment of, s. 197-A, p. 1831
previous approval of Central Govt., when no profits, s. 198, p. 1837
undischarged insolvent, not to function as, s. 202, p. 1847
undischarged insolvent, offences of strict liability, s. 202, p. 1850
varying descriptions, s. 197-A, p. 1832
wholetime Director, along with manager, no prohibition against, appointment, s. 197-A, p. 1829

Managerial Remuneration, s. 198, p. 1835 *et seq.*
allowances for 5 year period, s. 204, p. 1887
approval of Central Govt., s. 198, p. 1837
—, power *quasi*-judicial, s. 198, p. 1838
calculation of commission etc, s. 199, p. 1842
commission by way of, s. 198, p. 1837
disclosure of actual payment, s. 200, p. 1843
inadequacy or absence of profits, effective capital of company, linked with, s. 198, p. 1840
indemnity against liability, s. 201, p. 1845
maintenance of MD's personal residence, s. 198, pp. 1835, 1830
minimum, approval for, s. 198, p. 1837
model regulations, s. 198, p. 1840
monthly basis, on, s. 198, p. 1837
over all maximum in case of absence or inadequacy of profits, s. 198, p. 1835
payment for non-managerial considerations, s. 198, p. 1838
power vested in Central Govt. is *quasi*-judicial, s. 198, p. 1838
private company, applicability to, s. 199, p. 1842
prohibition of tax free payment, s. 200, p. 1843
Schedule XIII, Guidelines, to appointments and, s. 198, p. 1840
Secretarial Action Points, for payment of, procedure, s. 198, p. 1841
tax-free salary, meaning of, s. 200, p. 1843
ultra vires acts, indemnity against, s. 201, pp. 1845-46

Managing Agent, definition, s. 2, p. 56
management after, s. 197-A, p. 1829
restriction on appointment, constitutional validity, s. 204A, p. 1889

Managing Director, agreement of appointment, filing along with Memorandum/articles of association, s. 33, p. 469
appointment, without being director, s. 2(26), p. 56
cannot be equated with ordinary director, s. 2, p. 56
covered under expression 'officer in default', s. 5, p. 140
deemed public company, conversion of, effect on appointment and remuneration etc, s. 43-A, p. 581
—, definition, s. 2(26), pp. 27, 57
departmental view as to varying descriptions, s. 197-A, p. 1832
designation not material, s. 2(26), p. 57
dual capacities, s. 2(26), p. 56
dues, company's no personal liability for, s. 34, p. 523
fraudulent persons not to act as, s. 203, p. 1850
manager, compared with, s. 2(26), p. 56
more than one, s. 2(26), p. 57
nature of duties, depends upon, s. 2(26), p. 57
one, more than, s. 2(26), p. 57
power to remove secretary, s. 2(45), p. 79
reimbursement of expenses incurred in criminal cases, s. 201, p. 1845

Managing Director (*Contd.*)
remuneration, s. 198, p. 1835, *et seq.*
resignation and default, s. 2(26), p. 57
resolution or agreement appointing, s. 192, p. 1795
right of company to appear in representative capacity, s. 2(26), p. 56
Secretary removal by, s. 2(45), p. 79
statutory provisions, s. 2, p. 57
tax purposes, principal officer as, s. 197-A, p. 1833

Mandatory Collection Centres, see also SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. VII, *App.* 162
see Chap. V of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

'Mandatory provision', construction of, s. 1, p. 15
meaning, s. 1, p. 15

Manufacturing and other Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 1988, see *App.* 24
Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 2003, section 25 company, application of, s. 25, p. 444
Statement on the Manufacturing and Other Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 1988, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-3)

Marginal Notes, s. 1, p. 12

Market Makers, SEBI Guidelines, s. 76, p. 947
SEBI Guidelines for Market Makers, see *App.* 224

Market Participant, SEBI (Central Database of Market Participant) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 157

Marketing Manager, officer as, s. 2(30), p. 59

Matters to be dealt with by the Principal Bench and Regional Benches of the Company Law Board, See Regulation 4(1) of the Company Law Board Regulations, 1991, see *App.* 144

Meetings of Creditors, representation of corporation at, s. 187, p. 1750

Meetings and Proceedings, general notes, s. 164, p. 1611

Meetings of Shareholders, accidental omission meaning, s. 172, p. 1668
adjournment of, s. 166, p. 1628
adjournment, notice after, s. 171, p. 1661
annual general meeting, s. 166, p. 1616
—, a statutory requirement, s. 166, p. 1621
—, not to be held on public holiday, s. 166(2), pp. 1617, 1618
Board of Directors, ICSI Guidance Note on Meetings of the Board of Directors, see *App.* 312(2)
—, ICSI Guidance Notes on Meetings of the Board of Directors (SS-1), see *App.* 311
cancelling or postponing of, s. 166, p. 1628
chairman of Board of directors, Hampel Committee Report, s. 175, p. 1694
chairman of, s. 175, p. 1692
chairman, member need not be, s. 175, p. 1693
—, modifications, for class meetings, s. 175, p. 1704
—, model regulations as to, s. 175, p. 1704
chairman's declaration of results, s. 178, p. 1721
circulation of members resolution, s. 188, p. 1765
class, of shareholders, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 106, p. 1181
CLB cannot induct an outsider as an observer, s. 186, p. 1747
CLB's power to order, s. 186, p. 1739
conditional order for, holding, s. 186, p. 1749
contents of notice of, s. 172, p. 1665
convening of annual or other general meeting, s. 166, p. 1621
demand for poll, s. 179, pp. 1722, 1723
discussion at, s. 175, p. 1697
election of chairman, s. 175, p. 1692
exercise of voting rights by shareholders, s. 182, p. 1730
explanatory statement to be annexed to notice, s. 173, p. 1671
extraordinary, s. 169, pp. 1642, 1644
factionalised company, CLB power to call, s. 186, p. 1745
foreign company, representation of, s. 187, p. 1751
general • SEE ALSO UNDER **'General Meeting'**, s. 166, p. 1616
General Meetings, **ICSI** Guidance Note on General Meetings, see *App.* 312(3)

Meetings of Shareholders (*Contd.*)

general power of attorney by donee, representation at meetings, by, s. 187, p. 1753
ICSI Guidance Notes on General Meetings (SS-2), see *App.* 311
impracticable, when, s. 186, p. 1743
insolvent shareholder's right to vote at, s. 177, p. 1719
insufficient notice, effect, s. 173, p. 1676
invalidated not on technical grounds, s. 171, p. 1658
irregularities in procedure, s. 175, p. 1702
joint shareholder's attendance, s. 41, p. 552
length of notice, modification of, s. 171, p. 1662
length of notice, of, s. 171, p. 1656
liquidation, company under, representation by liquidator, s. 187, p. 1751
manner of service of, s. 172, p. 1665
material facts meaning, s. 173, p. 1678
meeting requisition by, s. 41, p. 552
members appointing new chairman, s. 175, p. 1692
minutes of proceedings, s. 193, p. 1807
not less than '21' days meaning, s. 171, p. 1656
notice of, s. 171, p. 1656, s. 172, p. 1666
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **'Notice of Meeting'**
—, jurisdiction for challenging validity, s. 171, p. 1661
—, period directory not mandatory, s. 171, p. 1658
—, shorter s. 171, p. 1659
notice, contents of, director's interest to be disclosed, s. 173(2), p. 1672
—, contents of, modification, s. 172, p. 1670
—, modification of requirements, s. 173, p. 1685
—, provisions as to mandatory, s. 172, p. 1667
—, to disclose interest in other companies, s. 173, p. 1682
—, true information should give, s. 172, p. 1667
one member constituting a meeting, s. 167, p. 1635
outsiders present at, s. 177, p. 1719
place of holding the annual general meeting, s. 166, pp. 1618, 1620
poll, demand for, not honoured, effect on validity of business, s. 179, p. 1724
position of chairman, s. 175, p. 1694
postponing of, s. 166, p. 1628
power to order, *vis-a-vis*, unfair prejudice petition, s. 186, p. 1749
private companies, s. 170, p. 1654
private company's of, provision as to, s. 170, p. 1654
privilege of shareholders and directors, s. 175, p. 1698
proceedings at, s. 175, p. 1692 *et seq.*
proceedings of, publication, s. 197, p. 1828
provisions as regards private companies, s. 170, p. 1654
proxies, s. 176, p. 1705
quorum for, s. 174, p. 1685
quorum, model regulations, s. 174, p. 1691
—, modification as to class meetings, s. 174, p. 1691
—, position of non-shareholder director, s. 174, p. 1687
representation of, President and Governors, s. 187-A, pp. 1753, 1754
representation, authorisation of representative, s. 187, p. 1752
—, of corporation, applicable to general meeting only, s. 187, p. 1751
—, of corporations at, s. 187, p. 1750
—, of Government, s. 187-A, p. 1753
—, position of, s. 187, p. 1752
—, power of appointing representation vested in Board, s. 187, p. 1753
—, Secretarial Action Points, procedure, s. 187, p. 1753
requisition for calling, s. 169, pp. 1642, 1644
requisitioned, requisitionists' ability to call, s. 186, p. 1746
resolutions at, s. 189, p. 1771
restriction on exercise of voting right of members who have not paid calls, etc. s. 181, p. 1729
restriction on exercise of voting right when void, s. 182, p. 1730
service of notice, contents and manner of, s. 172, p. 1665
shorter notice, called on, s. 171, p. 1659
—, holding of, s. 171, p. 1659
—, public trustee cannot consent, s. 171, p. 1661
single member constituting, when, s. 167, pp. 1633, 1635, s. 186, p. 1749

Meetings of Shareholders (*Contd.*)
special business, s. 173, pp. 1673, 1676
statutory, s. 165, p. 1612
stay of requistioned EGM, s. 169, p. 1648
strict construction of notice of, s. 172, p. 1667
unauthorised convening of, s. 171, p. 1661
validity of notice questionable in civil suit, s. 172, p. 1670
voting rights in respect of trust shares, s. 187-B, p. 1754
voting to be by show of hands in first instance, s. 177 pp. 1718, 1720

Members, agreement in writing to be, s. 41, p. 546
allotment contrary to s. 41(2), s. 41, p. 549
allotment of shares, unknown person to, special court, s. 41, p. 548
allotment to, equal basis on, s. 36, p. 531
alteration of articles, to increase liability, s. 38, p. 542
alteration of memorandum or articles how far binding on, s. 38, pp. 540, 542
annual, list of, s. 159, p. 1588, s. 160, p. 1594
Appellate Tribunal, removal of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, salary allowances of, s. 10-FW, p. 289
—, suspension of, s. 10-FV, p. 288
—, term of office of, s. 10-FT, p. 287
articles, bound by, s. 36, p. 529
bearers of share warrant, not, s. 114, p. 1404
calls on shares, death of, effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
—, insolvency effect of, s. 91, p. 1130
—, liability in respect of, s. 91, p. 1128
cessation of membership, s. 41, p. 557
company as, s. 41, p. 551
conditions necessary for becoming a, s. 41, p. 545
considerations necessary for becoming a, s. 41, p. 546
contributory and, not interchangeable with, s. 41, p. 551
contributory and, s. 41, p. 551
convertible debenture, by, s. 41, p. 548
co-operative society as, s. 41, p. 551
death of, rights shares, s. 81, p. 1032
defined, s. 2(27), pp. 28, 57, s. 41, pp. 544, 549
depositories, membership through, s. 41, p. 545
depository record, on, s. 41, p. 549
director as, by qualification shares, s. 41, p. 545
does not include, bearer of share warrant, s. 2(27), p. 28
entry of name in register of members without agreement in writing, rectification, s. 41, p. 547
expression wider in scope than shareholder, s. 2(27), p. 57
expulsion by Board, amendment in articles, for, *ultra vires*, s. 31, p. 460
expulsion from membership, s. 41, p. 558
expulsion of, Sachar Committee view, s. 41, p. 559
expulsion, Departmental view, s. 41, p. 558
—, when justifiable and relief, s. 41, p. 560
firm, as member, s. 25, p. 435
Governor as, s. 41, p. 560
Govt. Companies, President or Governor as, s. 41, p. 560
guarantee company, admission to membership, s. 37, p. 539
Hindu undivided family, s. 6, pp. 168, 170, s. 41, p. 556
holder of shares', s. 81, p. 1032
holding company, restriction on subsidiary, s. 42, p. 562
how to be, s. 41, p. 544
increase of, notice to ROC, s. 97, p. 1145
increasing liability by implication, s. 38, p. 542
indebted to company, right to transfer shares, s. 111, p. 1312
index of, s. 151, p. 1566
joint family, male and female to be included, s. 11, p. 340
joint members, nominee, s. 3, p. 107, s. 41, p. 552, s. 150, p. 1565
liability, s. 12, p. 348
—, company limited by shares, s. 12, p. 348
—, guarantee company, s. 12, p. 348
—, increase of, s. 31, p. 462

Members (*Contd.*)
liability, unlimited company, s. 12, p. 348
'member', and 'shareholder', s. 41, p. 549
membership rights, minority action to enforce, s. 10, p. 188
memorandum & articles of association, money due to, debt as, s. 36, p. 538
memorandum, alteration, protection of, s. 17(6), p. 393
minor as member, s. 41, p. 554
minor, transferee as, s. 41, p. 560
minority shareholders action, s. 10, p. 188
modes of becoming, s. 41, pp. 544, 545
National Company Law Tribunal, grounds for removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267
—, lien with parent cadre, s. 10-FE, p. 264
—, prohibition on variation of salary, etc. of, s. 10-FG, p. 265
—, removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, resignation by notice in writing by, s. 10-FI, p. 266
—, salary and allowances of, s. 10-FG, p. 264
—, suspension of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, terms and conditions of service of, s. 10FG, p. 264
non-resident cannot become without the approval of RBI, s. 41, p. 560
oral agreement, by s. 41, p. 547
partnership firm can be, whether, s. 41, p. 550
personation of, s. 116, p. 1408
President as, s. 41, p. 560
private company, restriction on number, s. 3(1)(iii)(b), pp. 96, 106
public office, shares held in name of, s. 41, p. 557
purchase of, shares by, registration necessary, s. 41, p. 546
rectification, s. 111(4), p. 1337
reduced below legal minimum effect of, s. 45, p. 589
—, decree against company, remolding of, s. 45, p. 589
register of members, name not borne by, s. 41, p. 547
register of, s. 150, p. 1561
relief against expulsion, s. 41, p. 560
repudiation of membership, s. 72, p. 842
requirements of, s. 41, p. 545
restriction on non-residents, s. 41, p. 553
service of documents on, where to be by registered post, s. 53, p. 627
service of documents, post by, rebuttable presumption of delivery, s. 53, p. 625
several liability of, where business carried on after reduction in number, s. 45, p. 589
severally liable for debts if reduction of members below legal minimum numbers, s. 45, p. 588
share warrant bearer, s. 114, p. 1404
shareholder, s. 41, p. 549
single member, quorum, s. 174, p. 1689
society as, s. 41, p. 556
subscriber as member, s. 41, p. 544
subsidiary cannot be member of holding company, s. 42, p. 562
term member and contributory are not interchangeable, s. 41, p. 551
Trade Union as, s. 41, p. 556
transfer by, s. 41, p. 547
transmission by, s. 41, p. 547
trust, registered as society as, s. 41, p. 556
trusts as, s. 41, p. 554, s. 153, pp. 1570, 1573
violation of s. 41(2), effect of s. 41, p. 549
vote, right to have recorded. s. 87, p. 1113
voting right not affected by pledge or attachment, s. 87, p. 1121
who are, s. 41, p. 544

Members in practice, websites, ICSI guidelines displaying of particulars on, s. 2(45A), p. 82

Membership of company, s. 41, p. 552
admission to, s. 41, p. 548
minimum below, personal liability, s. 45, p. 589
no right in management, before, s. 41, p. 547
reduction in, liability for, s. 34, p. 507
repudiation of, s. 72, p. 842
suspension of, s. 25, p. 444
termination or cessation of, s. 41, p. 557

Membership of company (*Contd.*)
transfer of members interest, in guarantee comp any, and refusal, s. 27, p. 451

Membership of holding company, s. 42, p. 561
nominee, s. 42, p. 563

Memorandum and Articles, binding force and third parties, s. 36, p. 534
construction, s. 1, p. 15
contractual force with directors, s. 36, p. 529
declaration by advocate, in connection with registration of, s. 33(2), p. 469
interpretation of, s. 1, p. 15
NRI, general permission by RBI to subscribe, s. 12, pp. 345, 346
number below minimum, effect of insolvent, deceased member, s. 45, p. 589
registration not ministerial s. 33, p. 475
rights between members s. 36, p. 530
supply of copies, default in, offence complete at registered office, s. 39, p. 543

Memorandum of Association, act to override provisions of, s. 9, p. 176
Act to override, s. 9, p. 176
acts beyond the scope of, s. 13, p. 357
acts not authorised by, s. 13, p. 357
agreement with managerial personnel, filing along with, s. 33, p. 469
alteration of, creditors' objection, s. 17, p. 393
—, appeal against CLB's order, s. 17, p. 382
—, CLB discretion, interest of creditors, s. 17, p. 384
—, CLB's power, s. 17, p. 382
—, CLB's power to protect creditors, s. 17(6), p. 393
—, CLB's power to protect members, s. 17(6), p. 393
—, confirmation of two resolutions in one petition, s. 17, p. 382
—, employees, objections by, s. 17, p. 393
—, erroneous CLB's order liable to be recalled, s. 17, p. 385
—, expiry of time for, s. 19, p. 403
—, objection by creditors of group companies, s. 17, p. 393
—, of additional clauses, s. 16, p. 376
—, of articles, against, s. 31, p. 462
—, of name of State of Mysore, s. 15-B, p. 374
—, of object, wholly new for wholly different business, s. 17, p. 392
—, of objects, enlargement or change of local area, s. 17(1)(c), p. 289
—, of objects, restriction or abandonment of, s. 17(1)(c), p. 392
—, petition to CLB, procedure, for, s. 17, p. 394
—, registered office change of, registration of, s. 18, p. 400
—, registration of, s. 18, p. 399
—, special resolution for, s. 17, p. 377
—, to be void if not registered, s. 19, p. 403
—, to convert into Nidhi company, CLB discretion, s. 17, p. 385
altering liability of directors, s. 17, p. 377
amalgamation, change of objects, for, s. 17 (1)(f), p. 392
amendment of objects clauses, s. 13, p. 353
amendments by Amendment Act, 1974, s. 17, p. 380
articles, relationship with, s. 26, p. 448
binding force, s. 36, p. 529
binding force, third parties, s. 36, p. 534
capital, division into shares of fixed value, s. 13, p. 369
commercial company, under English Law, s. 13, p. 355
Company Law Board's confirmation, s. 17, p. 384
company, power to make gifts, s. 13, p. 359
conditions, s. 16, pp. 375, 376
conflict of provision with other laws, void, s. 9, p. 178
constructive notice of, s. 36, p. 535
constructive notice, rule o f, s. 13, p. 358
contractual terms by implication, s. 36, p. 530
copies to be given to members, s. 39, p. 542
—, alteration to be noted in copies, s. 40, p. 543
corrections in, power of attorney for, s. 15, p. 372
creditors, position of, s. 17, p. 392
defined, s. 2(28), pp. 28, 58, 1748

Memorandum of Association (*Contd.*)
different procedure under English Act, s. 17, p. 381
effect of, s. 36, p. 528
—, alteration, s. 38, p. 540
—, failure to register, alteration, s. 19, pp. 402, 403
—, registration of, s. 34, p. 476
extent of alteration, s. 17, p. 382
extraneous statements not part of it, s. 16, p. 376
failure to register, effect of, s. 19, pp. 402, 403
firm as such cannot sign, s. 12, p. 344
foreign subscribers, s. 15, p. 373
form of, s. 14, p. 371
—, See Schedule I, Tables B,C,D and E, p. 354
general notes, s. 12, p. 343
illiterate subscriber, mode of execution, s. 13, p. 370
implied powers, s. 13, p. 363
interpretation, s. 1, p. 15, s. 36, p. 538
jurisdiction of Company Law Board, discretions of, s. 17, p. 384
limitation of liability, s. 13, p. 368
limited liability, members with, s. 13, p. 368
main objects, indication of, s. 13, p. 355
main purpose, s. 17(1)(b), p. 389
minor cannot subscribe, s. 12, p. 344
money payable by members under, debt as, s. 36, p. 538
name clause, s. 13, p. 352
—, of company, s. 12, p. 351
non-resident subscribers, s. 15, p. 373
non-trading corporations objects, s. 13, p. 355
NRI/Foreigner subscriber as, s. 12, p. 345, s. 15, p. 373
object clause, s. 13, p. 355
—, amendment of, s. 13, p. 353
—, declaration that each object is independent, s. 13, p. 354
—, interpretation of, s. 13, pp. 355, 357
—, no restriction on length or items, s. 13, p. 354
—, power to spend on charity, s. 13, p. 359
—, to be stated in three heads, s. 13, p. 353
objects and powers, s. 13, p. 355
—, alteration for wholly different business, s. 17, p. 392
—, alteration to attain main purpose, s. 17, p. 389
—, alteration, procedure, Secretarial Action Points, s. 17, p. 395
—, incidental powers, s. 13, p. 364
—, main and ancillary, s. 13 p. 354
—, precise and few, s. 13, p. 354
—, statutory powers, s. 13, p. 364
—, trading company implied powers, s. 13, p. 364
—, *ultra vires*, loans borrowings, guarantees, s. 13, p. 362
objects of company, s. 13, p. 353 *et seq.*
objects, alteration of, amalgamation for, notice to creditors, s. 17, p. 392
—, inherent powers, s. 13, p. 364
powers implied, s. 13, p. 363
powers, manner of exercising, s. 13, p. 359
—, of company confined to objects, s. 13, p. 355
—, which are not implied, s. 13, p. 364
printing of, s. 15, p. 371
—, offset printing acceptance by registrar, s. 15, p. 373
provision in, conflicting with laws, effect, s. 9, p. 178
provisions which may be altered without reference to CLB, s. 17, p. 394
registered office, change in, s. 17, p. 386
—, change of appeal against CLB order, s. 18, p. 400
—, change of place within State, s. 17A, p. 396
—, clause, s. 13, p. 352
—, shifting of, obstruction by host State, s. 17, p. 389
registration, s. 33, p. 469
—, compliance, declaration of, s. 33, p. 470
—, of alteration, s. 18, p. 399

Memorandum of Association (*Contd.*)
registration, of alteration, extension of time, s. 19, p. 403
—, —, exclusion of time taken for obtaining copies, s. 18, p. 400
—, of computer laser printed documents, s. 15, p. 373
—, Registrar's duty, s. 33, p. 474
requirements as to, s. 13, p. 351
Reserve Bank permission necessary for foreign and non-resident subscribers, s. 15, p. 373
resolution of alteration, confirmation of two resolutions in one petition, s. 17, p. 382
right of the other party to plead *ultra vires*, s. 13, p. 364
Schedule of Stamps to be affixed on, table of, see *App.* 134
share capital, s. 13, p. 369
shares, equity, flexibility for denomination, s. 13, p. 370
shares, fixed amount of, s. 13(4)(a), p. 370
signature by an illiterate subscriber, s. 13, p. 370
—, subscribe, how to, s. 15, p. 372
—, witness how to, s. 15, p. 372
signature of, s. 15, p. 371
special resolution for alteration of, s. 17, p. 384
spelling and grammatical mistake, rectification of, s. 16, p. 376
Stamp Act, requirement of, s. 33, p. 470
subscriber is one who signs the subscription list, s. 12, p. 344
subscriber, foreigner, NRI, s. 15, p. 373
subscriber's liability, s. 13, p. 369
subscription by NRIs, general permission, s. 12, p. 346
subscription liability, s. 15, p. 373
—, misrepresentation induced by, s. 15, p. 372
subscription, persons resident abroad, by, s. 12, p. 346
subsidiary objects, s. 13, p. 352
ultra vires, dealings in good faith, s. 13, p. 359
—, doctrine of, s. 13, p. 357
—, —, position under English Law, s. 13, p. 356
unauthorised acts, s. 13, p. 357
xerox copies, not allowed, s. 15, p. 373

Memorandum of understanding, Memorandum of understanding between the Lead Marchent Bankers to the issue and the issuer company (*Clause* 5.3.1.2), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. I, *App.* 162

Mens rea, annual return, default in filing, s. 162, p. 1600
applicability of, s. 5, p. 158
company's vicarious liability, attribution of, s. 34, p. 493
officer in default, s. 5, p. 141

Merchant bankers, additional information for renewal of Registraiton as Merchant Banker (*Clause* 16.3.1.1(c)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXVI, *App.* 162
collection of applications for subscribing to issues, s. 56, p. 663
compliance officer appointed by, s. 56, p. 654
Decentralisation, of work relating to vetting of offer documents and registration of Merchant Bankers, see *App.* 235
details of, s. 56, p. 663
diligence, exercise of, by, s. 56, p. 658
draft offer document made public, s. 56, p. 661
filing of offer documents, s. 56, p. 658
forwarding letters, details, s. 56, p. 652
intermediaries, appointment of, s. 56, p. 653
Inter-se allocation of responsibilities, s. 56, p. 654
issuer company, agreement with, s. 56, p. 663
lead managers, guidelines issued to, prior to issue of codified RMB (GI Series), see *App.* 208
mandatory collection centres, s. 56, p. 664
memorandum of understanding with issuer, execution of, s. 56, p. 655
NBFCs not to act, s. 56, p. 652
offer documents, despatch of, s. 56, p. 662
other obligations of Lead Merchant Bankers, s. 56, p. 665
pre-issue obligations of, s. 56, p. 654
public issues, underwriting through book building process, s. 56, p. 658
registration of, SEBI guidelines, on, s. 73, p. 923
SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulations, 1992, s. 73, pp. 913, 923, see *App.* 207

Merchant bankers (*Contd.*)
SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Rules, 1992, see *App.* 206
SEBI Guidelines and Clarifications, see *App.* 208
share application forms, obligations as to, s. 56, p. 647
underwriters, appointment of, s. 56, p. 656

Merchant Banking Companies, Exempt from RBI Regulations, see *App.* 208(3)

Merger & take over bids, section 25 company, with business undertaking, s. 25, p. 442

Micro Film, annual return, filing on, s. 159, p. 1591

Minimum Alternate Tax, Accounting in Respect of Minimum Alternate Tax, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-40)
Audit under section 115JB of The Income-tax Act, 1961, Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-47)

Minimum Contribution, Promoters Participation in Excess of the Required Minimum Contribution to be Treated as Preferential Allotment, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162

Minimum Intervel between two issues, see Chap. II of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Minimum Public Offer, lowering of capital for listing companies, s. 73, p. 861

Minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 826
allotment before receiving, effect of, s. 69, pp. 824, 826
application money, withdrawal, injunction agains t, s. 71, p. 836
call up of issue price, s. 69, p. 831
commencement of business restricted before receiving, s. 149, p. 1558
debenture issue on rights basis, applicability, s. 69, p. 829
guidelines as to, s. 69, p. 828
investors' money protection of, s. 69, p. 827
not necessary when, s. 71, p. 836
prohibition of allotment, s. 69, p. 826
prospectus, statement of, in Schedule II refunding of, where Stock Exchange listing not granted, s. 73 p. 894
refund of money, on minimum subscription not received, s. 69, p. 826
refund, failure in, not attaining on, prosecution under IPC, s. 69, p. 828
refundable when, s. 69, p. 827
SEBI Guidelines, s. 69, p. 828
separate Bank account, money to be kept in, s. 6 9, p. 831
successive prospectuses, application of, s. 69, p. 829
time-limits for, s. 73, p. 888
underwritten or non-underwritten issues, SEBI guideline on, s. 69, p. 828

Minimum, effect of having less than, s. 45, p. 589
members, s. 12, p. 344, s. 45, p. 588
membership, below, personal liability, s. 45, p. 589

Minor as Member, s. 41, p. 554
register of member, entry of, s. 150, p. 1565
—, rectification, allotment under mistake, s. 111, p. 1341
transfer of shares as, s. 41, p. 553
—, guardian through, s. 108, p. 1243
voting rights of, s. 177, p. 1719

Minorities, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Minority shareholders action" and "Derivative action"**
derivative action, allowable when, s. 10, p. 191
dissenting, rights of, s. 107, p. 1181

Minority rights, • SEE UNDER "**Derivative Action"**

Minority Shareholder's Action, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Minority" and "Operation and Management"**
action of, s. 10, p. 188
allowable, when, s. 10, p. 191
cost of petition and expenses of litigation, s. 10, p. 201
costs and expenses, indemnity for, s. 10, p. 200
derivative action by, s. 10, p. 191

Minority Shareholder's Action (*Contd.*)
—, form of action, s. 10, pp. 188, 191
—, when lies and when it does not, s. 10, pp. 192, 200
derivative action, allowable when, s. 10, pp. 191
exceptions, list not exhaustive, s. 10, p. 200
fraud on the minority, s. 10, p. 197
illegal transaction, s. 10, p. 192
individual membership Rights, s. 10, p. 195
irregularities, noninterference, s. 10, p. 201
judicial non-interference, reasons for, s. 10, p. 191
membership rights, s. 10, p. 195
mismanagement, prevention of, s. 10, p. 196
prevention of oppression and mismanagement, s. 10, p. 196
special majority, acts requiring, s. 10, p. 193
ultra vires and illegal transactions, s. 10, p. 192
wrongdoers in control, s. 10, p. 194

Minutes books, duty to maintain, s. 193, p. 1809
loose-leaf form, in, s. 193, p. 1809
sheets attached by pasting or otherwise, s. 193, p. 1811

Minutes of proceedings, board meetings, s. 193, p. 1813
binding into volumes, s. 193, p. 1811
board meetings, inspection, members rights, ss. 193, 196, p. 1815
—, members right to get copies, ss. 193, 196, p. 1815
—, pre-prepared, s. 193, p. 1811
books for entering, how to be kept, s. 193(1A), (1B), p. 1807
books of general meeting, inspection of, CLB, jurisdiction to order, s. 196, pp. 1824, 1825
chairman signature, and period within which to be signed, s. 193, p. 1814
checklist for preparation, s. 193, p. 1815
committee meetings, s. 193, p. 1809
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance note & check list, s. 193, p. 1815
confirmation not necessary, s. 193, p. 1813
confirming minutes of prior Board meeting, s. 193, p. 1813
confirming minutes of proceeding of prior meeting, s. 193, p. 1813
contents, s. 193, p. 1811
correction of errors in, s. 193, p. 1812
drafting, s. 193, p. 1811
duty to keep, s. 193, pp. 1807, 1809
entries to be made within thirty days of meetings in books kept, s. 193(1), p. 1807
errors, correction of, s. 193, p. 1812
evidence, *prima facie*, s. 193, p. 1811, s. 194, p. 1820
evidentiary value of, s. 194, p. 1821
exemption to section 25 companies, s. 193, p. 1814
extracts of, right to take, s. 196, p. 1826
form of recording, s. 193, p. 1811
general meeting—inspection, s. 196, p. 1824
general meetings, s. 193, p. 1807
inspection fee, s. 196, p. 1827
inspection of, s. 196(2), pp. 1824, 1826
—, refusal to, s. 196, p. 1826
inspection, motive for, s. 196, p. 1826
locking device, s. 193, p. 1811
loose leaf form, kept in, s. 193, p. 1809
minutes book, not conclusive evidence, s. 194, p. 1821
penalty for failure to keep, s. 196(3), (4), p. 1825
place of keeping, s. 196, p. 1827
pre-prepared, s. 193, p. 1811
presumption as to correctness, s. 195, p. 1822
presumption to be drawn from, s. 195, p. 1822
proceedings of meetings, fair and correct summary of, to be contained in, s. 193(2), p. 1807
publication of reports of, s. 197, p. 1828
serial numbering, s. 193, p. 1811
shareholders meetings, pre-prepared, s. 193, p. 1811
signing of, s. 193(1-A), p. 1807
signing, period within which, s. 193, p. 1814
thirty days, within writing, s. 193, p. 1812

Miscellaneous Expenditure, Audit of Miscell. Expenditure shown in Balance Sheet, Loans and Advances, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-33)
Guidance Note on Audit of Miscell. Expenditure show in Balance Sheet, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-33)
Guidance Note on Audit of Miscellaneous Expenditure, 2003, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-64)

Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1977, and Circulars, see *App.* 56

Misrepresentation, allotment, effect on, s. 71, p. 836
prospectus, in, s. 62, p. 795
relief in case of, s. 58-A, p. 747
sale of shares in, compensation for, s. 108, p. 1219

Mis-statement, prospectus, in, s. 62, p. 787

Mistake, apparent on face of record, rectification of, s. 10-FM(2), p. 272

MNBCs, acceptance of deposits, by, s. 58A, p. 750
RBI directions, exemptions from, s. 58A, p. 763

Model Bye-Laws, SEBI—Model Bye-Laws of Stock Exchange, 2003, see *App.* 249

Modification of charges, s. 135, p. 1519
procedure, simplification, s. 125, p. 1479

Modification with reference to Govt. Companies, s. 23, p. 434

'Modify', 'Modification', s. 2(29), pp. 28, 58
assignment of rights by chargeholder to be regarded as, s. 135, p. 1519

MODVAT/CENVAT, Accounting treatment for MODVAT/CENVAT, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-23)

Money Lender's Act, company, a person under, s. 34, p. 478

Monitoring Agency, Format of the Report to be submitted by the Monitoring Agency (*Clause* 8.17.2), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XIX, *App.* 162

Monopolistic Trade Practices, MRTP Act, 1969, see *App.* 297

Moral Turpitude, member, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, removal on ground of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

Mortgage of shares, s. 108, p. 1240
equitable mortgage, s. 108, p. 1240
legal mortgage, s. 108, p. 1240
priority of mortgagees, alteration, s. 108, p. 1242

Mortgages, register of, to be maintained by company, s. 144, p. 1540
Registrar's register of, s. 130, p. 1511
satisfaction, registration of, s. 139, p. 1528
unregistered, effect, s. 125, pp. 1472, 1481

MRTP Commission, relief to investors, jurisdiction for, s. 10, p. 208

MRTP Commission Regulations, 1991, see *App.* 298

Multiple Currency, capital clause may be stated in, s. 13(4)(a), p. 370

Multiple Membership in Stock Exchanges, Norms relating to Multiple Membership in Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 260

Multi-State Co-operative Societies Act, 2002, see *App.* 305

Mutation of name, s. 23, p. 434

Mutual Benefit Financial Companies, special features of, s. 58A, p. 753

Mutual Fund Companies, Government Guidelines as to, UTI, not applicable to, s. 111, p. 1306
injunction against public issue, s. 72, p. 845
money market instruments, SEBI Guidelines, s. 72, p. 844
SEBI Regulations, s. 72, p. 846

Mutual Funds, trust holdings, s. 187-C, p. 1762
unit holders, nomination facility for, s. 109-A, p. 1288
Amendment to Guidelines for Money Market Operations of Mutual Fund, see *App.* 187(1)
application for shares by, s. 56, p. 648
investors grievances relating to, s. 58A, p. 737
Money Market Mutual Fund Schemes to be Governed by SEBI Regulations, see *App.* 187(2)
NRI, investment by, s. 72, p. 846
preferential allotments, s. 81, p. 1050
public deposits, restrictions exemption from, s. 58A, p. 753
SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996, guidelines for money market operations of mutual funds dated 25-6-1992, see *App.* 187
SEBI (Mutual Funds) Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 184
—, guidelines, see *App.* 183
—, guidelines on issue of securities by Development Financial Institutions, see *App.* 190

SEBI Circular and FAQs on, Circulars,
—, Advertisements by Mutual Funds—standard disclosures, *SEBI/MFD/CIR No. 6/12357/03, dt. 26-6-2003*, see *App.* 185(44)
—, Appointment of Independent Directors on Boards of Asset Management Company, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/17/21105/2002, dt. 28-10-2002*, see *App.* 185(33)
—, Certification and Registration of intermediaries, *SEBI/MFD/CIR No.01/6693/03, dt. 03-4-2003*, see *App.* 185(41)
—, Certification of agents/distributors and employees, *SEBI/IMD/CIR No. 2/254/04, dated 4-2-2004*, see *App.* 185(50)
—, Certification Programme and Disclosure Standards, *Circular No. D/CIR No. 10/310/01, dt. 25-9-2001*, see *App.* 185(21)
—, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/06/275/2001, dt. 9-7-2001*, see *App.* 185(19)
—, Clarification on Investment Restrictions and Responsibilities of AMCs and the Trustees, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/09/014/2000, dt. 5-1-2000*, see *App.* 185(4)
—, Code of Conduct for Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/06/210/2002, dt. 26-6-2002*, see *App.* 185(30)
—, Consolidation of Schemes, *SEBI/MFD/CIR No. 05/12031/03, Dated 23-6-2003*, see *App.* 185(43)
—, Conversion of Close-ended Schemes to Open-ended Schemes—SEBI requirements clarified, *MFD/CIR No. 22/2311/03, dt. 30-1-2003*, see *App.* 185(40)
—, Disclosure and Compliance Standards of Mutual Fund, *Circular No. MFD/CIR-010/02/2000, dt. 17-1-2000*, see *App.* 185(5)
—, Disclosure of Large Unitholding (25% NAV) by Mutual Funds made compulsory, *Circular, MFD/CIR No. 3/211/2001, dt. 30-4-2001*, see *App.* 185(17)
—, Guidelines for Calculation for Sale and Repurchase Price and Rounding Off NAV, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/08/514/2002, dt. 22-7-2002*, see *App.* 185(31)
—, Guidelines for Investment in Foreign Securities by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/17/419/2002, dt. 30-3-2002*, see *App.* 185(26)
—, Guidelines for Investment/Trading in Securities by Employees of Asset Management Companies and Mutual Fund Trustee Companies, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 4/216/2001, dt. 8-5-2001*, see *App.* 185(18)
—, Guidelines for Investments in Foreign Securities by Mutual Funds, *SEBI/MFD/CIR No. 2/6855/2003, dt. 4-4-2003*, see *App.* 185(42)
—, Guidelines for Mutual Fund, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/05/432/2002, dt. 20-6-2002*, see *App.* 185(29)
—, Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Securities Len-ding Scheme, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/01/047/99. dt. 10-2-1999*, see *App.* 185(2)
—, Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Trading in Derivative Products, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/011/061/2000, dt. 1-2-2000*, see *App.* 185(6)
—, Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Trading in Derivative Products, *MFD/CIR/21/25467/2002, dt. 31-12-2002*, see *App.* 185(38)
—, Guidelines for Valuation of Securities, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 14/442/2002, dt. 20-2-2002*, see *App.* 185(23)
—, Guidelines for Valuation of Securities for Mutual Funds and Guidelines for Identification and Provisioning For NPAs, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/8/92/2000, dt. 18-9-2000*, see *App.* 185(11)
—, Guidelines for Valuation of Securities in Case of Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/14/088/2001, dt. 28-3-2001, Issued by SEBI*, see *App.* 185(15)
—, Guidelines for Valuation of unlisted equity shares for calculation of NAVs of mutual funds schemes, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/03/526/2002, dt. 9-5-2002*, see *App.* 185(27)

Mutual Funds (*Contd.*)

SEBI Circular and FAQs on, Circulars, Guidelines, Recommendations of Advisory Committee on Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/10/039/2001, dt. 9-2-2001*, see *App.* 185(13)
—, Independent Directors on AMCS/Trustee Companies under Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/11/354/2001, dt. 20-12-2001*, see *App.* 185(22)
—, Introduction of Benchmark Indices by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/16/400/2002, dt. 26-3-2002*, see *App.* 185(25)
—, Investment in ADRs/GDRs by Mutual Funds, *Press Release, Ref. No. PR 206/99, dated 3-9-1999*, see *App.* 185(3)
—, Investment in Foreign Securities, *MFD/CIR/18/21826/2002, Dated 7-11-2002*, see *App.* 185(35)
—, Investment limits for government guaranteed debt securities, *SEBI/IMD/CIR No.8/18944/03, 6-10-2003*, see *App.* 185(46)
—, Investment/trading in securities by employees of Asset Management Companies and Mutual Fund Trustee Companies, *SEBI/IMD/CIR No. 7/13391/03, 11-7-2003*, see *App.* 185(45)
—, Investments by Mutual Funds in Short Term Deposits of Scheduled Commercial Banks, *SEBI/IMD/CIR No. 9/20306/03, 12-11-2003*, see *App.* 185(47)
—, Minimum Number of Investors in Schemes/Plans of Mutual Funds, *SEBI/IMD/CIR No. 10/22701/03, dt. 12-12-2003*, see *App.* 185(48)
—, Mutual Fund Scheme to Launch within 6 Months, *Circular, MFD/CIR/NO. 2/205/01 dt. 27-4-2001*, see *App.* 185(16)
—, Mutual Funds—SEBI Guidelines for Launch of Additional Plans by Mutual Funds under Existing Schemes, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 12/175/01, dt. 15-2-2001*, see *App.* 185(14)
—, Payment of Interest for delay in Despatch of Redemption or Repurchase Proceeds, *Circular No. SEBI/MFD/CIR/2/266/2000, dt. 19-5-2000*, see *App.* 185(8)
—, Procedure for Change in the Controlling Interest of the Asset Management Company, Dated 28-1-2003, see *App.* 185(39)
—, Publication of Audited Annual Accounts by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/15/041/2002, dt. 14-3-2002*, see *App.* 185(24)
—, Reconciliation Procedure for investment in Government Securities, *MFD/CIR/19/22474/2002, dt. 20-11-2002*, see *App.* 185(36)
—, Registration of Intermediaries, *MFD/CIR/20/23230/2002, Dated 28-11-2002*, see *App.* 185(37)
—, Revised Format of Compliance Test Reports for Mutual Funds Regulated by SEBI, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/5/360/2000, dt. 4-7-2000*, see *App.* 185(10)
—, Revised Monthly Cumulative Report (MCR), *SEBI/IMD/CIR No. 3/2564/2004, Dated 5-2-2004*, see *App.* 185(51)
—, SEBI Guidelines for Advertisement by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/4/51/2000, dt. 5-6-2000*, see *App.* 185(9)
—, SEBI not to pass Service Tax to Unitholders of Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/04/430/2002, dt. 19-6-2002*, see *App.* 185(28)
—, Submission of Offer Documents in soft copies in HTML Format, *Circular No. MF/CIR/12/109/2000, dt. 22-2-2000*, see *App.* 185(7)
—, Time bound arbitration proceedings, *SMD/Policy/Cir-18/2002, dt. 28-8-2002*, see *App.* 185(32)
—, Time bound arbitration proceedings, *SMD/POLICY/Cir-26/2002, dt. 30-10-2002*, see *App.* 185(34)
—, Unique Client Code for Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/08/290/2001 dt. 30-7-2001*, see *App.* 185(20)
—, Unique Client Code for Schemes/Plans of Mutual Funds, *SEBI/IMD/CIR No. 01/1756/04, dated 27-1-2004*, see *App.* 185(49)
SEBI Circular and FAQs on, Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Derivatives Trading, see *App.* 185(52)
—, Mutual Funds-FAQ, Securities And Exchange Board of India SEBI Investor Education Programme (2/17/04), see *App.* 185(1)
—, Press Release—Mutual Fund Advisory Committee Meeting held on October 16, 2000, *Press Release REF. NO. PR 202/2000, dt. 16-10-2000*, see *App.* 185(12)
—, Mentioning of Bank Account Number and PAN by investors, see *App.* 185(53)
SEBI guidelines, s. 72, p. 843
SEBI Mutual Funds Regulations, 1993, s. 72, p. 843
SEBI Mutual Funds Regulations, 1996, s. 72, p. 843
selling practices by, s. 72, p. 846
selling practices by, see *App.* 184
standard offer document of mutual fund schemes, see *App.* 186

Mutual Funds (*Contd.*)
standard offer document, by SEBI, s. 72, p. 844
stock holding, transfer, application for, s. 153, p. 1572
trading in derivative products, guidelines for participation by, s. 2(12), p. 46
use of name as, s. 20, p. 421

Name clause, alteration of memorandum, with, s. 16, p. 376

Name of company, abbreviated, approval of ROC, s. 21, p. 425
abbreviated form may be used on goods, s. 147, p. 1550
abbreviated, approval by Regional Director, s. 21, p. 425
—, ROC approval, s. 21, p. 425
abbreviation, use of, s. 147, p. 1549
alphabets small, starting with, s. 20, p. 417
alteration of, effect on proceedings, s. 23, p. 433
—, trading without registering alteration, s. 147, p. 1552
'and reduced', s. 102, p. 1170
authenticating, negotiable instrument, s. 147, p. 1552
availability of defunct company's name, s. 20, p. 412
availability of names for registration, s. 20, pp. 412, 414
availability of, assets management companies, s. 20, p. 420
—, names, s. 20, p. 412
—, no objection, from earlier applicants for some name, s. 20, p. 419
—, pre-emptive practices, prevention of, s. 20, p. 419
—, venture capital companies for, s. 20, p. 420
Central Government's power to, compel change, s. 22, p. 428
—, direct change of, s. 21, p. 423
—, require alteration, relevant rules and forms, s. 22, p. 429
change of, s. 21, p. 423
—, for carrying on same business after acquisition, s. 21, p. 424
—, guidelines, s. 20, p. 412
—, procedure Secretarial Action Points, s. 21, p. 426
change, compulsory, on Central Government's direction, s. 22, p. 429
changes made by Trade Marks Act, 1999, s. 22, p. 428
changes made in respect of, Trade Marks Act, 1999 by, s. 20, p. 405
co-exist, which can, s. 20, p. 411
computer software business, change by, s. 20, p. 418
construction of objects, relevancy, s. 20, p. 406
conversion of private into public, *vice versa*, etc., effect, s. 20. p. 412
copyright, s. 20, p. 407
default in using properly, liability for, s. 23, p. 433
effect of change in, s. 23, p. 433
effect of change of, s. 21, p. 426
effect of, s. 23, p. 433
Emblems and Names (Prevention of Improper Use) Act, 1950, see *App.* 290
existing company, too nearly resembling name, s. 20, p. 416
existing private companies to add 'private limited', s. 24, p. 434
full name of the company with words "limited" publication of, s. 147, p. 1549
generic names, guidelines, s. 20, p. 418
guidelines for registration of AMCs, s. 20, p. 420
guiding instructions, s. 20, p. 412
injunction against use by rival, fraudulent intention, not necessary, s. 20, p. 412
injunction against use by rival, s. 20, p. 407
insurance sector, s. 20. p. 418
invented name, s. 20, p. 410
jurisdiction of courts for disputes as to, s. 20, p. 407
key words, guidelines as to use of, s. 20, p. 418
'limited' dispensing with word, s. 25, p. 434
local language, publication in, necessary, s. 147, p. 1550
misleading, restraint by contract, s. 22, p. 431
—, restraint through injunction, s. 22, p. 431
mistake in name, s. 23, p. 432
misuse of another's name, liability for, intention to deceive not necessary for, s. 20, p. 407
monopoly over use of, ceases on dissolution or amalgamation, s. 20, p. 412
monopoly over, after registration, s. 20, p. 411
NBFC, change of, prior approval of RBI, s. 21, p. 424

Name of company (*Contd.*)
new name, procedure of, registration, s. 21, p. 424
no objection from earlier applicants for same name, s. 20, p. 419
Not properly mentioned on document, validity, s. 147, p. 1552
official publication, share certificate is not, s. 147, p. 1552
on goods, form of, s. 147, p. 1550
passing off action, s. 20, p. 408
passing off, s. 22, p. 431
—, injunction against, s. 20, p. 407
personal name may not be available, s. 20, p. 414
prescribed manner, not used in, s. 34, p. 507
private company to add 'private limited' to its name, s. 24, p. 434
proposed name of company, s. 20, p. 416
proprietory right and monopoly over, s. 20, p. 407
publication of name, model regulations, as to, s. 147, p. 1553
publication of, s. 147, p. 1547
—, default in, due to oversight, liability, s. 147, p. 1550
—, liability for default due to oversight, s. 147, p. 1550
—, liability in default for, s. 147, p. 1550
—, notice as to, s. 147, p. 1550
—, on notices, s. 147, p. 1550
—, penalty for default, s. 147, p. 1553
—, personal liability of officers for non-compliance, s. 147, p. 1550
—, share certificate is not official publication, s. 147, p. 1552
publicity, requirement as to, s. 147, p. 1548
rectification of, s. 22, p. 428
—, Central Government's directions, procedure for, Secretarial Action Points, s. 22, p. 432
—, listing company to notify stock exchange, s. 21, p. 426
rectification, reasoned order, s. 22, p. 431
registration of change of, s. 23, p. 432
registration of change, s. 23, p. 432
restrictions upon choice of, Department's circular on, judicial review, of, s. 20, p. 417
Small letters, starting with, availability of, s. 20, p. 417
Stock Exchange of, advance approval by SEBI, s. 20, p. 420
trade marks, and, rectification, s. 22, p. 428
undesirable, not to be permitted, s. 20, pp. 406, 411
use of family or surname, s. 20, p. 410
use of word 'Corporation' and 'Hindustan' when allowed, s. 20, p. 417
use of, joint venture company, by, s. 20, p. 410
word of ordinary use, s. 20 p. 410

Naresh Chandra Committee Report on Corporate Governance Executive Summary, see *App.* 256(2)

Nasdaq Stock Market, Stock Exchange, see *App.* 266

National Company Law Tribunal, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Appellate Tribunal"**
Benches of, s. 10-FL, p. 268
constitution of, s. 10-FB, pp. 253, 256, s. 10-FC, p. 261
Eradi Committee, recommendations of, s. 10-FB, p. 255
judicial member of, s. 10-FC, p. 261
judicial member, financial and administrative powers of, s. 10-FE, p. 264
member Administrator, financial and administrative powers of, s. 10-FF, p. 264
member, removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, resignation by, s. 10-FI, p. 266
—, suspenion of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, gratifications for appointment of, s. 10-FD, p. 261
—, salary and allowances of, s. 10-FG, p. 264
—, term of office of, s. 10-FE, p. 263
—, terms and conditions of service of, s. 10-FG, p. 264
officers and employees of, S 10-FK, p. 268
other enactments, powers under, s. 10-FB, p. 255
powers of, s. 10-FB, p. 256
President, qualifications for appointment of, s. 10-FB, p. 261
—, removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, resignation by, s. 10-FI, p. 266
—, salary and allowances of, s. 10-FG, p. 264

National Company Law Tribunal (*Contd.*)
President, suspension of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, term of office of, s. 10-FE, p. 263
—, terms and conditions of service of, s. 10-FG, p. 264
review, power of, s. 10-FN, p. 273
setting up of, s. 10, p. 179
technical member of, s. 10-FC, p. 261
technical member, financial and administrative powers of, s. 10-FF, p. 264
transfer of pending proceedings to, s. 10-FA(3), p. 252
winding up matters, exclusive jurisdiction of, s. 10-FB, p. 256

National Housing Bank Act, 1987, see *App.* 304

National Stock Exchange, s. 2(39), p. 67

Nationalised Bank, Auditors Report in case of Nationalised Bank, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-22)

Nationality, applicants, for shares, of declaration, s. 56, p. 647

Natural justice, *audi alteram partem* rule, s. 10-FZA, p. 295
bias, rule against, s. 10-FZA, p. 297
CLB, requirements of, s. 10-E, p. 225
Company Law Board, bound by, s. 10-E, p. 223
fair procedure, s. 10E, p. 227
nemo debet esse index in propia suo causa rule, s. 10-FZA, p. 297
reasoned decisions speaking orders, s. 10-FZA, p. 299
Tribunal to pass orders after giving parties opportunity of hearing, s. 10-FM, p. 271

NBFCs, advertisement by, deposits for, s. 58A, p. 746
audit report of, s. 58A, p. 747
change of name, prior approval of RBI, s. 21, p. 424
conversion of, "deposit taking companies" to "non-deposit taking companies", s. 58-A, p. 752
deposit from NRI acceptance by, s. 58-A, p. 754
entry into insurance business, s. 58A, p. 756
exemption, government companies, s. 58-A, p. 751
financial institution, s. 58A, p. 749
Foreign Direct Investment Non-Banking Financial Sector, see *App.* 65
Guidelines on Assets Liability Management (ALM) System for NBFC, see *App.* 60
historical background, s. 58A, p. 718
hybrid debt capital investments, s. 58A, p. 751
insurance sector, guidelines for entry into, s. 58A, p. 756
liquid assets, maintainance of, s. 58A, p. 753
merchant banker, not to act as, s. 56, p. 652
net owned fund, definition of, s. 58A, p. 723
Nomination, Banking Companies (Nomination) Rules, 1985 (Relevant Extract), see *App.* 55
particulars in application for soliciting deposits, s. 58A, p. 746
public deposits by Private Limited, s. 58A, p. 750
RBI Regulation of acceptance of deposits, by, s. 58A, p. 749
renewal of deposits, s. 58A, p. 747
repayment of deposits, s. 58A, p. 749
return of deposits, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 759
secured debentures, SEBI clarification, s. 58A, p. 751
small depositors, applicability to, s. 58AA, p. 767

NBFCs Forms, NBS-1 First Schedule Annual Return of Deposits to be submitted by all NBFCs accepting/holding public deposits, and MNBCs-except Residuary Non-Banking Companies, see *App.* 51
NBS-1A, Annual Return of Deposits to be submitted by all RNBCs, see *App.* 57
NBS-2, Reporting Format of Half-yearly statement of Capital Funds, Risk Assets/Exposures and Risk Asset Ratio, etc., see *App.* 52
NBS-3, Quarterly Return of statutory liquid assets to be submitted by NBFCs *vide* section 45-IB(2) of RBI Act, 1934, see *App.* 54
NBS-3A, Quarterly Return of statutory liquid assets to be submitted by NBFCs *vide* section 45-IB(2) of RBI Act, 1934, see *App.* 54
NBS-4 Monthly Return on Repayment of Deposits to be submitted by NBFCs holding public deposits whose application for Certificate of Registration under section 45-IA of RBI Act, 1934 have been rejected, see *App.* 51

NBFCs Forms (*Contd.*)
NBS-5, Monitory and Supervisory Return to be submitted by all NBFCs, RNBDs holding public deposits of Rs. 20 crores and above as per the last audited balance sheet, see *App.* 54
NBS-6, to be filled by all NBFCs holding public deposits of Rs. 50 crores and above and RNBCs having aggregate liabilities to the depositors of Rs. 50 crores and above as on March 31, 2002, see *App.* 52
Nomination Forms, Banking Companies (Nomination) Rules, 1985 (Relevant Extract), see *App.* 55
Submission of statutory return on liquid assets and special return by NBFCs, see *App.* 54

Negligence, prospectus, in, s. 62, p. 804

Negotiable Instruments Act, authentication of, on company's behalf, s. 147, p. 1552
authority for signing, s. 47, p. 606
Director, notice to for prosecution, officer in default, s. 5, p. 152
dishonoured cheque, liability under, s. 47, p. 606
mode of authenticating, on company's behalf, s. 47, p. 604
officer in default, s. 5, p. 148
promissory notes, power to make, s. 47, p. 603
Public Holiday as per, s. 2(38), p. 29, s. 2, p. 64
Sick Industrial Company, cheque dishonoured, s. 5, p. 156

Net Owned Fund, definition of, s. 58A, p. 723
meaning of, same as in RBI Act, 1934, s. 58A, p. 723

Net Profit or Loss for the Period, Fundamental Errors and Changes in Accounting Policies (IAS 8), see *App.* 319

Net worth, meaning of, s. 2(29A), p. 28
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

New Financial Instruments, issue of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 117, p. 1416
see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Newspaper advertisement of prospectus, alteration to be taken care of, s. 56, p. 650
pro forma, s. 66, p. 812
service of documents as, s. 53, p. 627

Nidhi companies, un-notified, s, 58A, p. 753
conversion into, CLB discretion, to alteration of memorandum, s. 17, p. 385

Nidhis, RBI Act, partial exemption, s. 58A, p. 751
use of name, as, s. 20, p. 421

No Complaints Certificate, pre-issue obligations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162

No Notice of Trust, s. 153, p. 1570
HUF as members, s. 153, p. 1573

Nominal value, equity share capital, more than half in, s. 4, p. 121

Nomination for shares, facility of, s. 109A, p. 1286
nature, manner & extent, s. 109A, p. 1287
nominee, rights of, s. 109B, p. 1288
mutual fund, facility for unit holders in, s. 109-A, p. 1288

Nomination, Amendment in, forms of depositors, s. 58A, p. 739
Banking Companies (Nomination) Rules, 1985 (Relevant Extract), see *App.* 55

Nominee Director, President of India by, s. 26, p. 450
appointment, Guidelines of Government, convertibility clause and appointment of, see *App.* 151
holding company, control through, s. 4, p. 118
officer in default as, s. 5, p. 160

Nominee Shareholders, rights and liability of, s. 153, p. 1572

Non-Banking Companies, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Deposits"**
Circulars, Clarifications, Notifications and Press Notes issued, see *App.* 62 *et. seq.*
deposits, repayment, CLB powers, s. 58A, p. 737
—, —, Power of CLB to order, s. 58A, p. 737

Non-Banking Companies (*Contd.*)
directions powers with RBI, s. 58A, p. 750
Financial Statements, issue of directions, s. 58A, p. 750
nomination facilities, s. 58A, p. 750
winding up of, s. 58A, p. 749
Credit Rating Agencies, see *App.* 267
Housing Finance Companies (NHB) Directions, 2001, see *App.* 64
Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1977, see *App.* 56
Non-Banking Financial Companies Acceptance of Public Deposits (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 51
Non-Banking Financial Companies Acceptance of Deposits (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 51
Non-Banking Financial Companies and Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Advertisement) Rules (1977), see *App.* 58
Non-Banking Financial Companies Auditor's Report (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 53
Non-Banking Financial Companies Prudential Norms (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 52
Non-Banking Financial Companies Prudential Norms (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, **NBS-6** Quarterly Return on Exposure to Capital Market to be filled by all NBFCs holding public deposits of Rs. 50 crores and above and RNBCs having aggregate liabilities to the depositors of Rs. 50 crores and above as on March 31, 2002, see *App.* 52
—, **NBS-2** Reporting Format of Half-yearly statement of Capital Funds, Risk Assets/Exposures and Risk Asset Ratio, etc., see *App.* 52
Notifications, Circulars, Clarifications and Press Notes, see *App.* 62, *et. seq.*
RBI (Non-Banking Financial Companies) Returns Specifications, 1997, see *App.* 54
RBI Act, 1934 (Relevant Extract), see *App.* 59
residuary fund utilisation, Regulation of, s. 58A, p. 752
residuary Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1987, see *App.* 57
residuary, regulation of fund utilisation by, s. 58-A, p. 752

Non-Banking Financial Companies Acceptance Deposits (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 51
NBS-1 First Schedule Annual Return of Deposits to be submitted by all NBFCs accepting/holding public deposits, and MNBCs-except Residuary Non-Banking Companies, see *App.* 51
NBS-4 Monthly Return on Repayment of Deposits to be submitted by NBFCs holding public deposits whose application for Certificate of Registration under section 45-IA of RBI Act, 1934 have been rejected, see *App.* 51

Non-Banking Financial Companies and Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Advertisement) Rules (1977), see *App.* 58

Non-Banking Financial Companies Auditor's Report (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 53

Non-Banking Financial Companies Prudential Norms (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, Circulars, Clarifications and Notifications, see *App.* 52

Non-Banking Financial Companies, Books and Registers, maintained under directions of, s. 2(8), p. 35
Circulars, Clarifications and Notifications, see *App.* 51.
closure of branch offices, s. 2(9), p. 36
complaints against, s. 10, p. 210
complaints regarding, s. 10-GB, p. 318
deposit rules, applicability and exemption, s. 58-A, p. 733
deposit, enforcement of repayment by CLB, s. 58A, p. 749
deposit-invitation of, advertisement, s. 58-A, p. 715
Non-Banking Financial Companies Acceptance of Deposits (Reserve Bank) Directions (1998), see *App.* 51
public deposits, borrowings by, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 761
RBI (NBFC) Return Specifications Rules, 1997, s. 58A, p. 753
Registrar of companies competent for complaint by, s. 58A, p. 738
Residuary Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, (1987), see *App.* 57
to comply with s. 58-A, s. 58-A, p. 733
winding up of, s. 58A, p. 749

Non-Banking Non-Financial Companies, public deposit, borrowings ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 760

Non-Corporate entities, Guidance Note on Audit of Non-corporate entities (Bank Borrowers), as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-53)

Non-Executive Directors, Cadbury's report on, s. 197-A, p. 1832
unfit, disqualification of, s. 203, p. 1860

Non-Profit Companies, Fees for Registration of an Association not for profit, table of fees, see *App.* 133

Non-Profit making companies, Firm as members, s. 25, p. 439

Non-Resident Indian (NRI), acceptance of deposit from, s. 58-A, p. 754
application for shares by, s. 56, p. 647
application form, for shares, s. 56, p. 647
borrowed by Indian companies from, s. 117, p. 1430
debentures, purchase by, s. 117, p. 1414
deposits from, acceptance of, s. 58A, p. 756
foreigner, bonus shares, issue to, s. 81, p. 1035
—, interest, remittances of, to, s. 117, p. 1415
—, issue of share, allotment to, s. 81, p. 1035
—, meeting, notice to, s. 172, p. 1668
—, memorandum, general permission by RBI, s. 12, pp. 345, 346
—, memorandum, subscription to, by, s. 12, p. 345, s. 15, p. 373
—, Mutual Funds, investment by, s. 72, p. 846
—, refund of subscription money, s. 73, p. 902
—, Reserve Bank's permission for membership, s. 41, p. 553
—, rights shares, issue to, s. 81, p. 1035
—, subscription of memorandum by, s. 12, p. 346, s. 15, p. 373
—, transfer of shares or debentures, RBI permission under FERA required, s. 108, p. 1246
investments by, s. 72, p. 862
—, public issue of non-convertible debentures, in, s. 117, p. 1429
investments in shares and convertible debentures, non-repatriation basis, s. 72, pp. 863, 871
investments in shares by, ceiling on, s. 81, p. 1071
—, industrial policy as to, s. 72, pp. 847, 862
Memorandum of Association, subscription, general permission, s. 12, p. 346
remittance of, interest to, FEMA, 1999, under, s. 117, p. 1415
repatriation basis, s. 72, p. 863
securities, purchase and sale of, s. 72, p. 864
Trade investment in exchange traded derivatives by, s. 72, p. 866
transfer of securities by, NRI/OCB, to, s. 108, p. 1248
transfer of shares by, Portfolio Investment Scheme, under, s. 108, p. 1251

Non-Resident, Bonus Shares, issue under FERA, s. 81, p. 1033
preferential allotments, issue of shares, s. 81, p. 1071
Rights shares, under FERA, issue of, s. 81, p. 1033

Non trading corporation, objects of, s. 13, p. 355

Non-Transferability, Inscription of Non-Transferability, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162

Norms for Sale/Transfer/Surrendery of Dealership/Membership of OTCEI, 1997, see *App.* 265

Norms relating to Multiple Membership in Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 260

Notices, accidental omission to give, not to invalidate proceedings at meetings, s. 172(3), pp. 1666, 1668
calls of, s. 91, p. 1128
closing of books, of, s. 154, p. 1581
company to, through directors & officers s. 51, p. 619
company, on, s. 51, pp. 617, 619
consolidation of shares capital, notice to Registrar, s. 95, p. 1143
contents of, for general meetings, s. 172, pp. 1665, 1666
conversion of share into stock, of, notice to Registrar, s. 95, p. 1143
death or insolvency of member, in case of, s. 53(5), p. 627
defective address, s. 51, p. 618
electronic media, communication through, s. 53, p. 627
explanatory statements to be annexed, s. 173, p. 1671
fax, service by, s. 51, p. 620
general meeting of, s. 53, p. 625
general meetings, for calling, s. 171, p. 1656
increase by share capital, or members, of, s. 97, p. 1145
insufficient, effect of, s. 173, p. 1676
joint shareholders, on, s. 53, p. 627
—, service on, s. 41, p. 552
jurisdiction for challenging validity of, notice of meeting, s. 171, p. 1661
length of, for general meetings, s. 171, p. 1656

Notices (*Contd.*)
meeting, of, to be given to auditors, s. 172(2)(iii), p. 1666, 1668
—, shall be given to every member, s. 172(2)(i), p. 1665
—, to specify the place the day & the hour, s. 172(1), p. 1665
members, joint shareholders, s. 53, p. 627
—, on, s. 53, p. 623
—, residing abroad, s. 53(4), p. 624
mode described in Act, contrary provisions in articles not enforceable, s. 51, p. 618
newspaper advertisement, by, s. 53, p. 627
no office, service how, s. 51, p. 618
officer who is in default, effect of non-service of, s. 5, p. 160
oral, s. 51, p. 620
personal delivery, s. 53, p. 627
post, by, when deemed effective, s. 53, p. 625
—, service through, s. 53, p. 624
proxies, statements as to, to be contained in, s. 176(2), p. 1705
public trustee, not to consent in calling meeting, s. 171, p. 1661
refusal of transfer, of, to be sent to transferee within two months, s. 111(2), pp. 1291, 1307
registrar, on, s. 52, p. 621
requirements mandatory, s. 173, p. 1674
service of, s. 51, p. 618
service, other modes of, s. 51, p. 620
special, s. 189, p. 1771
strictly construed, s. 172, p. 1667
trust of, to company, s. 153, p. 1570

Notice of closure, listed companies, requirements of, s. 154, p. 1583

Notice of meetings, accidental omission, effect, s. 172, p. 1668
alteration of articles for, s. 31, p. 464
—, sought to be made, s. 173, p. 1681
auditors to, s. 172, p. 1668
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance note, s. 171, p. 1662
conditional and common, s. 172, p. 1670
contents of valid notice, s. 172, p. 1666
death of member, in case of, s. 172, p. 1667
directors etc, appointment as to, s. 173, p. 1680
explanatory statement to be annexed to, s. 173, p. 1671
—, director's interest to be mentioned in, s. 173, p. 1683
explanatory statement, Supreme Court ban on sale of property, material fact, s. 173, p. 1679
extraordinary general meeting, by requisitionist, explanatory statement not necessary, s. 169, p. 1649, s. 173, p. 1683
fax, service by, s. 51, p. 620
inaccuracy of minor nature, effect, s. 173, p. 1681
insolvency of member, in case of, s. 172, p. 1667
insufficient notice of special business, s. 173, p. 1676
joint holders to, s. 172, p. 1668
material facts, disclosure of, s. 173, p. 1677
ordinary business of, s 173, p. 1673
period of, requirement as to, directory and not mandatory, s. 171, p. 1658
postal strike, during, s. 172, p. 1669
preference shareholder to, s. 172, p. 1668
private companies can make self regulations, explanatory statement requirement as to, s. 173, p. 1685
private companies can make self regulations, s. 173, p. 1674
requirements of listing agreement, s. 172, p. 1670
resident abroad, shareholders, to, s. 172, p. 1668
Secretarial Check Points, procedure, s. 172, p. 1671
Secretarial Standard (SS-2), s. 171, p. 1662
service of, manner, s. 172, p. 1670
shorter, meeting held on, s. 171, p. 1659
special business of, s. 173, p. 1673
stay of, s. 173, p. 1680
strict construction of, s. 172, p. 1667
tricky notice, s. 173, p. 1675
true information of nature of business, s. 173, p. 1675
twenty one days, not less than, s. 171, p. 1657

Notification, jurisdiction of District Court, without, s. 10, p. 184

NR Narayana Murthy Committee Report on Corporate Governance, see *App.* 256(3)

NRIs, • SEE UNDER **"Non-Resident Indian"**

NRIs/OCBs, • SEE UNDER **"Non-Resident Indian"**

Objects Clause, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Memoradnudm of Association"**
alteration of, s. 17, p. 382
alteration, s. 16, p. 375 *et seq.*
—, banking companies of, s. 17, p. 393
—, procedure, Secretarial Action Points, s. 17, p. 395
—, restriction or abandonment of, s. 17(1)(c), p. 392
—, scope of, s. 17, p. 382
—, time limit for register, s. 18, p. 399
—, wholly new for wholly different, s. 17, p. 392
alteration of, s. 16, p. 377
—, attain its main purpose by new or improved means, s. 17(1)(b), p. 378
—, carrying business more economically and efficiently, s. 17, p 378
—, change of local area of operation, s. 17(1)(c), p. 378
—, changes in 1996, s. 17, p. 382, s. 18, p. 400
—, efficient and economical conduct, of business, s. 17(1)(a), p. 389
—, enlargement or change of local area, s. 17(1)(c), p. 389
—, restrict or abandon objects specified in memorandum, s. 17(1)(e), p. 378
—, undertaking, sale or disposal of, s. 17(1)(f), p. 378
amalgamation, change of, for, s. 17(1)(f), p. 392
amendment of, s. 13, p. 353
ancillary and main, s. 13, p. 354
clause, memorandum of, three heads to be stated in, s. 13, p. 353
declaration that each clause is independent, s. 13, p. 355
diversification of, s. 17, p. 385
European Communities Act, impact of, in UK, s. 13, p. 358
incidental, scope of, s. 13, p. 364
interpretation of, s. 13, p. 355
main object and other objects, s. 13, pp. 351, 353, 355
main purpose, to attain, s. 17, p. 389
main, indication in memorandum, s. 13, p. 355
—, interpretation of, s. 13, p. 357
memorandum of association, precise and few, s. 13, p. 354
—, to state, of company, s. 13, p. 354
name of company, relevant in construing, s. 20, p. 406
negative objects, s. 17, p. 391
non trading corporation of, s. 13, p. 355
powers distinguished from, s. 13, p. 355
—, implied, s. 13, p. 363
relation to each, s. 13, p. 355
restriction on number of objects, no, s. 13, p. 357
section 25 companies, approval for alteration, s. 25, p. 442
shifting from one part to another, s. 17, p. 391
ultra vires, acts contrary to law, s. 13, p. 361
—, borrowings, s. 13, p. 362
—, doctrine of, s. 13, p. 357
—, guarantees, s. 13, p. 362
—, loans, s. 13, p. 362
—, shareholders right to restrain, s. 13, p. 367
—, who can plead, s. 13, p. 364
unlawful, judicial review, s. 35, p. 526

OCBs, derecognition of, as Investor class, s. 72, p. 863
Investor Class, de-recognition of, s. 72, p. 863

Odd lots, listed securities, transfer in, s. 111, p. 1314
shares, creation of trust for disposal of, s. 111, p. 1314
trust for disposal of, Secretarial Action Points, s. 111, p. 1314

Offences and Penalties, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Penalties"**
onus of proof where officer is in default, s. 5, p. 140
SEBI Act, under, by Delhi Special Police Establishment, s. 68A, p. 823

Offences by companies, cognizance of, u/s. 58A & 58AA by court, s. 58AAA, p. 771
default in acceptance of deposit, cognizable, s. 58-AAA, p. 770
memorandum and articles, supply of copies, default in, complete at registered office, s. 39, p. 543
Provisions of the Companies Act, 1956 under which penalties are leviable for offences under the Act, and the nature and quantum of the penalties, see *App.* 146

Offer document on computer floppy, Format for submitting draft offer document on a computer floppy (*Clause* 16.1.3), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXIII, *App.* 162

Offer documents, additional disclosures, requirement of, s. 56, p. 643
Audit Reports/Certificates on Financial Information in Offer Documents, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-37)
auditors report on financial information, s. 56, p. 643
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
despatch of, s. 56, p. 662
disclaimer clause in, listing permission, s. 73, p. 892
draft of, filing of, SEBI, with, s. 56, p. 658
filing of, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
filing, jurisdiction, s. 56, p. 660
final, submission of, s. 56, p. 661
Guidelines relating to Disclosures in, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
SEBI, clarification of guidelines, s. 56, p. 653
—, vetting by guidelines, clarification, s. 56, p. 653
Standard Financial Unit, use in, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, see *App.* 162
Standard Offer Document of Mutual Fund Schemes, see *App.* 186
standard offer documents, Mutual Fund Scheme, s. 72, p. 844
Submission of Offer Documents in soft copies in HTML Format, *Circular No. MF/CIR/12/109/2000, dt. 22-2-2000,* see *App.* 185(7)

Offer for exchange of shares, s. 56, p. 641

Offer for Sale, s. 64, p. 808
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
Promoters Shareholding in Case of Offers for Sale, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
prospectus when deemed, s. 64, p. 808
SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
shares and debentures, of, s. 64, p. 810
shares offered to shareholders, whether on offer to public, s. 67, p. 813
written invitation, prospectus whether, s. 56, p. 639

Offers, for debentures, prior permission from stock exchange necessary, s. 73(1), p. 886
for shares, prior permission from stock exchange necessary, s. 73(1), p. 886
initial public offerings, unlisted companies, by, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
letters of, by registered post, s. 81, p. 1033
—, registered post to be sent by, s. 53, p. 627
—, renunciation right, containing, s. 67, p. 818
offer to the public, meaning of, s. 69, p. 831
renunciation, letter containing right of, s. 67, p. 818
sale of shares to public Secretarial Action Points, s. 64, p. 810
shares acceptance of proffered, s. 3, p. 103
shares of, when prospectus, s. 2(36), p. 63

Office of the Public Trustee (Destruction of Records) Rules, 1984, see *App.* 34

Office or place of profit, non-resident, appointment of, to, s. 204, p. 1888
allowances of five year period, s. 204, p. 1887
appointment, terminable at will, s. 204, p. 1888
firm working on place of profit and directors relative partner, body corporate, not to be appointed, s. 204, p. 1886
perquisites, s. 204, p. 1888
reappointment, terms not to contain, s. 204, p. 1888
restrictions on appointment of fir m or body corporate, s. 204, p. 1886
—, of former managing agents and secretaries and treasurers, s. 204-A, p. 1889
technician or consultant, s. 204, p. 1887

Office, Branch, definition, s. 2(9), p. 25

Officer who is in default, Accountant, prosecution of, s. 5. P. 157
Central Excise and Salt Act, under, s. 5, p. 158
company, winding up, effect of, s. 5, p. 157
complaint, quashing of, s. 5, p. 154
compounding offence, s. 5, p. 167
Consumer Protection Act, s. 5, p. 158
deemed as, s. 5, p. 160
default, meaning, s. 5, p. 159
defined, s. 2(31), pp. 29, 61, s. 5, p. 141
deposits, in relation to, s. 5, p. 158
Director, cheque issued by person other than, s. 5, p. 153, 157
—, role play by, s. 5, p. 149
directors knowledge, company's as, s. 5, p. 160
Drugs and Cosmetics Act, under, s. 5, p. 148
Employees' Provident Fund, s. 5, p. 145
essential commodities, in relation to, s. 5, p. 147
excise duties, evasion of, s. 5, p. 158
false averment in plaint, s. 5, p. 160
false trade description, s. 5, p. 158
Fishing Regulations, in relation to, s. 5, p. 148
Food Adulteration Act, effect of filing nomination under, s. 5, p. 147
—, in relation to, s. 5, p. 147
Health and Safety legislation, s. 5, p. 147
imprisonment, punishment by way of, s. 34, p. 497
income-tax return, s. 5, p. 157
Insecticides Act, in relation to, s. 5, p. 146
Institutional director as, s. 5, p. 160
jurisdiction for complaint, s. 5, p. 160
'knowingly' and 'wilfully', meaning, s. 5, p. 159
labour laws, in relation to, s. 5, p. 144
liability for dishonour of cheques under NI Act, s. 5, p. 148
liable to punishment or penalty, s. 5, p. 140
list of offences covered by, s. 5, p. 160
list of offences not covered by, s. 5, p. 161
managing positions, not in, prosecution, s. 5, p. 143
meaning of, s. 5, p. 141
mens-rea, s. 5, pp. 141, 158
—, applicability of, s. 5, p. 158
Motor Vehicles Act, under s. 5, p. 148
Negotiable Instrument Act, in relation to, s. 5, p. 148
—, under, s. 5, p. 148
nominee director as, s. 5, p. 160
notice, non-service of, effect, s. 5, p. 160
personal attendance, exemption from, s. 5, p. 157
personal liability, s. 147, p. 1550
pollution laws, in relation to, s. 5, p. 145
position under other enactments, s. 5, p. 143
proceedings, representation of company in, s. 5, p. 160
process, issue of, s. 5, p. 157
prosecuting officers, Department's norms, s. 5, p. 143
prosecution of, personal attendance, exemption from, s. 5, p. 160
relief under s. 6, p. 167
return, filing in, s. 5, p. 158
tenure, default during, s. 5, p. 143
who can be prosecuted, s. 5, p. 144

Officers of Company, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Officer who is in default"**
accustomed to act, with whose directions, s. 2(30), p. 60
advisor is, s. 2(30), p. 59
appointee to position of responsibility as, s. 2(30), p. 60
auditors as, s. 2(30), p. 60
—, to fill an office, s. 2(30), p. 60
—, when not, an, s. 2(30), p. 60
defined, s. 2(30), p. 28, s. 2, p. 58
definition functional, s. 2(30), p. 58
director as, s. 2(30), p. 60

Officers of Company (*Contd.*)
employee, when becomes, s. 2(30), p. 60
expenses of defending, s. 201, p. 1844
holding company as, s. 2(30), p. 61
liability, provisions, relieving of, void, s. 201, p. 1844
liquidator deemed to be an, for the purposes of, s. 192(5)(6), s. 192(7), p. 1793
marketing manager is, s. 2(30), p. 59
notice to company, served through, s. 51, p. 619
offences, onus of proof, s. 5, p. 140
responsibility, position of, s. 2(30), p. 60
servant and officer, distinction, s. 2(30), p. 60
tax free payment, not to receive, exception to, s. 200, p. 1844
Tax-fee payments, not to receive, s. 200, p. 1843
who are, s. 2, p. 59

Officers, functional term, of, s. 2(30), p. 61
National Company Law Tribunal of, s. 10-FK, p. 268

Offices of the Company Law Board Benches (Destructions of Records) Rules, 1980, see *App.* 31

Official Liquidator's Companies (Official Liquidator's Accounts) Rules, 1965, see *App.* 28

Official Liquidator, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"liquidator" and "Winding up by Court"**
Addresses of the Depatment of Company Affaires and its field officer, viz., Regional Directors, Registrars of Companies, Official Liquidators and Pay and Accounts Officers, see *App.* 148
rectification, powers of, s. 111(4), p. 1340

Official Seal, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Common Seal"**
outside India, model regulations as to, s. 50, p. 616
using abroad, conditions for, s. 50, p. 616

Ombudsman, SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 232

Omnibus resolution, articles, to amend several, s. 31, p. 464

Opening Balances, Initial Engagements-Opening Balances, (AAS-22), see *App.* 317

Operating agency, meaning of, s. 2(31AA), p. 28
meaning of, s. 2(31AA), p. 61
Public Financial Institutions as, s. 4A, p. 140
role of, s. 2(31AA), p. 62

Operational Guidelines, Instructions on post-issue obligations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVI, *App.* 162
Issue of Penalty Points, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVI, *App.* 162
Registration and renewal of registration of Merchant Bankers, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVI, *App.* 162
Registration with Association of Merchant Bankers of India (AM-BI), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVI, *App.* 162
Submission of draft and final offer document, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVI, *App.* 162

Oppression and Mismanagement, joint shareholders, petition for prevention of, s. 41, p. 552
minority, shareholders action, s. 10, p. 196
pending petition against, transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1342
petition for relief, joinder of parties, s. 10F, p. 247
powers of, to order meeting, while petition pending, s. 186, p. 1749
prevention of, by minority shareholders action, s. 10, p. 196

Option in securities, definition, s. 2(31A), p. 61

Option to acquire shares, company from, s. 67, p. 817
Rectification of Tribunal's, s. 10-FM(2), p. 272
Tribunal to pass, after giving parties opportunity of hearing, s. 10-FM, p. 271

Ordinary Resolution, producer company, passed by, s. 189, p. 1781
SEBI Regulations, passing under, s. 189, p. 1782

Ostensible authority, Directors, s. 46, p. 596

OTC Exchange, Issues of shares through, see Chap. XIV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Listing, procedure for, Secretarial Action Points, s. 73, p. 922

OTCEI, Code of Conduct of Business for Members and Dealers of OTCEI—issued by OTCEI, see *App.* 264
Guidelines for Issue of Securities by Companies and their listing on over the Counter Exchange of India (OTCEI), see *App.* 262
listing on, s. 73, p. 908
listing, eligibility for, guidelines, s. 73, p. 908
Norms for Sale/Transfer/Surrenders of Dealership/Membership of OTCEI, 1997, see *App.* 265
section 25 Companies, listed, transfer of shares, s. 25, p. 445
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Stock Exchange"**
trade mechanism, bought out deals, business rules, s. 73, p. 909
Trading Mechanism and Business Rules of OTCEI, see *App.* 263
transfer of shares listed in, s. 108, p. 1195

Outstanding Warrants or Financial Instruments, • SEE UNDER **"Eligibility Norms for Companies Issuing Securities"**
SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162

Outstanding warranty, s. 114, p. 1406

Over the counter exchange, s. 2(39), p. 67

Overheads, Cost Accounting Standard, (CAS-3), see *App.* 326

Overriding effect of Act upon, memorandum and articles, s. 9, pp. 155, 176

Overseas Corporate Bodies (OCBs), FEM (Withdrawal of General Permission to Overseas Corporate Bodies (OCBs)) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 126

Overseas market, shares acquisition on disinvestment in, s. 108, p. 1258

Overseas Venture Capital, Guidelines for Overseas Venture Capital Investment in India, see *App.* 274

Oversubscribed Issues, allotment of shares, s. 69, p. 831
refund of excess money, and interest, s. 73, p. 894
refund, jurisdiction for filing suit, s. 73, p. 893

Over-subscription, Basis of allotment on, see Chap. VII, VIII of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Retention of Oversubscription, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Ownership, industrial undertaking, of, s. 2(19AA), p. 50

Paid-up Capital, bonus shares as, s. 2(32), p. 62
defined, s. 2(32), p. 29
publication of, s. 148, p. 1553
requirement as to minimum, s. 2(32), p. 62

Pari Materia, Acts, interpretation, s. 1, p. 13
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Interpretation"**

Parliament, exemptions as to disproportionate voting rights, to be laid before, s. 89, p. 1124

Participants in Depository, Regulation of, SEBI, by, s. 187-C, p. 1760
Depositories Act, s. 2A, p. 91
SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 201

Partner & Partnerships, allotment of shares on transfer of assets, s. 75, p. 932
company and, s. 3, p. 111
company as partner in, s. 3, p. 111
company as, s. 12, p. 349
company joining, liability of, s. 12, p. 349
distinguished from company, s. 11, p. 340
member as, s. 41, p. 550
misleading name, s. 22, p. 431
private company as, s. 3, p. 111
prohibited, when exceeding a maximum number, s. 11, p. 335
prohibition on number of members, s. 11, p. 335

Partner & Partnerships (*Contd.*)
share in, s. 2(46), p. 85
subscriber as, s. 12, p. 345

Passing off action, name of company, infringement of, for, s. 20, p. 409
name of company, injunction against, s. 20, p. 407

Pay and Accounts Officers, Addresses of the Depatment of Company Affaires and its field officer, viz., Regional Directors, Registrars of Companies, Official Liquidators and Pay and Accounts Officers, see *App.* 148

Payment in cash, prohibition on tax free, s. 200, p. 1843
what is, s. 75, p. 931, s. 149, p. 1558
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Calls on Shares**"

Penalities, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Offences & Penalties**"
Annual General Meeting, for default in holding, s. 168, p. 1640
charges, for failure to, register, with Registrar, s. 142, p. 1537
default in holding meeting, s. 168, p. 1640
expert, for failure to comply with provisions, s. 59(2), p. 771
investment, for failure to maintain register of, s. 49(8)(9), pp. 612, 615
officer in default, liabilities, s. 5, p. 143
Penalty and Interpretation, s. 59, p. 771
personation, for, of Share-holder, s. 116, p. 1408
prospectus, for improper issue of, s. 60, pp. 772, 778
Provisions of the Companies Act, 1956 under which penalties are leviable for offences under the Act, and the nature and quantum of the penalties, see *App.* 146
SEBI (Procedure for Holding Enquiry by Enquiry Officer and Imposing Penalties) Regulations, 2002, see *App.* 155

Performance guarantee, deposit rules, amount received towards, s. 58A, p. 723

Perjury, company's liability, for, s. 34, p. 495

Permissible Capital Account Transactions, FEM (Permissible Capital Account Transactions) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 105

Permission to deal, grant of, by recognised stock exchange, s. 73, p. 886 *et seq.*
grant of, by recognised stock exchange, s. 73, p. 894 *et seq.*
refusal of, by recognised stock exchange, s. 73, p. 894

Perpetual Debentures, s. 120, p. 1455

Perpetual succession, company of, s. 34, p. 477

Person acting under company's authority, duty of, s. 46, p. 593

'Person in accordance with whose instruction' Directors, Act, s. 7, p. 170

Person in the employment of the company, s. 3, p. 106

Person Resident in India, FEM (Foreign Currency Accounts by a Person Resident in India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 114

Person, company as, Consumer Protection Act, s. 34, p. 478
meaning, s. 11, p. 336, s. 12, p. 344
meaning of, not defined in the Act, s. 11, p. 336

Personation for acquisition of shares, s. 68-A, p. 821
offences to investigate by Delhi Police Establishment, s. 68-A, p. 821

Personation of shareholder, s. 116, p. 1408
company's duty of care, s. 116, p. 1409

Petitions, Fees on, under, Company Law Board (Fees on Application and Petitions) Rules, 1991, see *App.* 6

Physical or mental incapacity, member, NCLT, ground for removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267
President, NCLT, ground for removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 267

Place of Profit, Director's Relatives (Office or Place of Profit) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 43

Pledge of Securities, Pledge of Securities Forming Part of Promoters Contribution, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162

Pledge of shares, s. 82, p. 1088, s. 108 p. 1240

Political contributions and donations, cases as to, important again, s. 17, p. 385
donation for political purposes, s. 13, p. 364
donation to political parties, s. 13, p. 364
Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-14)

Poll, conduct of, s. 179, p. 1725
confidentiality of voting at, chairman's decision, s. 185, p. 1737
demand for taking, s. 179, p. 1722
demand for, not honoured, business, validity of, s. 179, p. 1724
group of resolution's, s. 179, p. 1725
important points for, conducting, s. 185, p. 1737
manner of taking, s. 185, p. 1736
not necessarily by ballot, s. 185, p. 1736
persons entitled to demand, s. 179, p. 1722
poll how taken, s. 185, p. 1736
private company, s. 179, p. 1726
proxies at, s. 176, p. 1705
rating of votes at, chairman's declaration, s. 185, p. 1737
result of, s. 185, p. 1736
right to vote, s. 183, p. 1734
scrutineers, s. 184, p. 1735
Secretarial Action Points, for conduct of, procedure, s. 179, p. 1726
Secretarial Standard (SS-2), s. 180, p. 1728
time for taking, s. 180, p. 1727
voting at, s. 185, p. 1737
voting by, s. 179, p. 1724
—, conduct of, s. 179, p. 1725
withdrawal of, demand for, s. 179, p. 1726

Pollution laws, notice under, service on company, s. 51, p. 619
officer in default, s. 5, p. 145

Pooling agreement, shareholders, among, for voting, s. 87, p. 1116

Portfolio Managers, SEBI (Portfolio Managers) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 226
SEBI (Portfolio Managers) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 225
SEBI Rules and Regulations, s. 72, p. 846

Possession, seizure of money, power to take, s. 10-FP, p. 277

Possessory lien, charge as, s. 125, p. 1477

Post Issue Capital upto Rs.5 crores, Public Offer by Unlisted Companies with Post Issue Capital upto Rs.5 crores, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Post issue Monitoring Reports (*Clause* 7.2.1), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XVI, *App.* 162

Post, certificate of posting, s. 51, p. 618
notices sent by, s. 51, p. 618
registered, sending of notices by, s. 52, p. 621

Postal ballot, Central Government's powers as to, s. 192-A, p. 1804
committee recommendation, s. 192-A, pp. 1798, 1799
companies (Passing of the Resolution by Postal Ballot) Rules, 2001, s. 192A, p. 1801
Companies (Passing of the Resolutions by Postal Ballot) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 41
Compliance Certificate, ICSI guidance note & check list, s. 192A, p. 1805
Deeming provision of, s. 192-A, p. 1805
Government's view on, s. 192-A, p. 1798
ICSI Guidance Note on Passing of Resolutions by Postal Ballot, see *App.* 312(4)
items requiring, s. 192-A, p. 1800
listed company, resolution by, s. 17, p. 382
Listed Public Company, Special Resolution by, s. 31, p. 465
listing agreement, requirement, s. 192-A, p. 1800
Non-obstante clause starting, provisions of, s. 192A, p. 1804

Postal ballot (*Contd.*)
non-obstante provision, s. 192-A, p. 1804
notice to members, requirements of, s. 192-A, p. 1805
Notice to members, s. 192-A, p. 1805
objects of, s. 192-A, p. 1804
penalty for default, s. 192-A, p. 1805
Power of Central Government to specify resolutions conducted by, s. 192A, p. 1804
procedure for, s. 192-A, p. 1800
rationale, s. 192-A, p. 1799
requisite majority for, s. 192-A, p. 1805
resolutions, passing by, s. 192-A, p. 1805
Sweat Equity issue to promoters, s. 192A, p. 1804
working group's views, s. 192-A, p. 1799

Post-Issue Obligations, Association of Resource Personnel, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Basis of Allotment, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Certificate Regarding Realisation of Stockinvests, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Co-ordination with Intermediaries, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Other Responsibilities, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Post- issue Monitoring Reports, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Post-issue Advertisements, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162
Redressal of Investor Grievances, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VII, *App.* 162

Power of Attorney, corrections in documents, for, s. 15, p. 372
document, for conversion of, s. 33, p. 475
Stamp duty on, Table of, see *App.* 136

Powers of CLB, exercise and discharge, by Company Law Board, s. 10-E, p. 211
exercise and discharge, by Company Law Board, s. 10-E, p. 217
Powers and Functions of the Company Law Board, see *App.* 143
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Company Law Board**"

Powers of company, implied and incidental, s. 13, p. 364
implied, s. 13, p. 363
refusal to issue summons, s. 10-E, p. 226

Powers of the Central Government and Regional Director under the Companies Act, 1956, see *App.* 141

Powers under the Companies Act, 1956 administered by the Securities and Exchange Board of India, see *App.* 142

Powers, Chief Metropolitan Magistrate, to seek assistance of, s. 10-FP, p. 275
delegation by general or special order, s. 10-FO, p. 274
District Magistrate, to seek assistance of, S. 10-FP, p. 275
manner of delegation, s. 10-FO, p. 274
persons to whom delegated, s. 10-FO, p. 274
administrative, judicial member, NCLT, p. 10-FF, p. 264
administrative, member (Adm.), NCLT, s. 10-FF, p. 264
administrative, technical member, NCLT, s. 10-FF, p. 264
Appellate Tribunal, of, s. 10-FZA, p. 293
financial power, judicial member, NCLT, s. 10-FF, p. 264
financial power, technical member, NCLT, s. 10-FF, p. 264

Pre-emption rights, further issue, exclusion of, s. 81, p. 1041
further issue, favour of, s. 81, p. 1041
lending Institutions, control on transfer of share s, s. 111, p. 1329
meaning of, s. 111, p. 1325
transfer of shares, private agreement among members, company not bound by, s. 111, p. 1326
transmission of shares, effect of in articles, s. 108, p. 1227
waiver of, s. 81, p. 1042

Pre-emption, implementation of rights, procedure of, s. 3, p. 98
right of, s. 3, p. 98
—, on sale of, s. 3, p. 101
transfer by representative, s. 3, p. 101
shares, transferability, s. 3, p. 98

Preference Shares (Regulation of Dividends) Act, 1960, see *App.* 287

Preference shares, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Redeemable preference shares**"
check list prescribed on redemption of irredemable, s. 80-A, p. 1015
check list prescribed, s. 80, p. 1008
Class as, s. 106, p. 1177
CLB, permission on failure to redeem, s. 80-A, p. 1014
compoundable offence, s. 80A, p. 1014
conversion into loan, s. 80, p. 1008
convertible, guidelines for issue of, s. 80, p. 1006
Convertible, Policy Guidelines of the Government relating to stipulation of convertibility clause and appointment of Nominee Directors, see *App.* 271
default in redemption prohibition on dividends, s. 80-A, p. 1014
defined, s. 85, p. 1103
dividend accumulation of, s. 85, p. 1105
dividend, frustration of rights, as to, s. 85, p. 1107
—, payment of, s. 85, p. 1105
equity necessary for, s. 85, p. 1105
failure to redeem, shareholders remedy, s. 80, p. 1006
fee and stamp duty, on redemption s. 80 p. 1006
foreign investment in, rate of dividend, s. 81, p. 1052
foreign investments in, Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1064
holding company, s. 4(1)(b)(1), p. 123
ICSI Guidance Note on Redemption of Irredeemable, s. 80-A, p. 1015
irredeemable, compulsory redemption, CLB petition for relief, s. 80-A, p. 1014
irredeemable, provision for compulsory redemption, s. 80-A, p. 1009
issue of, s. 80-A, p. 1009
meaning, s. 85, p. 1103, s. 86, p. 1110
meeting, notice of, s. 172, p. 1668
participating dividend and capital rights, s. 85, p. 1107
participating when, s. 85, p. 1103
paying off, s. 100, p. 1160
period of redemption to be 10 years, s. 80, p. 1003
preferential rights, s. 85, p. 1103
quorum, when counted, s. 174, p. 1690
redeemable, conditions for redemption, s. 80, p. 1006
—, holder not a creditor, s. 80, p. 1007
—, issue of, s. 80, pp. 1003, 1007
—, not allowed, when, s. 80, pp. 1003, 1006
redemption by conversion, s. 80, p. 1007
redemption of, reissue, where company unable to redeem, s. 80A, p. 1012
—, reserve, utilisation of, s. 80, p. 1006
redemption, consequent upon amendment of 1988, s. 80-A, p. 1009
—, notice of time and extension, s. 80, p. 1008
resolutions affecting rights attached to, s. 87, p. 1120
rights of, s. 85, p. 1105
rredeemable, Secretarial Action Points for, s. 80A, p. 1014
surplus assets right to, s. 85, p. 1103
two kinds, must, for one to give preference, s. 85, p. 1105
votes of, s. 87, p. 1119
voting right, s. 87, pp. 1113, 1119
what are, s. 85, p. 1103
winding up, position on, s. 85, p. 1103
—, rights in, s. 85, p. 1108

Preferential Allotments, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
Firm allotment to financial institutions, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Foreign Institutional Investors to, by listed companies, s. 81, p. 1071
non-residents, issue of shares to, s. 81, p. 1071
Preferential allotments to FIIs, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
Promoters Participation in Excess of the Required Minimum Contribution to be Treated as Preferential Allotment, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
promoters participation, when to be treated as, s. 81, p. 1070
reservations for, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1053
Rights issues, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1053
unlisted company, s. 81, p. 1073

Preferential issue, compliance with continued listing, s. 81, p. 1068
Guidelines for, see **SEBI Guidelines 2000,** Chap. XIII, *App.* 162
pricing of, private sector banks, s. 81, p. 1052

Preferential shares, meaning of, s. 86, p. 1112

Preferntial Allotment Rules, Unlisted Public Companies (Preferntial Allotment) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 46

Pre-incorporation Contracts, s. 46, p. 599 *et seq.*
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Contracts"**
agreement to subscribe for shares, s. 46, p. 602
binding on persons, who make, them, s. 46, p. 599
European Communities Act, 1972 effect upon liability, s. 46, p. 601
expenses, reimbursement of, s. 46, p. 603
payments made under, s. 46, p. 602
property purchased by promoter, s. 46, p. 602
provisional, s. 46, p. 603
purchase of shares, s. 46, p. 602
share purchases, s. 46, p. 602
Specific Relief Act, ratification under, s. 46, p. 600
tax on, s. 46, p. 602

Pre-Issue Obligations, Abridged Prospectus, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Advertisement for Rights Post Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Agreements with depositories, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Appointment of Compliance Officer, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Appointment of Intermediaries, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Authorised Collection Agents, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Despatch of Issue Material, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Documents to be Submitted alongwith the Offer Document by the Lead Manager, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
lead merchant banker shall exercise due diligence, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Mandatory Collection Centres, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
No Complaints Certificate, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Offer Document to be Made Public, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
pre-issue obligations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
Underwriting, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162

Preliminary expenses, account of, to be set out in statutory report, s. 165(3)(C), p. 1613
account of, to be set out in statutory report, s. 165(3)(c), p. 1613
writing off, out of premiums, s. 78 (2)(b), p. 988

Premature Repayment, interest reduced in, s. 58A, p. 743

Premium, account, application of, s. 78, p. 988
application of securities premium Account, s. 78, p. 989
application of, received on issue of share, s. 78, p. 988
expenses of or discount allowed on issue of shares may be written off by, s. 78(2)(c), p. 988
issue of shares at a, s. 78, p. 988
nature of share premium account, s. 78, p. 988
preliminary expenses may be written off by, s. 78(2)(b), p. 988
redeemable preference shares, payable on, s. 80(1)(c), p. 1003
reduction of share premium account, s. 78, p. 990
reduction of per shares, s. 78, p. 991
retention in a separate account, s. 78, p. 989
rights issue, at discriminatory, s. 81, p. 1040
SEBI guidelines as to pricing of public issue, s. 78, p. 992
Share Premium Account, reduction of, s. 78, p. 990

Prescribed manner, construction of, s. 1, p. 23

'Prescribed', defined, s. 2, p. 62

Preservation of Records, Companies (Preservation and Disposal of Records) Rules, 1966, see *App.* 17

President of India, directions to directors, power to give, s. 26, p. 450
directors, power to nominate, s. 26, p. 450
member as, s. 41, p. 560

---

* For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise

President, Manager, when not, s. 2(24), p. 53
National Company Law Tribunal, grounds for removal of, s. 10FJ, p. 267
—, lien with parent cadre, s. 10-FE, p. 264
—, prohibition on variation of salary, etc. of, s. 10-FG, p. 265
—, removal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, resignation by notice in writing by, s. 10-FI, p. 266
—, salary and allowances of, s. 10FG, p. 264
—, suspension of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
—, terms and conditions of service of, s. 10-FG, p. 264
—, vacancy in Office of, s. 10-FH, p. 265

Prevention of management by undesirable persons, directors, disqualifying companies being used as, s. 203, p. 1862
persistent default in filing returns, s. 203, p. 1853
persons covered, s. 203, p. 1850
prohibited person taking part or concerned in management, s. 202, p. 1848
relief from disability, Courts power when to be exercised, s. 203, p. 1879

Previous company law, definition, s. 2(34), p. 63

Price Band, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Pricing by Companies Issuing Securities**"

Price Chits and Money Circulations Schemes (Banking) Act, 1978, see *App.* 294

Pricing by Companies Issuing Securities, Differential Pricing, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Freedom to determine the denomination of shares for public/rights issues and to change the standard denomination, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Initial public Issue by Banks, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Payment of Discounts/Commissions, etc., see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Price Band, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Public Issue by Unlisted Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Public/Rights Issue by Listed Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162

Pricing of Issue, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1067
SEBI guideline on, s. 78, p. 992

Principal Bench, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FL(5), p. 269
power to transfer cases/proceedings, s. 10-FL(5), p. 271
transfer of proceedings, power of, s. 10-FL)6), p. 269

Private Companies, s. 43, p. 563
adopting provisions similar to s. 81, p. 1020
advantages of, not being subsidiary of public company, s. 4, p. 130, *et seq.*
all kinds, provisions not applicable to, s. 4, p. 133
allotment, prohibition of, not to apply in, s. 70(3), p. 832
—, prohibition of, not to apply in, s. 70(3), p. 834
annual return of, certificates to be sent with, s. 161(2)(b), p. 1595
annual submissions of certificates, s. 43-A, p. 583
appointment of managerial personnel, s. 197-A, p. 1828
articles compulsory, s. 26, p. 448
articles of, registration, s. 28, p. 453
articles, must specify number of members, s. 27, p. 451
becoming deemed public company, s. 43-A, p. 565 *et seq.*
becoming public, s. 165, p. 1615
body corporate appointed to a place of profit, for more than five years, s. 204(6), p. 1887
capital, further issue of, provisions as to, not to apply to, s. 81(3), p. 1017
ceasing to be, s. 44, p. 587
certificate to be annexed to annual return, s. 43-A(9), p. 569
commencement of business of, s. 149(7), pp. 1556, 1560
conditions, default in complying with, s. 43, p. 564
consequences of default in complying with conditions constituting, s. 43, p. 565
conversion from Public Company, s. 31, p. 467
—, Recommendations of Company Law Committee, s. 31, p. 456
—, by altering articles, s. 31, p. 465
—, into public company, s. 21, p. 424, s. 43-A, p. 565, s. 44, p. 587
—, Secretarial Action Points, s. 31, p. 466
conversion of public into private, change of name, s. 31, p. 456

Private Companies (*Contd.*)
conversion, deemed public company, name change of, s. 21, p. 424
converted from public, government approval, s. 31, p. 465
deemed public company, s. 43-A, pp. 574, 575
—, committee report, s. 43-A, p. 570
—, declaration to be filed by, s. 43-A, p. 578
—, delegation of powers to Registrar of Companies, s. 43-A, p. 583
—, effect on exemptions, s. 4, p. 133
—, interpretation of provisions, s. 43-A, p. 578
—, reconversion, s. 43-A, p. 582
—, relevant rules, s. 43-A, p. 584
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Deemed Public Company"**
default by, petition to CLB for relief, s. 43, p. 565
default in compliance of requirements, s. 43, p. 565
defined, s. 3, pp. 92, 95
definition, s. 2(35), p. 29, s. 3(1)(iii), pp. 92, 95
deletion and restoration of word private, deposits, invitation, acceptance or renewal of, by, s. 43-A(1C), p. 567
deletion and restoration of word private, s. 43-A(2), p. 567
Deposits, borrowings by, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 760
disproportionate voting rights, exemption from, s. 88, p. 1122
—, savings from termination of, s. 90, p. 1125
effect of default, s. 43, p. 565
effect of reduction of members below minimum, s. 45, p. 588
employees as members, s. 3, p. 106
England, in, present position of, s. 3, p. 100
equitable interest, transferee in favour of, s. 3, p. 103
exempted from filing statement in lieu of prospectus, s. 70(3), pp. 832, 834
exemption of Govt. Companies, s. 4, p. 130, s. 43-A, p. 584
—, and privileges, s. 4, p. 130
—, change of name of, by adding words 'private limited', s. 25(3)(b), p. 435
—, whether subsidiary or not, s. 4, p. 133
failure to comply with requirements, s. 3, p. 110
further issue of shares, departments' view as to applicability, s. 81, p. 1045
general meeting of, provisions to apply unless provided otherwise in articles, s. 170(1)(ii), p. 1654
general meetings, s. 4, p. 131
holding another private Co., s. 43-A, p. 579
inapplicability of, s. 43-A, p. 579
incorporation (Formation), mode of, s. 12, p. 343
joint holders, counting of number of members, position of, s. 3, p. 107
joint shareholders, deposit from, s. 3, p. 109
—, petition for prevention of oppression and mismanagement, s. 41, p. 552
loans may be given for the purchase of its own shares, s. 77(1), p. 951, s. 77(2), p. 954
managerial remuneration, s. 4, p. 131
meaning of, s. 2(35), p. 63
meeting, notice of, can make self regulations, s. 172, p. 1670
meetings, provisions relating to, s. 170, p. 1654, s. 172, p. 1670
members number of restriction, s. 3, pp. 92, 95
members, restrictions on number, persons in employment, counting of, s. 3, p. 106
membership of, s. 3, p. 108
minimum paid up capital requirement, failure, consequences of, s. 2, p. 96
—, time-limit, s. 3, p. 94
name, change of existing, procedure, s. 24(1), p. 434
NBFCs, joint shareholders, deposits received from, s. 3, p. 109
notice of meeting, explanatory statement requirement as to, s. 173, p. 1685
number of members, restriction on, s. 3(1)(iii)(b), p. 106
offering by shares to public, construction of references to, s. 67(5), p. 814
partner as, s. 3, p. 111
placement of shares, brokers through, to 50 persons or more, s. 3, p. 107
poll, demand for, s. 179(1)(b), p. 1723
pre-emption on sale of shares, s. 3, p. 101
pre-emption, right of, transfer of shares in, s. 111, p. 1327
present position in England, s. 3, p. 111
'Private Limited" last words to be used in the name of, s. 13(1)(a), p. 351
private placement of shares through brokers, Department's Press Note, s. 3, p. 107

Private Companies (*Contd.*)
'private' word to be added to name, s. 24, p. 434
privileges compared with public companies, s. 3, p. 110
privileges, s. 3, p. 110, s. 4, p. 130
prospectus, or statement in lieu of prospectus to be filed on ceasing to be, s. 44(1), p. 585
—, restriction on issue of, s. 3(1)(iii)(c), p. 107
—, to be filed when ceasing to be, s. 44, p. 585
provisions not applicable to all kinds, s. 4, p. 133
proxy, more than one cannot be appointed, unless authorised by articles, s. 176(1) (proviso), p. 1705
public company, becoming, s. 43-A, pp. 565, 574, 575 *et seq.*
public deemed as, registered shareholding to be counted, s. 43-A, p. 575
public deposits, prohibition on acceptance of, ss. 3, 58A, pp. 97, 107
quorum for meeting, s. 174, p. 1685
reconversion for deemed public, s. 31, p. 466
renunciation of rights shares, s. 3, p. 107
right to renounce, not available, s. 81, p. 1037
rights issue, renunciation rights not applicable, s. 81, p. 1037
—, provisions in articles, similar to, s. 81, p. 1020
share capital, s. 4, p. 131
—, two kinds of, exemption fund, s. 85, p. 1105
—, appeal against refusal to transfer or transmit, permissible, when, s. 111, p. 1324
—, equitable interest, creation of, s. 3, p. 103
—, not marketable security, s. 3, p. 95
—, proffered, acceptance, of s. 3, p. 103
—, relationship between valuation and net worth, s. 3, p. 103
—, transfer, power to refuse, s. 3, p. 103
—, transfer, restrictions contained in articles valid, s. 3, p. 98
—, valuation of, s. 3, p. 101
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Valuation of shares**"
status of, s. 3, p. 112
statutory meeting not necessary, s. 165, p. 1615
statutory meeting, provisions as to, not to apply, s. 165(10), pp. 1614, 1615
subsidiary of a foreign Co., s. 4, p. 126
subsidiary of a public company, s. 3, p. 109, s. 4, p. 115
subsidiary of public company, joint shareholding, in, s. 4, p.126
subsidiary, if the entire share capital is not held by one or more foreign bodies corporate, s. 4(7), pp. 115, 126
transfer of shares, "will" under, s. 2, p. 101
—, cases warranted judicial interference, s. 3, p. 104
—, equitable interest, creation of, s. 3, p. 103
—, pre-emption right of, s. 111, p. 1327
—, private agreement of members, about, s. 3, p. 97
—, refusal on grounds specified in articles, s. 3, p. 105
—, refusal, approval of investment in shares by lending Institution, s. 111, p. 1329
—, refusal, power of, s. 111, p. 1328
—, refusal, presumption of *bona fide* on part of directors, s. 3, p. 103
—, restrictions on, s. 3, p. 96
—, time within which power of refusal to be exercised, s. 3, p. 106
—, usual forms of restrictions, s. 3, p. 98
transmission of shares assuring its functioning, s. 108, p. 1226
turnover criterion, s. 43-A, p. 569, 575
underwriting commission payment by, s. 75, p. 944
voting rights, duty towards voiceless shareholder, s. 182, p. 1732
—, not affected, s. 4, p. 131
—, restrictions on, not to apply, s. 182, p. 1730

Private Limited Companies, and Unlisted Public Limited Company (Buy-Back of Securities) Rules, 1999, see *App.* 12
'existing private companies' to add as last words of their names, s. 24, p. 434
incorporation of, procedure, s. 12, p. 350
name of private company to contain as last words, s. 13(1)(a), p. 351

Private Placement, debt securities by listed companies, s. 117, p. 1421
debt securities by listed company, s. 117, p. 1421
equity shares of, through brokers etc, s. 68, p. 820
FII's, preferential allotment, s. 81, p. 1071

Private Placement (*Contd.*)
SEBI Guidelines on Issue of Corporate Debt Securities though Private Placement by Listed Company, see *App.* 165

Procedure, Appellate Tribunal, before, s. 10-FZA, p. 293

Proceeding, • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Court**"
authentication, agents signature, s. 54, p. 629
default, officer who is in, representation of company in, s. 5, p. 160
foreign, jurisdiction for civil court, s. 10, p. 207
pending before passing of 1956 Act, s. 10, p. 185
transfer of pending, s. 10FA(3), p. 252

Producer Companies, Bye-laws of the Kaira District Co-operative Milk Producers' Union Ltd., Anand, see *App.* 306
Multi-State Co-operative Societies Act, 2002, see *App.* 305
ordinary resolutions passed by, s. 189, p. 1781
Producer Companies (General Reserves) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 47
Report of the High Powered Committee for Formation and Conversion of Co-operative Business into Companies, see *App.* 307
special resolutions passed by, s. 189, p. 1779

Professionals, *Professional advisers,* limit of liability, s. 7, p. 170
Professional fee, financial assistance, payment as, s. 77, p. 962

Proffered shares, acceptance of, s. 3, p. 103

Profit and Loss Account, Statement on the Amendments to Schedule VI to the Companies Act, 1956, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-2)
Statement of Profits and Losses (*Clause* 6.18.7(iv)(b)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. X, *App.* 162

Profit forecast, Guidance Note on Accountant's Report on Profit forecast and/or Financial Forecasts, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-52)

Profits, percentage remuneration depending on, s. 198, p. 1835
Transfer of Profits to Reserve, Rules, 1975, see *App.* 19

Proforma for sending Responses to SEBI (*Clause* 16.2.4.5(b)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXV, *App.* 162

Prohibited associations and partnerships, s. 11, p. 335
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Illegal Associations**"

Prohibition, salary and allowances, members, NCLT, on variation of, s. 10-FG, p. 265
salary and allowances, president, NCLT, on variation of, s. 10-FG, p. 265

Promissory notes, bills, etc., how executed, endorsed, etc., s. 47, p. 603
name of company, on s. 47, p. 603
name of company, on s. 47, p. 603
name, publication on, liability in default, s. 147, p. 1551
power to make, s. 47, p. 603
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Bills of exchange**"

Promoter, begins and ends, promotion when, s. 62, p. 792
contracts, ratification of, s. 62, p. 793
definition, SEBI, by, s. 62, p. 792
deposits, by, not exempted, s. 58-A, p. 741
—, exemption of, s. 58-A, p. 741
expenses in allotment, for consideration other than cash, reimbursement, s. 75, p. 932
expenses, reimbursement of, by Share Allotment, s. 75, p. 932
liability of, s. 62, p. 787, 790, 795
liability under section 62 for misstatements, s. 62, p. 795
meaning, s. 62, pp. 789, 791
payments to, prospectus to mention, see sections 61, 62, 63, p. 795
personal liability under pre-incorporation contracts, s. 46, p. 602
personal profits, duty to disclose, s. 62, p. 793
position of, s. 62, pp. 790, 792
Promoters and Promoters' Group, definition of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 62, pp. 791, 792

Promoter (*Contd.*)
SEBI guideline, on, s. 62, p. 792
Promoters Group details, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, see *App.* 162
promoters' group, SEBI guidelines as to definition, s. 62, p. 792
promotion, when begin and ends, s. 62, p. 792
property purchased by them, ownership, s. 46, p. 602
prospectus liability, for mis-statements in, s. 62, pp. 787, 795
remedies against, s. 62, p. 794
remuneration and expenses, s. 62, p. 795
rescission and other remedies, s. 62, p. 794
some hints, s. 62, p. 793
status of, s. 62, p. 790
who are, s. 62, p. 790

Promoters Contribution And Lock-In Requirements, See Also Sch. VIII, *App. 162*
diligence certificate from merchant brokers, s. 81, p. 1077
First issues by existing private/closely held companies, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
First issues of new companies, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Lock-In Requirements, Lock in of Minimum Specified Promoters Contribution in Public Issues, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
lock-in requirements, s. 81, p. 1075
SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1074

Property of company, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Wrongful withholding of property"**
depositor's right to claim payment recognised as, s. 58A, p. 723
Investment Property, (IAS 40), see *App.* 319
lifting the corporate veil, in matters of, s. 34, p. 520
Plant and Equipment, (IAS 16), see *App.* 319
Sick Industrial Company, procedure by magistrate for taking over, s. 10FP, p. 276
stamp duty remission of, s. 4, p. 134

Property Outside India, FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of Immovable Property Outside India) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 7/2000, see *App.* 112

Proposed Dividend, Provision for Proposed Dividend, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-5)

Proprietorships, deposits by, from NRI, s. 58A, p. 755

Prosecution for offences, officers who are in default, Department's norms, s. 5, p. 143

Prospectus, abridged, s. 2(1), p. 31, s. 56, p. 635
accounting treatment of unutilised funds, s. 61, p. 786
advertisement, s. 66, p. 812
aggrieved person, remedy of, s. 56, p. 651
allotment, proceeding for setting aside, nature of, s. 62, p. 802
—, setting aside value of proceedings, s. 63, p. 805
alteration in, giving authority in general meeting, s. 61, p. 785
alterations, deletions additions, at the instance of ROC s. 60, p. 777
ambiguous statements, s. 62, p. 797
announcement regarding proposed issue of capital, s. 66, p. 812
application for permission to deal, s. 73, p. 887
application forms, distribution of, s. 56, p. 646
auditor's report under Sch. II, s. 56, p. 643
auditor's report, s. 56, p. 643
Basis for Issue Price, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
belief or opinion, representation as to, s. 62, p. 797
book-building and information memorandum, s. 60B, pp. 781, 783
business or occupation, meaning of, s. 59, p. 771
Capital Structure of the company, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
checklist of matters, to be included, s. 66, p. 812
circular containing terms contrary to sanction, s. 56, p. 641
circular containing, offer for exchange of shares, s. 56, p. 641
civil liability for mis-statement in, s. 62, pp. 787, 795
companies under same management, SEBI, Guidelines on disclosure, s. 56, pp. 699, 710

Prospectus (*Contd.*)

company management and project, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 695
Company, Management and Project, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
complainant for untrue statement, power delegated to SEBI, s. 63, p. 808
consent of expert, s. 58, p. 714
construction of references to offering of shares etc., s. 67, p. 813
contents of, SEBI Guidelines on, s. 56, p. 681
Contents of, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
contracts material, s. 60, p. 775
contracts, copies, inspection, s. 60, p. 776
copies to be supplied to RBI, s. 60, p. 777
Cover Pages, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Credit Rating Agencies, see *App.* 267
criminal liability for mis-representation, in, jurisdiction for complaint, s. 63, p. 807
criminal liability for misstatement, jurisdiction, s. 63, p. 807
—, in, s. 63, p. 805
criminal liability, disclaimer of, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 64, p. 810
damages for untrue statement, s. 62, p. 800
date of publication must contrast with date of issue of, s. 55, p. 631
date of publication of, s. 55, p. 631
dating of, s. 55, p. 631
defined, s. 2(36), p. 29, s. 2, p. 63, s. 64, pp. 808, 809
definition follows English Law, s. 2(36), p. 63
deployment of issue proceeds, s. 61, p. 786
directors, liability under section 56, s. 56, p. 649
directors, names, s. 62, p. 796
disclaimer statement from issuer, s. 62, p. 805
Disclosure on Investor Grievances and Redressal System, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
disclosures, of capital structure, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 686
discount issue, amount to be disclosed in, s. 79, p. 998
documents deemed to be, s. 64, p. 808
domestic concern, s. 67, p. 817
draft, vetting by SEBI, s. 56, p. 652
expert consent of, s. 58, p. 714
expert opinion, referred in, effect, s. 62, p. 799
expert to be independent person, s. 57, p. 713
expert to be unconnected meaning of, s. 57, p. 713
expert's liability, s. 62, p. 787, s. 63, p. 805
—, statement by, s. 57, p. 713
—, wrong, making complaint, power delegated to SEBI, s. 59, p. 272
filing of by private Co., s. 44, p. 585
Financial Information, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Financial of Group Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
flexibility in pricing of securities, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 680
furnishing of copy of, s. 56(3) Prov., p. 634
General Information, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Green Shoe Option, s. 60B, p. 784
information memorandum, s. 2(19B), p. 51
injunction against, issue of, s. 62, p. 801
injunction, against adverse criticism, s. 56, p. 638
interpretation of provisions relating to, s. 65, p. 811
invitation to offer, s. 2(36), p. 63
issue of, injunction against, s. 62, p. 801
—, SEBI requirements for, s. 60, p. 775
—, when not required, s. 56, p. 639
Issue price, basis of, Sch. XV, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 699
issue proceeds, deployment of, s. 61, p. 786
—, unutilised, accounting treatment, s. 61, p. 786
issue, domestic concern, as, s. 67, p. 817
issued generally, is not public issue, s. 2(22), p. 27, s. 2(22), p. 52
issued to the public, s. 56, p. 640
issued, s. 56, p. 640
issuer company, pre-issue obligations, s. 56, p. 666
issuers' absolute responsibility, SEBI Guidelines on, s. 62, p. 805

Prospectus (*Contd.*)
joint action by shareholders, s. 62, p. 799
jurisdiction, civil court, s. 61, p. 786
law, misrepresentation of, s. 62, p. 798
liability for omissions, s. 62, p. 795
—, for mis-representation, s. 62, pp. 795, 798
—, under section 62, defences, s. 62, p. 798
—, under section 62, limitation, s. 62, p. 801
—, under, effect of plaintiffs death, s. 56, p. 650
—, under, honest mistake of fact, s. 56, p. 649
—, under, ignorance of fact, s. 56, p. 649
—, under, limitation for suits, s. 5 6, p. 649
limitation, s. 56, p. 649
litigations and defaults, outstanding, SEBI Guidelines on disclosure, s. 56, p. 700
Management Discussion and Analysis of the Financial Condition and Results of the Operations as Reflected in the Financial Statements, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
material contracts, s. 60(1)(b), p. 775
meaning, s. 56, p. 638
measure of damages for untrue statements, s. 62, p. 800
memorandum accompanying containing salient features of, necessary, s. 56 (3), p. 634
misleading statements, some instances, s. 62, p. 796
misled investors, liability to, s. 62, p. 801
misreading of, s. 62, p. 798
misrepresentation, liability for, purchasers of shares in open market to, intention to influence market, s. 62, p. 803
misrepresentation, limitation for claiming compensation, s. 62, p. 801
misrepresentation, remedies under other laws not affected, s. 62, p. 801
—, underwriters remedy against broker, s. 76, p. 945
misrepresentations in, facts of, not belief, s. 62, p. 797
—, in, underwriter remedy against, s. 76, p. 945
—, liability for, s. 62, pp. 787, 795
—, nor opinion, s. 62, p. 797
—, open market purchase, effect on, s. 62, p. 802
—, other laws against, not affected, s. 62, p. 801
misstatements in, materiality for nature statement s. 63, p. 806
—, penal liability, s. 63, p. 808
—, person liable for, s. 62, p. 795
—, rescission for, s. 62, p. 802
negligence, in, s. 62, p. 804
Newspaper advertisement of, format prescribed by Central Government, s. 66, p. 812
newspaper advertisement, s. 56, p. 650, s. 66, p. 812
non-compliance with section 56, director defences, s. 56, p. 649
obligatory to issue, when, s. 56, p. 639
offer document shall contain all material information which shall be true and adequate so as to enable the investors to make informed decision on the investments in the issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
offer for sale, s. 67, p. 813
offer of deemed as, s. 64, p. 808
offer to members, of credit union, not public offer, s. 56, p. 640
offer to public, meaning of, s. 67, p. 815
'offer to the public', s. 66, p. 812, s. 67, p. 815
offer when amounts to, s. 2(36), p. 63
omissions, liability, s. 62, p. 795
open market dealings, effect of misrepresentations, s. 62, p. 802
—, intentions in liability, s. 62, p. 802
—, negligence, s. 62, p. 802
—, proximity, for liability, s. 62, p. 802
open market transactions, liability for, s. 62, p. 802
option to acquire shares from company, s. 67, p. 817
Outstanding litigations or Defaults, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
overriding effect of provisions of RBI Act, s. 58-A, p. 723
particulars in regard to the company and other listed companies under the same management within the meaning section 370 (1)(B) of the Companies Act,·1956 which made any capital issue during the last three years shall be given, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
particulars of issue, SEBI, Guidelines on, s. 56, p. 694

Prospectus (*Contd.*)
Particulars of the issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
penalty for fraudulent statement, s. 68, p. 820
penalty for improper issue, s. 59, p. 771
personation for acquisition of shares etc., s. 68-A, p. 821
place of registered office stated in, change of, s. 61, p. 786
post issue activities, s. 81, p. 1083
practical hints, s. 60, p. 776
precautions by promoters and directors, s. 62, p. 799
pre-issue activities, s. 81, p. 1083
preliminary, American concept, s. 60A, p. 780
—, filed under SEC, s. 60-A, p. 781
private and confidential offers, s. 67, p. 816
private company, restriction on issue of, s. 3(1)(iii)(c), p. 107
private placement of equity, through brokers, s. 3, p. 107, s. 68, p. 817
Projections, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Promise *vis-a-vis* Performance, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
'promotor', s. 62, p. 790
provisions applicable to advertisement s. 58-A, pp. 745, 771
public issue, domestic concern, s. 67, p. 817
public issue, s. 66, p. 816
—, of, s. 56, p. 640
public issue, what is not, s. 67, p. 816
Recission of contract, s. 62, p. 802
rectification of defects, s. 60, p. 777
red-herring, s. 60B, p. 784
—, green shoe option, s. 60B, p. 784
registration of, s. 60, p. 772
—, condition precedent, s. 60, p. 775
—, practical hints, s. 60, p. 776
registration, need for, s. 60, p. 773
reliance on, statements in, s. 62, p. 797
remedy for untrue statements, s. 62, p. 795
remedy of aggrieved person, s. 56(6), p. 651
Reports in Company Prospectuses, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-21)
representation in, true when issued, s. 62, p. 796
rescission, right, when lost, s. 62, p. 802
revision of, s. 60, p. 776
Risk factors and management perception on the same, if any, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
Sch. II, Financial Information, SEBI, Guidelines, s. 56, p. 701
Schedule II disclosures, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 681
scope of, s. 2(36), p. 63
SEBI Guidelines on general conditions for issue of securities, s. 56, p. 667
SEBI Guidelines relating to Disclosures in Prospectus, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
SEBI requirements for issue of, s. 60, p. 775
section 56 does not affect other remedies, s. 56, p. 650
severe penalties for contravening provisions, s. 58-A, p. 724
shelf, s. 60A, p. 697 (see also under 'shelf prospectus')
signature, by original or alternate director, s. 60, p. 777
special defences, s. 62, p. 798
statement included in, s. 65, p. 812
statement, reliance on, s. 62, p. 797
statement, untrue, materiality of, s. 63, p. 806
statements in, accuracy of, s. 56, p. 644
—, between issue and closing, care to be taken, s. 56, p. 644
—, lieu of • SEE ALSO UNDER "**Statement in lieu of prospectus**"
—, true and accurate and fair, s. 56, p. 644
statements, future events as to, s. 62, p. 795
Statutory and other information, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
subscription for shares, s. 56, p. 642
subscription—meaning, s. 56, p. 642
successive minimum subscription, applicability of, s. 69, p. 829
supply of copies on demand, s. 60, p. 777

Prospectus (*Contd.*)
terms of contracts in, not to be varied, s. 61, p. 785
terms of issue, SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 689
Terms of the present issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, *App.* 162
unfair practices in, s. 56, p. 650
untrue statements in attached brochures, materiality of, s. 63, p. 806
—, penalty, s. 62, p. 795, s. 65, p. 812
—, suppression of facts, s. 63, p. 806
untrue statements suppression of facts by, s. 65, p. 812
variation between memorandum and, s. 62, p. 798
violation of section 56, remedy of aggrieved person, s. 56, p. 651
when not required to be issued, s. 56, p. 639
written invitation, for offer of sale, s. 56, p. 639

Protection of Investor, Investor Education and Protection Fund (Awareness and Protection of Investors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 42

Protection, action taken in good faith by Tribunals, s. 10-FZ, p. 291

Provisional Contracts, s. 46, p. 603

Provisions, Accounting Standards, Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets, (AS-29), see *App.* 316
Guidance Note on Provision for proposed Dividend, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-5)
Guidance Notes on Provision for Liability for Taxation, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-6)
Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets (IAS 37), see *App.* 319

Proxy, s. 176, p. 1705 *et seq.*
adjourned meeting, validity at, s. 176, p. 1708
appointment of, members, appointing should fill date of meeting, s. 176, p. 1710
attorney by, s. 176, p. 1712
blank, proxy in, s. 176, p. 1713
class meetings, modification at, s. 176, p. 1716
compliance certificate on Register of, s. 176, p. 1716
contents of instruments, of, s. 176 (5), p. 1706
corporations, representatives of, may appoint, s. 187, pp. 1750, 1752
creditors by, s. 176, p. 1711
—, winding up, in, s. 176, p. 1711
demand for poll, s. 179, p. 1723
deposit of, s. 176, p. 1708
deposit by, s. 176, p. 1710
fax, deposit of form by, s. 176, p. 1710
form of, s. 176, p. 1709
form, attestation of, s. 176, p. 1710
general, s. 176, p. 1715
issue of at companies expenses, s. 176, p. 1709
joint holders, by, s. 176, p. 1712
joint shareholders, s. 41, pp. 552, 553
legal position of, s. 176, p. 1715
member of a private company not to appoint more than one proxy, s. 176(1)(b), p. 1705, 1713
members, right to inspect documents, s. 176, p. 1710
mistake in, effect of, s. 176, p. 1711
model regulations as to, s. 176, p. 1716
modification at class meetings, s. 176, p. 1716
need not be members, s. 176, p. 1705
no right to speak, s. 176, p. 1705
nominees by, s. 176, p. 1711
private company, in, s. 176, p. 1713
representative of company compared with, s. 176, p. 1715
revocation of, s. 176, p. 1712
right to appoint, s. 176, p. 1705
—, appoint, exceptions, s. 176, p. 1708
—, speak, s. 176, p. 1708
right to appoint, where does not exist, s. 176, p. 1708
rights of, s. 176, p. 1711
Secretarial Checklist points, procedure, s. 176, p. 1716

Proxy (*Contd.*)
Secretarial Standard (SS-2), s. 176, p. 1716
show of hands, voting by, at, s. 176, p. 1715
signing of, attestation of, s. 176, p. 1710
signing of, s. 176, p. 1710
stamp duty, s. 176, p. 1713
two or more given by the same shareholder, effect of, s. 176 (2), pp. 1705, 1713
unstamped, s. 176, p. 1714
validity of, s. 176, p. 1715
voting by, by post, s. 176, p. 1715
who may be, s. 176, pp. 1705, 1709

Public Companies (Terms of Issue of Debentures and Raising of Loan with option to convert such Debentures or Loans into Shares) Rules, 1977, s. 81, p. 1047
terms of issue of debentures etc., s. 81, p. 1047

Public Companies (Terms of Issue of Debentures and Raising of Loans with option to convert such Debentures and Loans into Shares) Rules, 1977, see *App.* 13

Public Companies, s. 2(37), p. 64
Company Law Board's jurisdiction over, s. 111A, p. 1384
conversion into private by altering articles, government of approval, s. 31, p. 465
—, Recommendation of Company Law Committee, s. 31, p. 456
conversion into private by altering articles, s. 31, p. 465
—, Secretarial Action Points, procedure, s. 31, p. 466
conversions into private company, s. 44, p. 587
debenture issue, convertible, s. 81, p. 1044
deemed public company, s. 43-A, p. 574
—, reconversion into private, s. 31, p. 466
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Deemed Public Company"**
defined, s. 3, p. 110
definition, s. 3, p. 109
England, in present position of, s. 3, p. 111
Government approval for conversion—guiding principles, s. 31, p. 465
holding shares in each other, lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 511
incorporation, procedure, s. 12, p. 350
listed defined, s. 2 (23A), p. 27
listed, s. 2(23A), p. 52
meaning of, s. 2(37), p. 29
minimum paid up capital requirement, s. 3, pp. 84, 96
—, time limit, s. 3, p. 94
present position in England, s. 3, p. 111
private company becoming, s. 43-A, pp. 565, 570 *et seq.*
private company, conversion into, s. 31, p. 467
—, conversion into, s. 43-A, p. 565
Table 'A', option for adoption, s. 28, p. 453
Unlisted Public Companies (Preferntial Allotment) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 46

Public Deposits, • SEE UNDER **"Deposits"**
complaint, Regional Director authorised to make, s. 58-AAA, p. 771
default in refund of, cognizable, s. 58-AAA, p. 770
enforcement of CLB order, s. 58A, p. 738
investors grievance relating to, s. 58A, p. 737
refund of default therein, s. 58AAA, p. 770
advertisement and application form, for, s. 58AA, p. 767
complaint as to repayment, time-barred, s. 58A, p. 730
complaint, dismissal and restoration of, s. 58A, p. 730
conflict of authority, between RBI and CLB, s. 58A, p. 730
default in repayment, cognizable offence, s. 58A, p. 738
—, consequences of, s. 58A, p. 738
excess of limit, NBFC becoming industrial, permission to retain, s. 58A, p. 732
liquidity, failure to maintain, not continuing offence, s. 58A, p. 745
matured, unpaid, transfer to Investor Education and Protection Fund, s. 58A, p. 744
mutual funds borrowings, exempted from, s. 58A, p. 753
NBFCs nomination facility, in, s. 58A, p. 739
nomination facility, in, s. 58A, p. 739

Public Deposits (*Contd.*)
penalty for default, s. 58AA, p. 768
private companies, acceptance by, prohibition on, s. 3, p. 108
—, borrowing by ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58A, p. 760
Private Limited companies, prohibited from taking, s. 58A, p. 745
prohibition against acceptance of fresh, s. 58AA, p. 767
public interest litigation about, s. 58A, p. 730
RBI directions, s. 58A, p. 750
refund, signing officer, liability of, s. 58A, p. 730
repayment, complicated questions as to, s. 58A, p. 730
rescheduling of repayments, s. 58A, pp. 726, 730
small depositions, intimation by company of default to CLB, . 58AA, p. 766
—, CLB, jurisdiction and powers, s. 58AA, p. 767
—, special protection of, s. 58AA, p. 764
writ jurisdiction, remedy under, default in refund, against, s. 58A, p. 731

Public financial institutions, s. 4A, p. 134
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Financial Institutions**"
Central Government's power to notify, s. 4A, p. 138
default u/s. 274(1)(g) not applicable to, s. 67, p. 818
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
List of, specified as Operating Agencies of BIFR, see *App.* 99
operating agency, as, s. 4A, p. 140
SCOs, RLOs to be, s. 4A, p. 137
specification of, s. 4A, p. 138

'Public holiday', s. 2(38), pp. 29, 64, s. 74, pp. 927, 928
annual general meeting not to be held on, s. 166, p. 1618

Public issue by infrastructure companies, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 56, p. 678

Public Issue by Listed Companies, Conditions for issue of securities, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Credit Rating for Debt Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Differential Pricing, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
exemption from eligibility norms, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
Exemption from Eligibility Norms, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Filing of offer document, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Freedom to determine the denomination of shares for public/rights issues and to change the standard denomination, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Initial public Issue by Banks, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Outstanding Warrants or Financial Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Partly Paid-up Shares, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Payment of Discounts/Commissions, etc., see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Price Band, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Promoters Contribution in Case of Public Issues by Listed Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 677
securities, exemption from eligibility norms, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
• SEE ALSO UNDER "**Eligibility Norms for Companies Issuing Securities**" and "**Pricing by Companies Issuing Securities**"

Public Issue by Unlisted Companies, Conditions for issue of securities, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Credit Rating for Debt Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Differential Pricing, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Exemption from Eligibility Norms, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Filing of offer document, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Freedom to determine the denomination of shares for public/rights issues and to change the standard denomination, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Initial public Issue by Banks, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Lock in of pre issue capital of an unlisted company, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
Outstanding Warrants or Financial Instruments, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Partly Paid-up Shares, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, *App.* 162
Payment of Discounts/Commissions, etc., see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162

Public Issue by Unlisted Companies (*Contd.*)
Price Band, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. III, *App.* 162
Promoters Contribution in a Public Issue by Unlisted Companies, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 672

Public issues, • SEE ALSO UNDER "Issue of Shares"
allotment procedure in book building through, s. 81, p. 1061
appointment of merchant bankers, s. 56, p. 654
—, number of, s. 56, p. 654
banks, by, flexibility in pricing, s. 56, p. 680
bidding, procedure for, s. 81, p. 1059
Book Building process, through, s. 81, p. 1055
Book Building, additional disclosures, s. 81, p. 1058
call up of issue price, s. 69, p. 831
compliance officer, appointment of, s. 73, p. 919
debentures, additional conditions, s. 117, p. 1417
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
deposit of 1% of, release of, SEBI's NOC for, s. 73, p. 919
domestic concern, s. 67, p. 817
DSCE, by unlisted company, s. 73, p. 910
firm allotment in, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1049
further issue of capital, underwriting, s. 81, p. 1059
general conditions, SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 667
infrastructure company, by, flexibility in pricing, s. 56, p. 680
investors' grievances, redressal of, SEBI guidelines, s. 73, p. 919
issue proceeds, use of, monitoring agencies, for, s. 73, p. 899
listed companies, by, flexibility in pricing, SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 680
minimum interval, in two issues, s. 81, p. 1032
NCDs by Municipal Corporation, s. 73, p. 910
NCDS, permission for borrowing from NRI, s. 117, p. 1430
net offer to public, relaxation under SCR Rules, s. 73, p. 906
non-convertible debentures, investment by NRI/OCB in, s..117, p. 1429
non-underwritten, minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
offer document, jurisdiction for filing, s. 56, p. 660
oversubscription of, s. 69, p. 831
post issue monitoring reports, SEBI guidelines, s. 73, p. 918
post-issue advertisements, SEBI Guidelines, s. 73, p. 918
private and confidential offers, s. 67, p. 816
Private Sector Banks, issue of securities by, s. 81, p. 1078
project appraisal, SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 671
promoteres contributions, lock in requirements, s. 81, p. 1075
promoters' contribution, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1074
prospectus of, s. 56, p. 639
public offer, meaning, s. 67, p. 816
reservation in, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1049
Reservations and firm allotment in, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
SEBI FAQs on, and Secondary Market, see *App.* 164
SEBI Guidelines of, applicable to offer for sale, s. 64, p. 810
share application forms, requirements as to, s. 56, p. 647
stay order agianst, s. 56, p. 652
underwriting agreements, s. 81, p. 1059
underwritten, minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
unlisted company, by, flexibility in pricing, s. 56, p. 680
what is, s. 67, p. 816

Public Limited Company, • SEE ALSO UNDER "Issue of shares"
additional steps for formation of, s. 12, p. 351

Public office, shares to be held in the name of, s. 41, p. 557

Public Sector Bonds, Guidelines for Flotations of Public Sector Bonds, see *App.* 277
Guidelines for Issues of "Tax Free" Bonds by Public Sector Enterprises, see *App.* 278

Public Sector, floatation of bonds, by, SEBI guideline, s. 117, p. 1431

Public Sector (*Contd.*)
listed substantial acquisition on disinvestment by, s. 108, p. 1258
Public sector corporations, dispute between, transfer of shares, as to, s. 111, p. 1364
Public sector enterprises, disinvestment of shares by, s. 73, p. 911
Public sector undertakings, disinvestment, by, s. 108, p. 1257
Employees Stock Option Scheme for Public Sector Enterprises, see *App.* 279
listing of shares, s. 73, p. 911
Public sector undertaking bonds, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Bonds"**

Public servant, Chairperson, Appellate Tribunal, to be, s. 10-FY, p. 290

Public trustee, appointment of, s. 153-A, p. 1574
Companies (Public Trustee) Rules, 1973, see *App.* 15
consent to shorter notice of meetings, cannot give, s. 187-B, p. 1757
declaration as to shares and debentures held in trust, s. 153-B, p. 1574
immunity of, s. 187-B, p. 1757
meeting, shorter notice of, consent by, s. 171, p. 1660
Office of the Public Trustee (Destruction of Records) Rules, 1984, see *App.* 34
voting rights in respect of trust shares, s. 187-B, p. 1754
voting rights, vesting of, reasons for, s. 187-B, p. 1755

Public Undertakings, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Public Sector Undertaking"**
disinvestment by, s. 108, p. 1257

Publication, public company, conversion into private company, s. 44, p. 587
public company, conversion of private company into, s. 44, p. 587
Publication of capital, penalty for default, s. 148, p. 1554
Publication of name by company, penalty for default, s. 147, p. 1553
Publication of, capital authorised, subscribed and paid-up, s. 148, p. 1553
name of company, s. 147, p. 1547
public company, conversion into private company, s. 31, p. 465
Publication, consultation document, communication through electronic media, s. 53, p. 627

Punjab National Bank, List of Specified Branches of, for payment of Fees, see *App.* 138

Purchase of own shares by company, s. 77, p. 951
amalgamation scheme, under, s. 77, p. 961
buy-back of, s. 77, p. 961
debentures, buy back, s. 77, p. 961
declaration, prescribed form, under English Law, s. 77, p. 956
financial assistance, contravening sub-section (2), s. 77, p. 958
lending money by banking company, s. 77, p. 957
loans to employees for, s. 77, p. 958
nominee, in name of, s. 77, p. 960
object of section, s. 77, p. 953
pledge, taking shares under, s. 77, p. 961
providing financial assistance therefor, s. 77, p. 954
provision of funds for purchase of shares for benefit of employees, s. 77, p. 952
purchase by a company of shares in its holding companies, s. 77, p. 951
reduction of capital, s. 100, p. 1163
restrictions on, s. 77, p. 951
subsidiary, financing by foreign, s. 77, p. 957
substance and procedure under English Act, s. 77, p. 956
transfer of own shares to the company under gift or will, s. 77, p. 960
trust fund, constituted by company, for employees share scheme, s. 77, p. 958
trust holding shares under, s. 77, p. 958
unlimited company not prohibited, s. 77, pp. 961, 963

Qualification shares, allotment, out of further issue, s. 81, p. 1036
director as, member by, s. 41, p. 545
director by, s. 41, p. 545

Qualifications, Company Law Board (Qualifications, Experience and other Conditions of Service of Members) Rules 1993, see *App.* 8
members, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10FD, p. 261
President, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FD, p. 261
Secretaries, Companies (Appointment and Qualifications of Secretary) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 7

Quantum meruit, claim, in the nature of, s. 46, p. 601

Questions of law and fact, distinction between, s. 10-GF, p. 327

Quorum, adjournment, for want of, s. 174, p. 1690
agreement, special, as to, s. 174, p. 1686
corporate bodies etc, as constituting, s. 174, p. 1687
general meeting, for, s. 174, p. 1685
joint holders, s. 174, p. 1688
joint shareholders, position, s. 41, p. 553
meetings of, non-shareholder director, position for, s. 174, p. 1687
members, entitled to vote, s. 174, p. 1690
non-members, presence of, s. 174, p. 1687
preference shareholders, when counted, s. 174, p. 1690
presence of, at the time of decision, s. 174, p. 1686
presumption as to, s. 174, p. 1687
requirement of, s. 174, p. 1686
Secretarial Standard (SS-2), s. 174, p. 1692
single member attending, s. 174, p. 1689
Trusts, as constituting, s. 174, p. 1687
want of, third parties not affected, s. 174, p. 1687

Ratification, allotment, irregular of, s. 71, p. 836
directors irregular acts, altering articles for, s. 31, p. 464
ultra vires contracts, of, s. 46, p. 592

RBI (Non-Banking Financial Companies) Returns Specifications, 1997, Submission of statutory return on liquid assets and special return by NBFCs
Submission of statutory return on liquid assets and special return by NBFCs, Circular DNBS.(PD) CC. No. 8/02.01/1998-99, dt. 21-1-1999, see *App.* 54

RBI Act, 1934, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934"**
Company Law Board, powers under, s. 10-E, p. 239
(Relevant Extract), see *App.* 59
—, Guidance Note on the duty Cast on the Auditors under section 45MA of the RBI Act, 1934, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-13)

RBI Guidelines for Disinvestment of Equity Shares by Foreign Investors, see *App.* 276

Rearrangement • SEE UNDER **"Compromise and Arrangement"; "Scheme of Arrangement"**

Receivers and managers, appointment, by debenture holder, s. 117, p. 1425
appointment, effect, s. 137, p. 1523
—, of, entry in register, s. 137, p. 1522
ceasing to act, s. 137, p. 1522
costs, and remuneration, s. 123, p. 1464
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Cost charge and Expenses"**
debenture-holders, demand appointment, when, s. 123, p. 1461
directors, effect upon appointment of, s. 123, p. 1462
—, report on conduct of, s. 123, p. 1462
lien, s. 123, p. 1464
notice to Registrar as to, s. 137, p. 1522
official liquidator, co-existence with, s. 137, p. 1525
position and duty of, s. 123, p. 1463
—, powers of, s. 123, p. 1463
preferential payment, duty to make, s. 123, p. 1462
receiver, officer of court, s. 123, p. 1462
register of charges, entry in, appointment of, s. 137, p. 1522
registration of appointment of, s. 137 p. 1522
remuneration and cost, s. 123, p. 1464
unfair prejudice proceedings, appointment on, s. 123, p. 1462

Recklessly, meaning, s. 68, p. 820
reckoning 5th, 8th and 10th day of, s. 74, p. 927

Recognised stock exchange, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Stock Exchange"**
defined, ss. 2, 2(39), pp. 29, 65
over the counter exchange, s. 2(39), p. 67

Recognised stock exchange (*Contd.*)
permission to deal, grant of, s. 73, p. 886
refusal of, s. 73, p. 894
shares dealt in on, s. 73, p. 887

Record Date, book closure, reduction in notice period for fixing, s. 154, p. 1583
transfer of shares for, without closing registers, s. 108, p. 1202

Records, Company Law Board Benches, destruction of, s. 10-E, p. 239
preservation of, Companies (Preservation and Disposal of Records) Rules, 1966, see *App.* 17

Recovery of Debts Due to Banks and Financial Institutions Act, 1993, see *App.* 77
jurisdiction of debt recovery tribunal *vis-a-vis* civil court, s. 10, p. 207
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Debt Recovery Tribunal"**

Rectification • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Register of Members"**
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Transfer of Shares"**
aggrieved person, s. 111, p. 1338
allotment, beyond authorised capital, s. 111, p. 1355
—, in violation of conditions of issue, s. 111, p. 1355
—, of shares, in statutory violations, s. 111, p. 1356
arbitration award, final as to title, when, s. 111, p. 1349
authority, restrictions on directors, s. 111, p. 1357
breach of contract, transfer of shares, s. 111A, p. 1374
CLB's powers as to, s. 111, pp. 1291, 1292
default in payment of share money, s. 111A, p. 1372
director's power, s. 111, p. 1358
documents of, filed with ROC, s. 52, p. 623
Guidance Note on Revision/Rectification of Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-19)
interim relief, CLB's power for, s. 111(6), p. 1360
jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1291
locus standi, s. 111, p. 1351
loss of share certificate, s. 111A, p. 1375
lost in transit, documents, s. 111A, p. 1375
mistake, apparent on face of record, s. 10-FM(2), p. 272
—, employees quota allotted to outsider, s. 111, p. 1341
—, in articles, of, s. 31, p. 462
—, original share certificate returned to, s. 111, p. 1341
mutation of name in other company's register of members, s. 111, p. 1340
mutual fund, *locus standi*, s. 111, p. 1352
name of company, penalty for default, s. 22(2), p. 432
—, reasoned order, s. 22, p. 431
official liquidator, powers of, s. 111, p. 1340
order for, s. 111(5), p. 1292
pledged shares, with blank transfer form, s. 111A, p. 1373
—, not for short term, s. 111A, p. 1373
power to award damages, s. 111, p. 1359
power to close register of members, s. 154, p. 1581
power, exercise, presumption of *bona fide*, s. 111, p. 1345
refusal by stock exchange to accept transfer, s. 111A, p. 1375
register of charges, s. 141, p. 1531
register of members of, CLB order, on, s. 111A, p. 1389
—, entry of name without agreement in writing, s. 41, p. 546
—, unlawful transfers, s. 111A, p. 1389
register of members, s. 111, p. 1291, s. 111, p. 1337
relief allowed, cases in, s. 111A, p. 1375
relief not allowed, cases in, s. 111A, p. 1376
scope of, s. 111, p. 1296 *et seq.*
signatures not tallying, s. 111A, p. 1375
sub-judice, transfer, s. 111, p. 1342
sufficient cause, constitutes when, s. 111, p. 1345
Tribunal's order, s. 10-FM(2), p. 272
winding up in, s. 111(4), p. 1340

Redeemable preference shares, s. 80, pp. 1003, 1006
capital redemption reserve account, s. 80, p. 1007
issue of, s. 80, p. 1006

Redeemable preference shares (*Contd.*)
notice to Registrar, when redeemed, s. 95, p. 1143
power to issue, s. 80, p. 1006
procedure for redemption, Secretarial Action Points, s. 80, p. 1008
redeeming not reduction of capital, s. 8 0, pp. 1007, 1008
redemption by conversion, s. 80, p. 1008
redemption, conditions, s. 80, p. 1006
—, preference shares of, s. 80, p. 1007
reduction of members below minimum, s. 45, pp. 588, 589
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Preference Shares"**

Redemption of debenture, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Debenture"**

Redemption of Shares, reissue of, where company unable to redeem, s. 80A, p. 1012

Redemption of capital, share premium, cancellation of, s. 100, p. 1156

Red-herring Prospectus, contents of, in book building, s. 60B, p. 784
filing of, s. 60B, p. 783
particulars of, s. 60B, p. 784
preliminary prospectus also termed as, s. 60A, p. 781

Reduction in number of members, below legal minimum, s. 45, p. 589
decree against company, remoulding, s. 45, p. 589
deemed public company, position of, s. 45, p. 589

Reduction of capital, "and reduced", s. 102(3), p. 1170
application to Court for, s. 101, p. 1164
arrangement, amalgamation and, s. 101, p. 1167
—, amalgamation, s. 100, p. 1157
—, distinguished from, s. 101, p. 1167
—, or reorganisation, s. 101, p. 1167
—, under, shares of one class, conversion into another, s. 100, p. 1162
capital gains tax, s. 100, p. 1163
cases not considered as "reduction of capital", s. 100, p. 1155
——, where reduction procedure not called for, s. 100, p. 1155
certificate of court, s. 103, p. 1172
certificate of registration conclusive, s. 103, p. 1173
concealing name of creditor, s. 105, p. 1175
conclusiveness of certificate, s. 103, p. 1173
confirmation by court, s. 101, p. 1165
conservation and maintenance, s. 100, p. 1149
conversion of one class of shares into another, s. 100, p. 1162
court, discretion of, s. 100, p. 1153
—, duty and power, s. 102, p. 1171
—, order confirming, s. 102, p. 1169
court's, minute and certificate, s. 103, pp. 1172, 1173
—, powers, s. 102, p. 1171
creditors', s. 101, p. 1166
—, consent to, consent, when can be dispensed with, s. 102, p. 1171
—, objecting, list of, s. 101, p. 1166
—, objections to, s. 101, pp. 1164, 1166
—, when can be dispensed with, s. 102, p. 1171
defunct company, of, s. 100, p. 1160
discretion of court, s. 102, p. 1170
equal of, shares of one class, s. 100, p. 1160
excess of wants, in, s. 100, p. 1159
illegal, injunction against, s. 100, p. 1160
jurisdiction of Court, s. 101, pp. 1164, 1166
liability in respect of reduced shares, s. 104, p. 1174
liability of members after, s. 104, p. 1174
loss of capital of, s. 100 p. 1149
—, whether proof necessary, s. 100, p. 1157
loss of, proof, s. 100, p. 1157
mala fide motives, s. 102, p. 1171
manner of, discretion of court, s. 100, p. 1153
—, effecting, s. 100, p. 1153

Reduction of capital (*Contd.*)
minutes of, and court order to be filed with Registrar, s. 103, p. 1173
—, confirmed by court, s. 103, pp. 1172, 1173
—, what it should not contain, s. 103, p. 1173
mode of, domestic question, s. 100, p. 1152
modes of, s. 100, p. 1150
motive for, s. 100, p. 1152
need for, s. 100, p. 1149
order as to, s. 102, p. 1170
over-capitalisation, in cases of, s. 100, p. 1157
paying off by, and capital gains tax, s. 100, p. 1163
penalty for concealing name of creditors, etc., s. 105, p. 1175
power, s. 100, p. 1150
powers of Court as to, s. 102, p. 1171 *et seq.*
preference shareholders, paying off, s. 100, p. 1160
procedure for, practical steps, s. 101, p. 1169
procedure of, where not called for, s. 100, p. 1155
procedure, power to dispense with, s. 101, p. 1167, s. 100, p. 1149
proceedings for, confirmation of, s. 101, p. 1165
publication of registration, s. 103, p. 1173
purchase of own shares on, s. 100, p. 1163
qualification shares, not to be affected by, s. 100, p. 1163
reduction of members below legal minimum, s. 45, p. 589
registrar, filing of minute and court order with, s. 103, p. 1173
—, notice of, publication of, s. 103, p. 1173
Registrar's certificate, s. 103, pp. 1172, 1173
registration of order and minute of reduction, s. 103, p. 1172
reserves, reduction of, s. 100, p. 1162
sanction of Court, s. 101 p. 1165
Secretarial Action Points, s. 100, p. 1164
section 100 exhaustive of all modes, s. 100, p. 1151
share premium account, s. 100, p. 1156
share premium, s. 101, p. 1167
shares of different classes, where, s. 100, p. 1161
special resolution for reduction of, s. 100, p. 1153
surrender of shares, effect, s. 100, p. 1155
—, to the company, effect of, s. 100, p. 1155
types examples, s. 100, p. 1158
unlimited company, of, s. 100, p. 1160
valid special resolution for s. 100, p. 1153
variation of rights, involving, s. 100, p. 1154
winding up, in, s. 100, p. 1160

Reduction of members, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Reduction in Number of Members"**
deemed public company, position of, s. 45, p. 590

Reduction of share capital, s. 100, p. 1148
buy-back of shares, under, s. 100, p. 1163
Government companies, modification in reference to, s. 100, p. 1164
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Reduction of Capital"**

Reduction of share premium, s. 78, p. 990

Reference, conflict of opinion, in case of, s. 10-FL(3), p. 269

Refund Orders, letters of, registered post, to be sent by, s. 53, p. 627
Regd. Post, to be issued by, s. 73, p. 901

Refund of Application Money, s. 69(5), p. 824 • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Transfer of Shares"**
default prosecution under IPC, s. 73, p. 894
delay in issue of refund orders, s. 73, p. 899
NRI to, s. 73, p. 902
theft of refund orders, measures to prevent, s. 73, p. 902

Refund of Deposits, CLB no jurisdiction, u/s. 45-QA for, s. 58A, p. 731

Refund, registration fee, excess, s. 33, p. 473

Refusal to register transfer • SEE UNDER **"Transfer of Shares"**

Regional Directors, addresses in different states and of bench officers, see *App.* 148
Addresses of the Depatment of Company Affaires and its field officer, viz., Regional Directors, Registrars of Companies, Official Liquidators and Pay and Accounts Officers, see *App.* 148
Destruction of Records (in the Offices of the Regional Directors) Rules, 1976, see *App.* 32
Regional Director and Central Government, Functions and Powers of, under the Companies Act, 1956, see *App.* 141

Register and Books, Non-Banking Financial Companies, directions, maintained under, s. 2(8), p. 35
SEBI Guidelines, maintained under, s. 2(8), p. 35

Register of Charges, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Charges"** and **"Registration of Charges"**
CLB's power to order inspection', s. 144, p. 1540
company's, s. 143, p. 1538
compliance certificate, s. 136, p. 1521
—, appointment of officer, check list, s. 137, p. 1525
copies, right to, s. 144, p. 1540
index, s. 131, p. 1514
inspection, fee for, s. 131, p. 1514
—, petition to CLB, for, s. 144, p. 1541
—, right of, s. 144, p. 1541
receiver or manager appointment, entry in, s. 137, p. 1522
rectification by CLB, condonation of delay by Central Government, s. 141, p. 1534
—, condonation of delay necessary even when charge holders waive, s. 141, p. 1536
—, exercise of power, s. 141, p. 1531
—, existing rights not to be prejudiced, s. 141, p. 1534
—, liquidation after going into, s. 141, p. 1532
rectification, *locus standi* of un secured creditor, s. 141, p. 1535
—, of, when winding up inevitable, s. 141, p. 1532
—, omission, mistake, misstatement but not validity, s. 141, p. 1533
—, penal fee not payable until CLB orders in extension of time, s. 141, p. 1536
—, petition to CLB, copy of advertisement need not be attached, s. 141, p. 1537
—, ROC not to accept out of time with out CLB, order, s. 141, p. 1536

Register of Debenture-holders, s. 152, p. 1568
Compliance Certificate, ICSI Guidance Notes & Check List, s. 152, p. 1569
—, on closure of, s. 154, p. 1584
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Register of Members"**

Register of investment, inspection by Shareholders, Petition before CLB on refusal, s. 49, p. 615
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Investment"**

Register of members, s. 150, p. 1561
amount considered to be paid on shares, s. 150, p. 1564
authentication of particulars, s. 150, p. 1565
Central Government's power to order inspection, s. 163, p. 1602, 1604
changes in particulars, s. 150, p. 1561
class, disclosure, of, s. 150, p. 1564
CLB's power to order inspection, s. 163, p. 1602
closure of, advertisement in newspaper, s. 154, p. 1582
—, listed company, s. 154, p. 1583
—, requirement as to, s. 154, p. 1581
—, Secretarial Action Points for, procedure, s. 154, p. 1583
closure, notice to refer specifically whether members of debenture holders, s. 154, p. 1583
—, uniform date for all companies, s. 154, p. 1581
closures, inspection during, s. 163, p. 1604
company estopped by contents of, s. 164, p. 1609
company's duty to maintain upto date, s. 111, p. 1341
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance Note & Check List, s. 151, p. 1566
—, on closure of, s. 154, p. 1584
debenture-holders' right of inspection, s. 163, p. 1605
Depositories Act, effect on particulars, s. 150, p. 1561
depository system, advantages to members, s. 150, p. 1562
—, functioning of, s. 150, p. 1562
duty to keep updated, s. 150, p. 1564
entry of name, without agreement, rectification, s. 41, p. 546

Register of members (*Contd.*)
firms, entry of name, s. 150, p. 1565
foreign Register of, s. 157, p. 1585
foreign register, model regulations as to, s. 158, p. 1588
HUF, as member, s. 153, p. 1573
—, trust holding does not amount to, s. 153, p. 1573
index of register of members, s. 151, p. 1566
index, debenture-holders, Depositories Act, beneficial owners, s. 152A, p. 1570
inspection and place of keeping model regulations as to, s. 163, p. 1607
inspection by members, s. 163, p. 1604
inspection of, default in providing penalty for, s. 163, p. 1606
—, default in providing, CLB's power to order, s. 163, p. 1606
—, fee for, mode of calculation of, s. 163, p. 1605
joint holders, entries in case of, s. 150, p. 1565
—, entry of, s. 150, p. 1565
jurisdiction Supreme Court's view, s. 111, p. 1300
jurisdiction under s. 163, p. 1605
listed company, closure of, s. 154, p. 1583
minors, entry of name, s. 150, p. 1565
particulars, changes in, s. 150, p. 1561
penalty for default in rectification, s. 111, p. 1365
place of keeping, s. 163, p. 1603
power of CLB to rectify, s. 111, p. 1291
power to award damages in rectification, s. 111, p. 1359
power to close, requirements as to listed companies, s. 154, p. 1583
preservation of records, s. 163, p. 1605
prima facie evidence, s. 164, p. 1608
public register, as, s. 150, p. 1565
record date, without closing, for transfer of shares, s. 108, p. 1202
records, preservation of, s. 163, p. 1605
rectification, allotment in violation of capital issues control, s. 111, p. 1337
—, allotment in violation of s. 108A, s. 111 p. 1356
—, allotment in violation of shareholders agreement, s. 111, p. 1355
—, allotment, violation of articles, in, s. 111, p. 1356
—, alternative remedy, s. 111, p. 1342
—, appeal against CLB order, s. 111, p. 1366
—, applicable to all kinds of companies, s. 111, p. 1345
—, applicable to section 25 companies, s. 111, p. 1352
—, articles to be complied with, s. 111, p. 1350
—, by CLB, s. 111, p. 1291
—, ceiling in articles on shareholding, s. 111, p. 1355
—, CLB, cannot order partition of holding, s. 111, pp. 1337, 1345
—, —, jurisdiction confined to entries only, s. 111, p. 1342
—, —, nature of power, s. 111, p. 1367
—, —, petition to, s. 111, p. 1367
—, —, petition, documents necessary, s. 111, p. 1367
—, company need not be at fault, s. 111, p. 1345
—, complexity and summary jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1345
—, compliance with formalities necessary, s. 111, p. 1350
—, court, sale of shares, s. 111, p. 1364
—, damages, power to award, s. 111, p. 1359
—, delay, effect of, in seeking s. 111, p. 1354
—, directors exceeding their authority, s. 111, p. 1356
—, directors powers to, s. 111, p. 1358
—, discretion to undertake complicated questions, s. 111, p. 1345
—, instrument of transfer, uncancelled stamps, s. 111, p. 1353
—, interim relief, s. 111, p. 1360
—, judicial power cannot be delegated to a committee, s. 111, p. 1342
—, jurisdiction limits, s. 2111, p. 1342
—, limitation, s. 111, p. 1362
—, loan, conversion into shares, s. 111, p. 1352
—, *locus standi*, s. 111, p. 1351
—, *mala fide* refusal by directors, s. 111, p. 1350
—, meaning, s. 111, p. 1337
—, minor, allotment to, under mistake s. 111, p. 1341

Register of members (*Contd.*)
rectification, minor's guardian, transfer by, s. 111, p. 1359
—, mistaken entries of, s. 111, p. 1341
—, of allotment in violation of articles, s. 111, p. 1339
—, of members, as joint holders, s. 111, p. 1359
—, order, implementation of, s. 111, p. 1359
—, partnership firm, registered as member, s. 111, p. 1359
—, period of limitation, s. 111, p. 1362
—, person becoming member, right to, s. 111, p. 1344
—, position where appeal fails, s. 111, p. 1367
—, power of CLB untrammelled, s. 111, p. 1298
—, proper parties, s. 111, p. 1354
—, Questions of title, s. 111, pp. 1345, 1349
—, registered transfer, repudiation o f, s. 111, p. 1353
—, removal of registered transfer, s. 111, p. 1354
—, retrospective, s. 111, p. 1359
—, right of appeal against, s. 111, p. 1366
—, scope and limits of jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1342
—, specific instances of rectification, s. 111, p. 1339
—, transferees position, if appeal fails, s. 111, p. 1367
—, unnecessary delay, what is, s. 111, p. 1360
—, winding up intervention of, s. 111, p. 1352
—, winding up, in, s. 111, p. 1340
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Rectification"**
trust as, s. 153, p. 1573
trust not to be entered, s. 153, p. 1570
trust, notice of, cases in which may or must be taken, s. 153, p. 1571
upto date, duty to keep, s. 150, p. 1564
winding up, rectification, in, s. 111, p. 1340
wrong entries, correction of, s. 150, p. 1564

Registered office, s. 3, p. 83, s. 146, p. 1543 *et seq.*
address of, defective, effect on service of documents, s. 51, p. 618
—, to be painted or affixed outside of every office, s. 147(1)(a), p. 1547
alteration of memorandum involving transfer of, requirements, s. 18(3), pp. 399, 401
alteration, for inter-state change, filing of CLB order, s. 18, p. 402
—, registration of, s. 18, p. 400
annual general meeting to be held only in locality of, s. 166, pp. 1619, 1620
bills of exchange, business letters, notices etc. must contain address of, s. 147, p. 1547
change from one state to another, objection clause, s. 17, p. 395
change in clause to avail loans, s. 17, p. 389
change of, from one State to another, requirements, s. 17, p. 386
—, inter-state, appeal against CLB order, s. 18, p. 402
—, —, registration of alteration, s. 18, p. 401
—, place of, s. 17, pp. 377, 386
—, place within State, s. 17A, pp. 377, 396
communications & notices to be addressed to, s. 146, p. 1543
company shall have within 30 days of incorporation, s. 146, p. 1543
domicile as constituting, s. 146, p. 1544
financial institution, power to interfere for choice of s. 13, p. 369
Importance for purposes of Companies Act, s. 146, p. 1545
importance of, s. 146, p. 1544
intimation to ROC, of address change of, s. 146, p. 1544
local limits, shifting outside, s. 146, p. 1545
managing director's residence, at, s. 146, p. 1546
memorandum, clause of, s. 13, p. 352
minutes to be kept at, s. 193, pp. 1807, 1808
notice of situation of, change in, s. 146, pp. 1543, 1544
—, change of place of, s. 17, p. 386
—, to Registrar, s. 146, p. 1543
offence of non-delivery of documents, complete at, s. 39, p. 543
penalty for non-publication of name and address of, s. 147(2)(3), pp. 1547, 1548
registers etc. to be kept at, s. 163, pp. 1601, 1603
removal of outside limits of city, or town can be effected by special resolution, s. 146, p. 1544
residence as constituting, s. 146, p. 1546

Registered office (*Contd.*)
service of document, where there is no address, s. 51, p. 618
service of documents on, s. 146, p. 1545
service of notice at, s. 51, p. 618
shifting of, obstruction by host State, s. 17, p. 389
situation of, notice of change of to registrar with in thirty days, s. 146, p. 1543
situation, notice of, s. 146, p. 1543
special resolution necessary for, s. 146, pp. 1543, 1544
statement of, in memorandum, s. 13, p. 352
to be mentioned in legible characters in all business letters etc., s. 147(1)(c), p. 1547

Registered society, as trustees, s. 187-B, p. 1757
body corporate, whether, s. 2(7), p. 33

Registers and returns, CLB, petition for, inspection, s. 163, p. 1606
CLB's power to order inspection, s. 163, p. 1602
Compliance Certificate, ICSI Guidance Note & Check List, s. 163, p. 1607
copies, supply of, s. 163, p. 1605
effect of liquidation, s. 163, p. 1605
inspection of documents, fees for, s. 163, p. 1605
inspection, by trustees and members, s. 163, p. 1604
—, debenture holders right, s. 163, p. 1605
—, statutory right, s. 163, p. 1604
jurisdiction, s. 163, p. 1605
place of keeping, s. 163, p. 1603
prima facie evidence, rules, s. 164, p. 1608
shares, locality of, s. 163, p. 1603
supply of copies, power to order whether discretionary, s. 163, p. 1606

Registers to be kept by company, charges of, s. 141, pp. 1529, 1531
closing of register of members, s. 154, p. 1581
debenture-holders, index of debenture-holders, s. 152, p. 1568
—, of, s. 152, p. 1568
evidentiary value of, s. 164, p. 1608
foreign, s. 158, p. 1587
inspection of, Central Government's power to order, s. 163, p. 1602
—, CLB's power to order, s. 163, p. 1606
investments in names of nominees, of, s. 49(3), p. 611
investments of, s. 2, p. 34
members of, s. 150, p. 1561
place of keeping, s. 163, pp. 1601, 1603
rectification of, s. 111, p. 1337
trust not to be entered, s. 153, p. 1570

Registers to be kept by Registrar, open to inspection, s. 130, p. 1511
register of charges, s. 131, p. 1514

Registrar of Companies, Addresses in different States and of Regional Directors and Bench Officers, see *App.* 148
Addresses of the Depatment of Company Affaires and its field officer, viz., Regional Directors, Registrars of Companies, Official Liquidators and Pay and Accounts Officers, see *App.* 148
aggrieved person, in issue of share certificate for, s. 113, p. 1397
Association not for profit, table of fees, see *App.* 133
certificate of, as to change of name, s. 23, p. 432
—, incorporation, s. 34, p. 476
—, reduction of capital, s. 104, p. 1174
charges, register of, to be kept by, s. 130, p. 1511
defined, s. 2(40), p. 29
Disposal of Records (in the Offices of Registrar of Companies) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 33
documents, service of, s. 52, p. 621
duty to register memorandum, s. 33, p. 474
Fees, table of stamps and fees, see *App.* 131
Forms, Returns, documents and agreements to be filed with the Registrars/Regional Director/Central Government for which forms are prescribed, see *App.* 147
harmonisation of practices, filing of resolutions, s. 192, p. 1796
notice to be given to, as regards, consolidation of share capital, s. 95, p. 1143

Registrar of Companies (*Contd.*)
notice to be given to, conversion of shares into stock, s. 95, p. 1143
—, increase of share capital of members, s. 97, p. 1145
notice to be given to, manner of, s. 52, p. 621
power, condonation of delay for late filing of, instrument of charge, s. 125(1) (Prov), p. 1472
satisfaction of, on registration, s. 33(3), p. 474
service of documents, on, s. 52, p. 621

Registrar of Share Certificate Issue, Rules and Regulations, see *App.* 132 and *App.* 210

Registrar to issue, allotment letters, despatch of, s. 73, p. 917
certificates, despatch of, s. 73, p. 917
refund orders, despatch of, s. 73, p. 917
SEBI Operational Guidelines/Instructions to RTI/STA, see *App.* 212

Registration Fees, refund of, s. 33, p. 473
registration of company, s. 33, p. 470
Table of Stamp and Fees payable to Registrar, see *App.* 131

Registration of alteration, chartered accountants, secretary's declaration, s. 33(2), p. 469
Company Law Board's power to extend time, s. 19, p. 403

Registration of charges, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Charges" and "Register of Charges"**
acquisition of property, on dissolution of partnership, s. 127, p. 1508
book-debt, s. 125, pp. 1487, 1490
—, fixed and floating, s. 125, p. 1490
certificate of conclusiveness, error as to particulars, s. 132, p. 1514
certificate of registration, s. 132, p. 1514
Certification of Documents for Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-27)
charge created by court order, s. 125, p. 1484
charge on calls, s. 125, p. 1502
charge, rights of, s. 125, p. 1503
choses-in-action, charge on, s. 125, p. 1495
commission etc on debenture, particulars of, s. 129, p. 1511
condonation of delay, by Central Government, s. 125, p. 1486
constructive notice, of fact, not contents, s. 126, p. 1507
—, of, s. 126, p. 1507
court order, charge created by, s. 125, p. 1484
date of, notice of, s. 126, p. 1507
debenture, charge securing issue of, s. 125, p. 1486
—, endorsement on certificate, s. 133, p. 1517
default in, CLB's direction to file, s. 141, p. 1536
delay in filing particulars, s. 130, p. 1513
—, registration, s. 125, p. 1486
delay in, condonation of, s. 125, p. 1505
Director's personal guarantee, supported by mortgage of personal property, s. 125, p. 1483
duty of company and right of interested party, s. 134, p. 1518
examples of fixed, or specific charges, s. 125, p. 1501
extension of time for, s. 141, p. 1532
—, petition to CLB, for, s. 141, p. 1536
FEMA & FERA provisions, s. 125, p. 1504
fixed or, specific charges, s. 125, p. 1501
floating charges, automatic crystallisation, provision for, s. 125, p. 1499
—, examples of, s. 125, p. 1502
—, on undertaking or property, s. 125, p. 1495
foreign companies, s. 125, p. 1477
form of charges, to be forwarded to ROC, s. 130, p. 1513
general notes, Part V, p. 1465
ICAI guidance note, on certification of document, s. 125, p. 1506
immovable property, s. 125, pp. 1486, 1504
instrument, copy of to be kept at registered office of company, s. 136, p. 1521
—, of, necessity of formal, s. 125, p. 1481
lien on goods sold, s. 125, p. 1477
liquidator, charges created by, not necessary, s. 125, p. 1483
mala fide mis-statement of particulars, s. 132, p. 1516
modification, assignment of rights, s. 135, p. 1519

Registration of charges (*Contd.*)
—, by charge holder, s. 135, p. 1520
—, power to extend time, s. 125, p. 1485
—, registration of, s. 135, p. 1519
—, variation in rate of interest, s. 135, p. 1520
non-registration, effect of, s. 125, p. 1481
notice, date of, s. 126, p. 1507
pari passu debenture series, particulars of, s. 128, p. 1509
plant and machinery, fixed, on, s. 125, p. 1486
pledge, registration not compulsory but permissible, s. 125, p. 1495
practical hints, s. 125, p. 1480
priorities in the matter of, s. 125, p. 1501
priority among charges, s. 132, p. 1516
procedure, libralised, s. 135, p. 1520
—, simplification, etc., s. 125, p. 1479
property acquired subject to charge, s. 127, p. 1508
property outside India, s. 125, p. 1503
questioning in winding up, s. 132, p. 1516
refusal, ROC power, of, s. 130, p. 1513
registrar, inspection, fee for, s. 131, p. 1514
—, to be kept by, registrar of charges, s. 130, p. 1511
reservation of title, in sale of goods, s. 125, p. 1493
retrospective registration, s. 132, p. 1515
rights of chargee, s. 125, p. 1503
sale of property, subject to charge, s. 125, p. 1484
satisfaction of charges, charge holders, rights to be heard, before entry, s. 138, p. 1526
—, memorandum of copy to be furnished to company, s. 140, p. 1529
—, merger of loan into loan of higher amount, as, s. 138, p. 1527
—, notice to charge holder, s. 138, p. 1527
—, reckoning of thirty days in case of banks, s. 138, p. 1527
—, ROC power to enter satisfaction on not hearing from company, s. 139, p. 1528
—, supporting letter from charge holder, s. 138, p. 1526
ship or any share in ship, s. 125, p. 1502
solicitors duty and liability, s. 125, p. 1483
solicitors responsibility towards clients company, s. 132, p. 1515
special Acts, overriding effect, s. 125, p. 1483
stamp duty, s. 125, p. 1485
subsequent court order, undoing earlier registration, s. 132, p. 1517
substituted property, charge on, s. 125, p. 1484
time, extension of, for registration, s. 141, p. 1532
—, registrar's power to extend, s. 125, p. 1485
title retention clauses, s. 125, p. 1477
uncalled capital, charge on, s. 125, p. 1486
when necessary, s. 125, p. 1477

Registration of companies, asset management companies, s. 33, p. 475
change of, s. 32, p. 468
charges of, s. 126, p. 1507
company of, s. 32, p. 468
company, judicial review and writ remedies, s. 33, p. 475
cooperative bank as joint banking company, s. 35, p. 528
duty of Registrar, s. 33, p. 474
effect of, s. 34, p. 476
European Community, branch in member state of, s. 33, p. 475
memorandum and articles, s. 33, p. 469
numbers allotted to companies, s. 35, p. 524
penalty for default in filing particulars, s. 142, p. 1537
prospectus, s. 60, p. 772
re-already registered as limited company, s. 32, p. 468
registrar's power to refuse with unlawful objects, s. 33, p. 475
resolution, etc., s. 192, p. 1792
Societies Registration Act, 1860, see *App.* 295
statement in lieu of prospectus, s. 70, p. 832
unlimited company as limited, s. 32, p. 468
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Rules Regulations and Guidelines"**

Regulations, • SEE UNDER **"Rules, Regulations and Guidelines" and "Articles"**

Reissue of shares, call on shares, s. 91, p. 1132

Related Parties, (AAS-23), see *App.* 317

Related Party Disclosures, (IAS 24), see *App.* 319

Relatives, s. 6, p. 168
adoption, effect of, s. 6, p. 170
definition of, s. 6, p. 168
Hindu Undivided family, member as, s. 6, p. 170
illegitimate child, whether, s. 6, p. 170
important provisions to which relationship relevant, relevant, s. 6, p. 170
list of, [S. (1) (Sch.I-A)], s. 6, p. 169
'relationship', scope of terms, s. 6, p. 169
who is a, Schedule I-A, p. 169

Release of 1% Deposit, Application form for issue of no objection Certificate for release of 1% Deposit placed with the Regional Stock Exchange (*Clause* 16.2.4.1(b)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XXIV, *App.* 162

'Relevant period', s. 43-A, p. 569

Relief undertakings, moratorium to, repayment of deposits, s. 58-A, p. 747

Remittance of Assets, FEM (Remittance of Assets) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 115

Removal of director, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Managerial remuneration"** and **"Remuneration of Director"**
EGM at interim relief against, s. 169, p. 1651
EGM, requisitioned for, s. 169, p. 1651

Removal, Chairperson and members of Appellate Tribunal, s. 10-FV, p. 288
members, National Company Law Tribunal, of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
President, National Company Law Tribunal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266

Remuneration, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Managerial remuneration"** and **"Remuneration of Directors"**
commission, calculation of, in case of certain employees, s. 199, p. 1842
compliance certificate on directors, s. 198, p. 1841
consideration for specified act, paid without act done, s. 198, p. 1840
deemed public company, department's clarification, s. 43-A, p. 581
—, effect of conversion on managerial personnel s. 43-A, p. 580
defined, s. 198, p. 1839
employees, of, paid by percentage of profits, s. 198, p. 1835
managerial, s. 198, p. 1835, *et seq.*
managing director, s. 198, p. 1835
maximum managerial, s. 198, p. 1835
minimum managerial, s. 198, p. 1837
non-managerial services, for, s. 198, p. 1838
overall maximum, s. 198, p. 1835
stock option is not, s. 198, p. 1839
tax-free payments, prohibition of, s. 200, p. 1843

Renewal, meaning, s. 58-A, p. 743

Repayment of deposit, extension of time, s. 58A, p. 730
No order of CLB with proof, s. 58A, p. 735

Repeated Prosecution, failure to comply with prerequisites of deposits, s. 58A, p. 726

Reports, Chandrashekhran Committee Report on Share Transfer Procedure, see *App.* 213
Companies (Auditor's) Report/Order, 2003, see *App.* 24
Cost Audit (Report) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 26
Disclosures of Particulars in the Report of Board of Directors, Rules, 1988, see *App.* 22
Malegam Committee Report, see *App.* 168, *App.* 231
Manufacturing and other Companies (Auditor's Report) Order, 1988, see *App.* 24
Report of the High Powered Committee for Formation and Conversion of Co-operative Business into Companies, see *App.* 307
SEBI Advisory Committee on Derivatives—Report on Development and Regulation of Derivative Markets in India submitted to SEBI, see *App.* 170
statutory, s. 165, p. 1612

Representation of Companies, • SEE UNDER **"Meetings"**

Representative Action, • SEE UNDER **"Derivative Action"**

Requisition and Requisitionists, call of extraordinary general meeting on, s. 169, p. 1642
circulation of member's resolution for, s. 188, p. 1765
expenses of, s. 169, p. 1651
meeting convened by, s. 169, p. 1648

Re-registration, • SEE UNDER **"Registration"**

Res judicata, shareholders action, company against, s. 34, p. 501

Rescission, allotment of shares, estoppel against, s. 71, p. 837
allotment of shares, measure of damages, s. 71, p. 837
allotment, manner of avoiding, s. 71, p. 837
resolutions of, s. 189, p. 1777

Research and Development, (AS-8), see *App.* 316

Reservation in Issues, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, pp. 1048, 1049
see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

Reserve Bank Directions, Duty Cast on the Auditors under section 45MA of the RBI Act, 1934, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-13)
Housing Finance Companies (NHB) Directions, 2001, see *App.* 64
Merchant Banking Companies exempt from, see *App.* 208(3)
Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1977, see *App.* 56
Non-Banking Financial Companies Acceptance of Deposits (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 51
Non-Banking Financial Companies and Miscellaneous Non-Banking Companies (Advertisement) Rules (1977), see *App.* 58
Non-Banking Financial Companies Auditor's Report (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 53
Non-Banking Financial Companies Prudential Norms (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1998, see *App.* 52
RBI (Non Banking Financial Companies) Returns Specifications, 1997, see *App.* 54
RBI Direction, see *App.* 52
Residuary Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1987, see *App.* 57

Reserve Bank of India (Non Banking Financial Companies) Returns Specifications, 1997, see *App.* 54

Reserve Bank of India Act, provisions of overriding effect on provisions of Companies Act, s. 58-A, p. 723

Reserve Bank of India, Investor to approach, s. 10, p. 210

Reserve capital, meaning and effect, s. 99, p. 1148

Reserve liability, company of, s. 34, p. 501
limited company of, s. 99, p. 1148
unlimited company of, s. 98, p. 1147

Reserve, bonus shares revaluation, ICAI's Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1031
Companies Unpaid Dividend (Transfer to General Revenue Account of the Central Government) Rules, 1978, see *App.* 21
Declaration of Dividend out of Reserves, Rules, 1975, see *App.* 20
Guidance Note on Treatment of Reserve created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-3)
reduction of, s. 100, p. 1162
Transfer of Profits to Reserve, Rules, 1975, see *App.* 19
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Accounts"**
Treatment of Reserve Created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)

Residuary Non-Banking Companies (Reserve Bank) Directions, 1987, circulars, see *App.* 57

Residuary Non-banking Companies, acceptance of deposits by, RBI directions as to, s. 58A, p. 750
fund utilisation, Regulation of, s. 58A, p. 752

Resignation, member, National Company Law Tribunal, by, s. 10-F, p. 266
President, National Company Law Tribunal, by, s. 10FI, p. 266

Resolutions, adjourned meeting at, s. 191, p. 1791

Resolutions (*Contd.*)
affecting rights attached to preference shares, s. 87, p. 1120
agreed to by all members of the company require registration, s. 192(4)(b), p. 1792
agreement of all shareholders, s. 189, p. 1787
alteration of articles by unanimous agreement, s. 189, p. 1788
altering articles, s. 192, pp. 1794, 1797
amendment of, refusal to allow, s. 189, p. 1776
amendments relating to, s. 189, p. 1773
appointment of managing director, agreement by, s. 192, p. 1795
—, of directors for, requires registration, s. 192(4)(c), p. 1792
articles having effect of altering shall be embodied in every copy of, s. 192(2), p. 1792
assent (unanimous) without resolution, s. 189, p. 1783
ballot, ICSI Guidance Note on Passing of Resolutions by Postal Ballot, see *App.* 312(4)
board of directors, authorising, under section 293 requires registration, s. 192(4)(ee)(i), p. 1793
cancellation of, s. 189, p. 1777
circulation of members', s. 188, p. 1765
—, checklist, s. 188, p. 1770
—, company's duty, s. 188, p. 1767
—, requisition by members, s. 188, p. 1765
class shareholders of, s. 192, p. 1796
Companies (Passing of the Resolutions by Postal Ballot) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 41
compliance certificate on registration of, s. 192, p. 1797
defect in special, s. 189, p. 1773
directors not concurring in, passed by Board, s. 193(4) (b), p. 1807
extraordinary general meeting, power of chairman to withdraw, s. 175, p. 1703
filing fee concessions, s. 192, p. 1797
filing of registrar with, harmonisation of practices, s. 192, p. 1796
filing of, penalty for default, s. 192, p. 1796
general meeting of, s. 188, p. 1765 *et seq.*
—, at, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"General Meeting"**
—, amendments to resolutions at, s. 189, p. 1773
general rules for amendments, s. 189, p. 1776
group of, s. 179, p. 1725
majority, different, s. 189, p. 1782
manner of counting votes for, s. 189, p. 1773
matters for which special resolution is required, s. 189, p. 1778
minutes of, s. 193, pp. 1807, 1809
motion and resolution meaning, s. 189, p. 1778
moving two or more resolutions together, s. 189, p. 1777
omnibus, to amend several articles, s. 31, p. 464
ordinary and special, scope of amendments, s. 189, p. 1773
ordinary, s. 189, pp. 1771, 1772
postal ballot, by, s. 192-A, p. 1800
—, by listed company, s. 17, p. 382
—, ICSI Guidance Note on Passing of Resolutions by Postal Ballot, see *App.* 312(4)
—, Rules on passing of, s. 192A, p. 1801
quorum, different, s. 189, p. 1782
ratification of irregularly passed, s. 189, p. 1783
reduction of capital, for, s. 100, p. 1149
registration in certain cases, s. 192, p. 1792
registration of, in certain cases, necessary, s. 192, p. 1792
—, registrar's refusal discretion to, s. 192, p. 1796
rescission of, s. 189, p. 1777
rules & forms, s. 192, p. 1797
Secretarial Standard on voting of, s. 177, p. 1720
Secretarial Standards (SS-2), s. 189, p. 1788
special notices, and circulation of members resolution, s. 190, p. 1790
—, need for, in certain cases, s. 190, p. 1789
special, s. 189, pp. 1771, 1778 • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Special Resolution"**
unanimous, s. 192, p. 1794
—, assent, amounting to resolution as, s. 189, p. 1783
—, consent, need for amendment as to, s. 189, p. 1787
valid and invalid passed together, effect, s. 189, p. 1777
withdrawal of, in AGM, s. 189, p. 1776
wording of, s. 189, p. 1778

Restriction, right to restrict share, cannot apply to deemed public company, s. 3, p. 96
Restrictions on appointment of former managing agents and secretaries and treasurers to any office, s. 204-A, p. 1889
articles containing, conflict with law, s. 9 p. 178

Restrictions on transfer, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Transfer of Shares"**
articles containing, conflict wit h laws, s. 9, p. 178

Restrictive Trade Practices, MRTP Act, 1969, see *App.* 297

Retail Individual Investor, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162

Retirement Benefits, Accounting and Reporting by Retirement Benefit Plans (IAS 26), see *App.* 319
Accounting for Retirement Benefits in the Financial Statements of Employees, (AS-15), see *App.* 316

Retrospective, alteration of articles, s. 31, p. 463

Return as to allotment, s. 75, p. 933
allotment of shares, for consideration other than cash, auditing practice, s. 75, p. 933
bonus shares, s. 75, p. 934
consideration other than cash, relief to allot tee, s. 75, p. 933
default in filing, penalty for, s. 75, p. 935
extension of time, power of ROC, s. 75, p. 934
forfeited shares, exempted from figuring in, s. 75, p. 935
payment in cash, meaning of, s. 75, p. 931
payment in kind, s. 75, p. 931
share capital to assure matching assets, s. 75, p. 928
stamp charges, s. 75, p. 933
time for filing, extension by Registrar, s. 75, p. 934

Returns, allotment, s. 75, p. 928
annual, s. 159, p. 1588
declarations of beneficial ownership of shares, s. 187-C, p. 1757
default in, officer who is, s. 5, p. 167
place of keeping, s. 163, p. 1603

Revaluation of assets, Bonus shares, issue on, s. 81, p. 1030
Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Treatment of Reserve Created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-3)

Revaluation Reserve, Availability of Revaluation Reserve for issue of Bonus Shares, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-31)

Revaluation, Guidance Note on Treatment of Reserve created on Revaluation of Fixed Assets, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-3)

Revenue, Audit of Revenue, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-38)
Audit of Revenue, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-38)
(IAS 18), see *App.* 319

Review, civil court's power vested in Tribunal, s. 10-FN, p. 273
jurisdiction for, s. 10-GF, p. 334
jurisdiction, power of, s. 10, p. 185
power of Tribunal to, s. 10-FN, p. 273
right to seek, s. 10-FN, p. 273
Supreme Court Rules (O. 40, R. 1), S. 10-FN, p. 273

Revised Accounts, Auditor's Report on Revised Accounts of Companies before Circulation to Shareholders, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-11)

Revision/Rectification, of Financial Statements, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-19)
Guidance Note on Revision/Rectification of Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-19)

Revisional Jurisdiction of Courts, s. 10, p. 187
High Court, s. 10, p. 187

Rights issues, *bona fide* allottees, protected, indoor management, rule by, s. 81, p. 1042
convertible debentures, issue of, s. 81, p. 1044
debentures, minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 829

Rights issues (*Contd.*)
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
flexibility in pricing, SEBI Guidelines, s. 56, p. 680
injunction against, s. 81, p. 1040
letter of offer, for, contents of, SEBI guideline, on, s. 81, p. 1025
listed company, exemption from eligibility norms, s. 81, p. 1023
loans into capital, conversion of, s. 81, p. 1043
Non-residents, to, FEMA, 1999, under, s. 81, p. 1033
non-underwritten, minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
NRI's, under FEMA, s. 81, p. 1033
OCB's restricted from acquiring securities in, s. 81, p. 1034
post issue monitoring reports, SEBI Guidelines, s. 73, p. 918
premium, discriminatory, issue at, s. 81, p. 1040
RBI, report to, by companies, s. 81, p. 1034
Reservations in, see Chap. III of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
SEBI guidelines, on, s. 81, p. 1023
SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1023
shares in, under takeover scheme, s. 81, p. 1042
underwritten, minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
Utilisation of funds in case of see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
vetting of offer documents, exempt, s. 56, p. 652
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Rights Shares"**

Rights shares, allotments, contrary to s. 81, directors fiduciary duty, s. 81, p. 1037
Board's power to issue, s. 81, p. 1020
bonus shares, as, s. 81, p. 1026
death of member, effect of, s. 81, p. 1032
deemed public company, renunciation rights, s. 43-A, p. 581
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Further Issue of Shares"**
equity shareholder means one on the register, s. 81, p. 1032
exceptions, s. 81, p. 1043
injunction, against, issue of, s. 81, p. 1040
issue, application of, s. 73, p. 894
joint holders and renunciation, s. 81, p. 1037
listing requirements, s. 81, p. 1040
Non-residents, under FERA, Issue of, to, s. 81, p. 1033
notice and date of offer, s. 81, p. 1032
NRI, issue to, s. 81, p. 1035
position of joint-holders s. 81, p. 1037
practical hints in making offer of, s. 81, p. 1023
pre-emptive rights, waiver of, s. 81, p. 1041
private company, provision in articles, similar to, s. 81, p. 1020
procedure for, issue of, Secretarial Action Points, s. 81, p. 1083
renunciation, not applicable to private companies, s. 81, p. 1037
subscription list, 60 days, to remain open for, s. 72, p. 840
transfer of shares, effect upon, s. 108, p. 1208
transferors duty to transferee, s. 81, p. 1033
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Right Issues"**

RNBCs, RBI directions, exemption from, s. 58A, p. 764
regulatory framework, new, clarification, of s. 58A, p. 753

Rules and Guidelines, appeals to Central Govt, s. 111, p. 1367
appeals to Central Govt, s. 111, p. 1367
Companies (Issue of Share Capital with Differential Voting Rights) Rules, 2001, s. 86, p. 1109
Companies (Issue of share certificates) Rules, 1960, s. 113, p. 1404
Public Companies (Terms of Issue of Debentures and Raising of Loans with option to convert such Debentures and Loans into Shares) Rules, 1977, s. 81, p. 1047
The Companies (Appointment and Qualifications of Secretary) Rules, 1988, s. 2, p. 72
Unlisted Public Companies (Preferential Allotment) Rules, 2003, s. 81, p. 1073

Safety Net or Buy Back Arrangement, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Salary and Allowances, Appellate Tribunal, Chairperson of, s. 10-FW, p. 289
Appellate Tribunal, members of, s. 10-FW, p. 289

Salary and Allowances (*Contd.*)
members, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FG, p. 264
—, NCLT, prohibition on variation of, s. 10-FG, p. 265
President, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FG, p. 264
—, NCLT, prohibition on variation of, s. 10FG, p. 265

Samll & Medium Sized Enterprises (SMEs), applicability of accounting Standards, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 316

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 2002, see *App.* 256(12)

Satisfaction of charges, company to report, condonation of delay, s. 138, p. 1527

Scam Cases, special court for trial of, s. 108, p. 1259

Schedule of Court Fee Stamps to be affixed on the Petitions/Applications filed with the Company Law Board, see *App.* 137

Schedule VI, Statement on the Amendments to Schedule VI to the Companies Act, 1956, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-2)

Schedule XIV, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Depreciation"**
some Important Issues arising from amendments of Schedule XIV to the Companies Act, 1956, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-29)

Schedule of Stamps, Stamps to be affixed on Articles of Association and on Memorandum of Association, of, see *App.* 134

Scheduled Bank, defined, s. 2(43), pp. 29, 70

Scheduled Industry, meaning of, s. 2(19AB), p. 50

Schemes, Company Law Settlement (Jammu and Kashmir) Scheme, 2003, see *App.* 36
Company Law Settlement Scheme, 2000, see *App.* 35

Scrutineers, appointment of, s. 184, p. 1735

SEBI Act, 1992, see *App.* 151
offences under, investigation by Delhi Special Police Establishment, s. 68A, p. 822

SEBI Advisory Committee on Derivatives—Report on Development and Regulation of Derivative Markets in India submitted to SEBI, see *App.* 170

SEBI Appellate Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 2000, Notifications—Appointment of members of Securities Appellate Tribunal, *GSR 854(E), dated 30-10-2003,* see *App.* 153(1)
Appointment of members of Securities Appellate Tribunal, *GSR 855(E), dated 30-10-2003,* see *App.* 153(2)

SEBI (Annual Report) Rules, 1994, see *App.* 160

SEBI (Appeal to Central Government) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 152

SEBI Appellate Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 153

SEBI (Appellate Tribunal Procedure) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 153

SEBI (Bankers to An Issue) Regulations, 1994, see *App.* 220
Furnishing of details of Share Applications/Applications Monies received by a Banker to an issue, *BTI (GI Series) Circular No. 1 (2000-2001), dt. 11-5-2001,* see *App.* 221(3)
Instruction by SEBI to the Bankers to an issue who are coming out with their own public right issues, *BII Circular No. 1 (98), dt. 11-6-1998,* see *App.* 221(2)
Instruction to Bankers to a Public/Rights issued by Capital, *RBTI (GI Series) Circular No. 1 (1997-98), dt. 1-9-1997,* see *App.* 221(1)

SEBI (Bankers to An Issue) Rules, 1994, see *App.* 219

SEBI (Central Database of Market Participant) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 157

SEBI (Central Listing Authority) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 166
procedure for obtaining letter of recommendation, s. 73, p. 895

SEBI (Collective Investment Scheme) Regulations, 1999, s. 58A, p. 758

SEBI (Credit Rating Agencies) Regulations, 1999, s. 117, p. 1423

SEBI (Custodian of Securities) Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 202

SEBI Circulars and FAQs on Mutual Funds, see *App.* 185

SEBI Circulars and Press Releases on Derivatives, circulars, see *App.* 173
Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Derivatives Trading, see *App.* 173(43)
Issuance of Offshore Derivative Instruments by Registered Foreign Institutional Investors (FII) , see *App.* 173(44)
Minimum contract size for Exchange traded derivative contracts, see *App.* 173(45)
Regulations, Securities and Exchange Board of India (Foreign Institutional Investors) (Amendment) Regulations, 2004, see *App.* 173(42)

SEBI Circulars, see *App.* 221

SEBI Directions on Inter Depositories Transfer of Beneficial Ownership of Securities, see *App.* 204
Abolishing of Account Closure Charges, *Press Release, Dated 31-10-2002*, see *App.* 204(24)
Account Closure Charges, *D&CC/FITTC/CIR - 12/2002, October 30, 2002*, see *App.* 204(23)
Approval of Amendments to bye Laws/Rules of Stock Exchanges And Depositories, *LGL/Cir-2/2003, February 19, 2003*, see *App.* 204(29)
Bhave Committee's Report, Invitation of Views/Comments on Bhave Committee's Report, *Press Release, Dated 9-7-2002*, see *App.* 204(19)
Commitee on Straight Through Processing, *Press Release, Dated 26-7-2002*, see *App.* 204(21)
Custodian, increase net worth, amendment to allow custodians to increase their net worth to Rs. 50 crores in 5 years, *PR 114/96, dated 18th November, 1996*, see *App.* 204(3)
Debt Instruments, Mandatory Admission of Debt Instruments on both the Depositories, *D&CC/FITTC/CIR - 13/2002, November 1, 2002*, see *App.* 204(25)
Delaying Dematerialisation, Prosecution of Manna Glass Tech Industries Limited for Delaying Dematerialisation, *Press Release, Dated 9-12-2002*, see *App.* 204(26)
Dematerialisation of Securities and Rolling Settlement, *Press Releases PR 35/2000, dt 8-2-2000*, see *App.* 204(9)
Dematerialisation of Securities, *Press Release, Dated 24-5-2000*, see *App.* 204(11)
—, *Press Releases, Dated 13-10-2000*, see *App.* 204(14)
Dematerialisation, *Press Release, 8-2-2002*, see *App.* 204(18)
—, *Press Release, Dated 5-10-1999*, see *App.* 204(7)
Dematerialised Securities, Trading and Settlement in Dematerialised Securities, *Press Release, Dated 16-8-1999*, see *App.* 204(6)
Depositories and Custodians—FAQ, see *App.* 204(1)
Depositories Ordinance, 1995, *Press Note, dated 21-9-1995*, see *App.* 204(2)
Directions on Inter-Depository Transfer of Beneficial Ownership of Securities, *SMDRP/POLICY /CIR-13/99, dated 19th May, 1999*, see *App.* 204(5)
Guidelines for Acknowledgement of Transfer/Allotment of Shares in Private Sector Banks, *DBOD. No. PSBS.BC.64/16. 13.100/2003-04, Dated 3-2-2004*, see *App.* 204(32)
Guidelines to Depository Participants for Opening Beneficiary Accounts, *SMDRP/POLICY/CIR-36/2000, dated 4th August, 2000*, see *App.* 204(13)
Information from Depository Participants (DPS) Regarding Processing of Applications for Dematerialisation, *SEBI/MRD/DEP/Cir-44/2003, December 12, 2003*, see *App.* 204(31)
Inter-Depository Transfers of Securities, *Press Release, Dated 15-10-1999*, see *App.* 204(8)
MRD/DEP/CIR- 22/2003, dt. 1-8-2003, see *App.* 204(30)
Physical and Electronic Share Registry Work, Appointment of Common Agency for, *Press Release, Dated 1-1-2003*, see *App.* 204(27)
Press Release—
—, *Dated 23-6-2000*, see *App.* 204(12)
—, *Dated 11-1-2001*, see *App.* 204(15)
—, *Dated, 21-11-2001*, see *App.* 204(16)
—, *Dated 19-12-2001*, see *App.* 204(17)
—, *Dated 12-8-2002*, see *App.* 204(22)
Reduction of Cost to the Demat Investors, Bhave Committee Report on, *Press Release, July 22, 2002*, see *App.* 204(20)
Regulation—Audit Reports, Submission of Audit reports under Regulation 55A of SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulation, 1996, see *App.* 204(34)
Secretarial Audit and Reconciliation of the Admitted, issued and Listed Capital, *Press Release, Dated 2-1-2003*, see *App.* 204(28)
Trading and Settlement of Securities in Dematerialised Form, *Press Release, Dated 23-5-2000*, see *App.* 204(10)
Transfer-cum-Demant Scheme, *SEBI/MRD/Cir-10/2004, Dated 10-2-2004*, see *App.* 204(33)
Uniform Norms and practices for Custodians of Securities, *Press Release No. PR 98/96, dated 3rd October, 1996*, see *App.* 204(4)

SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 218

SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 217

SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003, see *App.* 167

SEBI (Depositories and Participants) Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 201

SEBI (Employees Stock Option Scheme and Employees Stock Purchase Scheme) Guidelines, 1999, see *App.* 174

SEBI (Foreign Venture Capital Investor) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 197, 198
Cancellation of Registration of Uttar Pradesh Venture Capital Fund and Investor Venture Capital Fund Trust, Press Release, dt. 29-11-2001, see *App.* 198(5)
Establishment of Infinity Venture India Fund, Press Release, dt. 10-12-1999, see *App.* 198(3)
Establishment of Various Venture Capital Funds, Press Release, dt. 20-6-2000, see *App.* 198(4)
Reporting of Venture Capital Activity, SEBI/MFD/VCF/CIR No. 2/7350/2003, dt. 29-4-2003, see *App.* 198(6)
Report of Advisory Committee on Venture Capital, PR No.249/2003, dt. 16-10-2003, see *App.* 198(7)
Venture Capital Funds, Press Release, Dated 5-8-1999, see *App.* 198(1)

SEBI (Form of Annual Statement of Accounts and Records) Rules, 1994, see *App.* 159

SEBI FAQs on Public Issue and Secondary Market, see *App.* 164

SEBI FAQS, Derivatives—FAQs & General Notes, see *App.* 172
on Public Issue and Secondary Market, see *App.* 164
SEBI Circulars and FAQs on Mutual Funds, see *App.* 185

SEBI Foreign Institutional Investors Regulations, 1995, see *App.* 193
Clarifications regarding operations of Foreign Institutional Investors, *Circular No. FITTC/FII/04/2002, dated 19-7-2002,* see *App.* 194(7)
Convertible Debentures, Purchase/Sale of Shares and/or Convertible Debentures by SEBI Registered, Foreign Institutional Investors (FIIs) Under Portfolio Investment Scheme (PIS), *A.P. (DIR Series) Circular No. 53, dt. 17-12-2003,* see *App.* 194(18)
Debt Securities, Investment by Foreign Institutional Investors in Debt Securities, *Press Release ref. No. PR 112/96, dt. 9-11-1996,* see *App.* 194(3)
Derivative Contracts, Investment by FIIs/NRI in Exchange Traded (ETDCs), *A.P. (DIR Series) Circular No. 13, dt. 1-10-2003,* see *App.* 194(12)
—, Trading by FIIs and NRIs in Exchange Traded, *SEBI/DNPD/Cir-17/2003/10/29, dt. 29-10-2003,* see *App.* 194(14)
—, Trading by Foreign Institutional Investors in Traded Derivative Contracts, *SMD/DC/CIR-11/02, dt. 12-2-2002,* see *App.* 194(6)
Derivative Instruments, Issuance of Offshore by, Registered Foreign Institutional Investors (FII), *Circular No. IMD/CUST/8/2003, Dt. 8-8-2003,* see *App.* 194(11)
—, Issuance of Offshore Derivative Instruments by Registered Foreign Institutional Investors (FII), *Circular No. IMD/CUST/02/2004, dt. 26-1-2004,* see *App.* 194(22)
—, Issuance of Offshore Derivative Instruments by Registered Foreign Institutional Investors (FII), see *App.* 194(23)
Foreign Institutional Investors-FAQ, see *App.* 194(1)
Forward Cover for Foreign Institutional Investors, *A.P. (DIR Series) Circular No. 50, dt. 16-11-2002,* see *App.* 194(8)
Frequently Asked Questions By Foreign Institutional Investors, *Circular No FITTC/CUST/09/2000, dt. 21-9-2000,* see *App.* 194(1)
Government Dated Securities, Investment by Foreign Institutional Investors (FIIs) in Government Dated Securities And Treasury Bills, *Press Release Reference No. 1997-98/1198, dt. 11-6-1998,* see *App.* 194(4)
Half Yearly Reconciliation of FII Data, *Circular No. IMD/CUST/10/2003, dt. 8-12-2003,* see *App.* 194(17)
Interest Rate Derivatives Market, Participation of Banks in Interest Rate Derivatives Market, *MIR&SD/DR-1/MSS/Cir-08/2004, dt. 20-1-2004,* see *App.* 194(20)
Issuance of Offshore Derivative Instruments by Registered Foreign Institutional Investors (FII), *Circular No. IMD/CUST/9/2003, dt. 20-10-2003,* see *App.* 194(15)
Lottery Business, Gambling and Betting, Prohibition on Foreign Investment in, *Press Note No. 5, (2002 series), dt. 5-7-2002,* see *App.* 194(10)
Offshore Derivative Instrument issued by Registered FIIs, *IMD/DFIIC/9/2003, dt. 24-9-2003,* see *App.* 194(16)

* For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise

SEBI Foreign Institutional Investors Regulations, 1995 (*Contd.*)
Participatory Notes (PNS), FII Investments through Participatory Notes (PNS), *Press Release, Dated 23-1-2004*, see *App.* 194(21)
Procedure for write off of securities held by Foreign Institutional Investors and Sub-Accounts and Reporting to SEBI, *Circular No. FITTC/FII/02/2002, dt. 15-5-2002*, see *App.*. 194(9)
Registration of Sub-Accounts, Revised Procedure for Grant of Registration of Sub-Accounts of Registered Foreign Institutional Investors, *Issued by FIITC Department of SEBI vide PR 237/98, dt. 27-8-1998*, see *App.* 194(5)
Registration/Renewal of Foreign Institutional Investors and Sub Accounts, *Circular No. IMD/FII/12/2004, 1-1-2004*, see *App.* 194(19)
SEBI Circulars and FAQs, see *App.* 194

SEBI Guidance Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257

SEBI Guidelines for Advertisement by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/4/51/2000, dt. 5-6-2000*, see *App.* 185(9)

SEBI Guidelines for Calculation for Sale and Repurchase Price and Rounding Off NAV, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/08/514/2002, dt. 22-7-2002*, see *App.* 185(31)

SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
Applicability of the Guidelines, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, *App.* 162
Repeal and Saving, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVII, *App.* 162
SEBI Circulars, see *App.* 163

SEBI Guidelines for Investment in Foreign Securities by Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/17/419/2002, dt. 30-3-2002*, see *App.* 185(26)
SEBI/MFD/CIR No. 2/6855/2003, dt. 4-4-2003, see App. 185(42)

SEBI Guidelines for Investment/Trading in Securities by Employees of Asset Management Companies and Mutual Fund Trustee Companies, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 4/216/2001, dt. 8-5-2001*, see *App.* 185(18)

SEBI Guidelines for Issuing Certified Copies of Orders and Circulars, 2003, see *App.* 158

SEBI Guidelines for Launch of Additional Plans by Mutual Funds under Existing Schemes, *Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 12/175/01, dt. 15-2-2001*, see *App.* 185(14)

SEBI Guidelines for Market Makers, see *App.* 224

SEBI Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Derivatives Trading, see *App.* 185(52)

SEBI Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Securities Lending Scheme, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/01/047/99. dt. 10-2-1999*, see *App.* 185(2)

SEBI Guidelines for Participation by Mutual Funds in Trading in Derivative Products, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/011/061/2000, dt. 1-2-2000*, see *App.* 185(6)
MFD/CIR/21/25467/2002, dt. 31-12-2002, see App. 185(38)

SEBI Guidelines for processing of documents and Norms for processing of Transfers/Objection, by RTI/STA, see *App.* 211

SEBI Guidelines for Valuation of Securities for Mutual Funds and Guidelines for Identification and Provisioning for NPAs, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/8/92/2000, dt. 18-9-2000*, see *App.* 185(11)

SEBI Guidelines for Valuation of Securities, Mutual Funds, *Circular No. MFD/CIR/14/088/2001, dt. 28-3-2001, Issued by SEBI*, see *App.* 185(15)
Circular No. MFD/CIR No. 14/442/2002, dt. 20-2-2002, see App. 185(23)

SEBI Guidelines for Valuation of unlisted equity shares for calculation of NAVs of mutual funds schemes, *Circular No. MFD/Cir/03/526/2002, dt. 9-5-2002*, see *App.* 185(27)

SEBI Guidelines on Issue of Corporate Debt Securities though Private Placement by Listed Company, see *App.* 165
Clarification—Secondary Market for Corporate Debt Securities—Clarification, *SEBI/MRD/SE/AT/46/2003, dt. 22-12-2003*, see *App.* 165(4)
Press Release—Division of Police, *PR No.286/2003, Dt. 25-11-2003*, see *App.* 165(3)
—, Final guidelines on investment by the FIs in debt securities, *DBS.FID No. C-11/01.02.00/2003-04, dt. 8-1-2004*, see *App.* 165(5)

SEBI Guidelines on Issue of Corporate Debt Securities though Private Placement by Listed Company (*Contd.*)
—, No.21/2003, dt. 16-1-2003, see *App.* 165(1)
—, Secondary Market for Corporate Debt Securities, *SEBI/MRD/SE/AT/36/2003/ 30/09, dt. 30-9-2003*, see *App.* 165(2)

SEBI Guidelines on preferential allotment of shares or warrants/FCDs/PCDs to select group of persons under section 81(1A), see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162

SEBI Guidelines, Books and Registers maintained under, s. 2(8), p. 35
debentures with warrants, disclosures of, s. 117, p. 1423
delisting of securities, s. 81, p. 1040
extension of time for refund of moneys, s. 73, p. 901
NCDs and DSCEs of an unlisting company, listing of, s. 73, p. 909
net offer to public, s. 73, p. 906

SEBI (Informal Guidance) Scheme, 2003, see *App.* 156

SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002, see *App.* 175

SEBI (Merchant Bankers) Regulations, 1992, see *App.* 206, 207

SEBI, Model Bye-Laws of Stock Exchange, 2003, see *App.* 249

SEBI (Ombudsman) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 232

SEBI Operational Guidelines/Instructions to Registrars to an Issue (RTI) and Share Transfer Agents (STA), vide SEBI Circular, dated 11-10-1994, see *App.* 212

SEBI Orders, writ petition against, s. 56, p. 643

SEBI (Portfolio Manager) Rules, 1993, text of, s. 76, p. 948

SEBI (Procedure for Board Meeting) Regulations, 2001, see *App.* 161

SEBI (Procedure for Holding Enquiry and Imposing Penalties by Adjudicating Officer) Rules, 1995, see *App.* 154

SEBI (Procedure for Holding Enquiry by Enquiry Officer and Imposing Penalties) Regulations, 2002, see *App.* 155

SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 1995, see *App.* 182

SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 181

SEBI (Prohibition of Insider Trading) Regulations, 1992, see *App.* 180

SEBI Powers, administration of certain provisions by, s. 55A, p. 633
listed public company, on, s. 55A, p. 633

SEBI (Registrars to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 210
Recommendations of Chandrasekaran Committee Report for Expediting and Simplifying Share Transfer Procedures, *Press Release (Ref. No. 82/97), dated 16th July, 1997*, see *App.* 213(1)
RTIs/STAs Directed to Submit Net Worth Certificate Within 2 Months from the Close of Each Financial Year *RTI, Circular No. 3 (98-99), dated 18-1-1999*, see *App.* 213(2)
Delay in Processing Dematerialisation Requests, see *App.* 213(3)
Treatment of stock-invests, after basis of allotment is finalised, see *App.* 213(4)
Application for Granting Certificates of Registration, *RRTI Circular No. 1 (2002-2003), dt. 25-9-2002*, see *App.* 213(5)
Application procedure for registration/renewal as Registrar to an Issue and/or Share Transfer Agent, *SEBI/RRTI Circular No. 2 (2002-2003), dt. 20-11-2002*, see *App.* 213(6)
Common Agency for Physical and Electronic Share Registry Work, *Circular No. D&CC/FITTC/CIR-15/2002, dt. 22-12-2002*, see *App.* 213(7)
Secretarial Audit for total Admitted Capital, *D&CC/FITTC/CIR – 16/2002 December 31, 2002*, see *App.* 213(8)
Reconciliation of the Admitted, issued and Listed Capital, *D&CC/FITTC/CIR – 17/2002 December 31, 2002*, see *App.* 213(9)

SEBI (Registrars to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents) Regulations, 1993 (*Contd.*)
Appointment of common agency for physical and electronic share registry work, *PR-02/2003, dt. 1-1-2003*, see *App.* 213(10)
Extension of time for appointment of common agency for share registry work, *D&CC/FITTC/CIR-18/2003, dt. 12-2-2003*, see *App.* 213(11)

SEBI (Registrars to an Issue and Share Transfer Agents) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 209

SEBI Regularisation Scheme 2002 under SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 179

SEBI Regulations, ordinary resolution, passing under, s. 189, p. 1782
special resolutions, passing under, s. 189, p. 1782

SEBI Regulations/Guidelines, buy-back of securities, s. 173, p. 1684
employees stock option/stock purchase scheme, s. 173, p. 1684
explanatory statement, requirement under, s. 173, p. 1684
preferential issue of shares under, s. 173, p. 1685
sweat equity shares, issue of, s. 173, p. 1684

SEBI Scheme for Introduction of Exchange Traded Interest Rate Derivative Contracts, see *App.* 169

SEBI Suggestive Bye-laws for Regulation and Control of Trading and Settlement of Derivative Contracts, see *App.* 171

SEBI (Stock-Brokers and Sub-Brokers) Regulations, 1992, see *App.* 222
—, Circulars, Clarifications etc., see *App.* 224

SEBI (Stock-Brokers and Sub-Brokers) Rules, 1992, see *App.* 222

SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 177
public sector undertakings, s. 108, p. 1258
Standardised Formats of Reports/Records, etc. in terms of Specific Provisions of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 178
SEBI Regularisation Scheme 2002 under, see *App.* 179

SEBI Take-over Regulations, transfer of shares, violation of, in, s. 111A, p. 1378

SEBI (Underwriters) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 215

SEBI (Underwriters) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 214

SEBI (Venture Capital Funds) Regulation, 1996, see *App.* 195, 196
40 Per Cent. Ceiling on VCC/VCF Investment In Equity Capital of one VCU Removed, *PIB Press Release, New Delhi, dated December 30, 1999*, see *App.* 196(1)
Venture Capital Fund Companies, DNBS (PD) CC No. 22/02.59/2002-03, dt. 28-11-2002, see *App.* 196(2)

SEBI, Act, 1992, see *App.* 151
SEBI, Additional Guidelines relating to Disclosures in Offer Documents, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
—, administrative functions under the Companies Act, s. 56, p. 636
—, administrative powers under Depositories Act, s. 56, p. 636
—, advertisement, guidelines by, s. 66, p. 813
—, allotment of shares, guidelines by, s. 73, p. 904
—, allotment, offences, complaint, delegation of powers to, s. 73, p. 904
—, appeals to, under SCRA, refusal by stock exchange, against, s. 73, p. 896
—, Appellate Tribunal Procedure Rules, 2000, see *App.* 153
—, application money and share applications, guidelines, s. 69, p. 831
—, Asset Management Companies, guidelines for, (AMCs), see *App.* 191
—, Bonus Issue, guidelines, s. 81, p. 1029
—, book building processes, Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1052
—, —, Guidelines relating to, see Chap. XI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
—, call up of issue price, public issues in, guidelines, s. 69, p. 831
—, calls on shares, s. 91, p. 1131
—, Capital Adequacy norms for stock brokers, see *App.* 224
—, capital issues, control by, s. 56, p. 636
—, —, control over, s. 56, p. p. 636

SEBI, Act, 1992, (*Contd.*)
SEBI, carry forward system, s. 76, p. 950
—, Certified Copies of Orders and Circulars, SEBI Guidelines for Issuing Certified Copies of Orders and Circulars, 2003, see *App.* 158
—, Collective Investment Schemes Regulations, 1999, see *App.* 188
—, complaint against Stock Exchanges, addresses for, s. 2(39), p. 69
—, Credit Rating Agencies Regulations, 1999, see *App.* 205
—, custodian of securities, Regulation, s. 187-C, p. 1760
—, Debenture Trustee Regulations, 1993, s. 118, p. 1449
—, Debenture Trustee Rules, 1993, s. 118, p. 1449
—, Decentraliation of work relating to complaints against brokers and Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 235
—, Decentralisation, of work relating to vetting of offer documents and registration of Merchant Bankers, see *App.* 235
—, defined, s. 2(45B), p. 85
—, Deployment of Issue Proceeds, guidelines, s. 73, p. 899
—, Depositories and Participants Regulations, s. 187-C, p. 1760
—, Directions on Inter-depository Transfer of Beneficial Ownership of Securities, see *App.* 204
—, Disclosures in Prospectus, Guidelines relating to, see Chap. VI of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
—, Dot.com Companies Committee on, see *App.* 228
—, failure to refund, on refusal of listing, prosecution, s. 73, p. 903
—, Foreign Brokers, acting for registered foreign institutional investors guidelines, s. 76, p. 947
—, Foreign Institutional Investors, SEBI Guidelines for, see *App.* 192
—, Foreign Venture Capital Investor Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 197
—, Form of Application for Registration of Investors Association with, see *App.* 233
—, Fraudulent inducement to invest money, complainant power, delegated to, s. 68, p. 820
—, fraudulent trade practices, securities in, prohibition of, s. 56, p. 650
—, good and bad delivery, uniform norms, s. 108, p. 1216
—, Good or Bad Delivery of Documents, Guidelines for, (dated 30-8- 1991), see *App.* 258
—, Green Shoe Option, Guidelines, s. 60B, p. 784
—, Grievances, computerised process of redressal of Investors grievances, see *App.* 234
—, Guidelines, and Clarification, list of, s. 73, p. 908
—, Guidence Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257
—, Intermediaries associated with the securities market-dealers in securities outside the stock exchanges, registration of, see *App.* 224
—, Intermediaries, making an application for registration under section 12 for different categories of Intermediaries, see *App.* 224
—, Internate realted issues, see *App.* 229
—, Issue Advertisement, Guidelines for, see Chap. IX of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
—, Issue of NOC by SEBI regarding release of deposit placed by Issuer Companies with Regional Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 236
—, Lead Managers, guidelines issued to Merchant Bankers and, prior to issue of codified RMB (GI Series), see *App.* 208
—, List of Rules and Regulations issued by, s. 73, p. 923
—, market makers, guidelines for, s. 76, p. 947
—, membership, norms, for, s. 73, p. 860
—, Merchant Bankers, guidelines for prior to issue of codified RMB (GI series), see *App.* 208
—, Merchant Banking, Regulations, s. 73, p. 913, 923
—, Minimum Subscription, as to, guidelines, s. 69, p. 828
—, Mutual Fund Companies, as to UTI, not applicable to, s. 111, p. 1306
—, Mutual Fund Companies, Development Financial Institutions guidelines on issue of securities by, see *App.* 190
—, —, guidelines for money market operations of Mutual Funds, dated 25-6-1992, see *App.* 187
—, Mutual Fund Regulations, 1996, see *App.* 184
—, Mutual Funds Guidelines for, see *App.* 183
—, name of, new stock exchange, advance approval by, s. 20, p. 420
—, offer for sale, applicability of, guidelines, s. 64, p. 810
—, oversubscription, as to, guidelines, s. 69, p. 831
—, Portfolio Manager, SEBI (Portfolio Managers) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 226
—, —, —, SEBI FAQs on Portfolio Managers related issues, see *App.* 225, 227
—, Powers of, Companies Act, under, s. 55A, p. 632
—, Powers under the Companies Act, 1956 administered by the Securities and Exchange Board of India, see *App.* 142

SEBI, Act, 1992, (*Contd.*)
SEBI, pricing by companies issuing securities, on, s. 78, p. 992
—, pricing of issues, guidelines, s. 81, p. 1067
—, prohibition of fraudulent & unfair practices in securities markets, regulations, s. 68, p. 820
—, promoters and promoters group, s. 62, p. 791
—, —, definition, guidelines as to, s. 62, p. 792
—, prospectus issue, requirements under, s. 60, p. 775
—, —, requirements, for, s. 60, p. 775
—, prospectus, disclosures Guidelines, terms of present issue, s. 56, p. 689
—, —, guidelines, s. 56, p. 652
—, —, wrong statement by expert, prosecution, delegation o f power to, s. 59, p. 772
—, PSU's, floatation of bonds, by, guideline, s. 117, p. 1431
—, reservation basis, issue of securities on, s. 81, p. 1049
—, Rights issue, SEBI Guidelines, s. 81, p. 1023
—, Rules and Regulations, issued under, list of, s. 73, p. 903
—, share application forms, requirements as to, s. 56, p. 647
—, Share warrants, issue of, s. 114, p. 1405
—, Stock Brokers and Sub-Brokers Regulations, 1992, Rules, 1992, s. 76, p. 947
—, Stock Brokers, capital adequacy norms for, s. 76, p. 950
—, —, Guidelines for dealing by foreign brokers in India on behalf of registered foreign institutional investors, see *App.* 224
—, —, guidelines on precautions to be exercised by member-brokers of Stock Exchange while dealing with shares on behalf of their clients, see *App.* 224
—, —, Regulation of transaction between member-brokers and their clients, see *App.* 224
—, Stock exchange Brokers, precautions in dealings for clients, s. 76, p. 948
—, Stock Exchange, carry forward transactions, revision, s. 2(39), p. 68
—, —, unrecognised, caution against, s. 2(39), p. 66
—, Stockinvest Scheme, see *App.* 230
—, Subscription list, duration of, guidelines, s. 72, p. 840
—, take over regulations, explanatory statement in notice of meeting, s. 173, p. 1679
—, Underwriters-Operational Guidelines/Instructions with Model Underwriting Agreement, see *App.* 216
—, —, Rules and Regulations, s. 76, p. 944
—, underwriting of issue, guidelines, s. 76, p. 943
—, unfair trade practices, securities in, prohibition of, s. 56, p. 650
—, —, securities markets in, regulations, s. 76, p. 949
—, untrue statements, in prospectus, delegation of power of complainant to, s. 63, p. 808
—, venture capital funds regulations, s. 72, p. 846
—, —, regulations, s. 72, p. 846
—, vetting, debt instruments, offer documents of, SEBI by, s. 56, p. 652
—, writ petition for general directions to, s. 78, p. 992

Secondary Market, SEBI FAQs on public issue and Secondary Market, see *App.* 164

Secretarial Standards, Annual General Meeting (SS-2), s. 166, p. 1632
chairman, s. 175, p. 1704
extraordinary general meeting, s. 169, p. 1653
General Meeting (SS-2), s. 165, p. 1612
minutes, s. 193, p. 1817
notice of meetings, s. 171, p. 1662
poll, s. 180, p. 1728
proxy, s. 176, p. 1716
quorum, s. 174, p. 1692
Resolution, withdrawal/rescinding/modification, s. 189, p. 1788
voting, s. 177, p. 1720

Secretaries and Treasurers, definition, omission of, s. 2(44), p. 70

Secretary in whole-time practice, s. 2 (45-A), pp. 30, 80
provisions relating to, s. 2(45-A), p. 82
regulations affecting, s. 2 (45-A), p. 80
signing of annual return, s. 161(1), pp. 1594, 1595
statutory provisions affecting him, s. 2(45-A), p. 80

Secretary, accounts, authentication of, s. 2(45), pp. 30, 80
administration, whole field, short of managerial function, s. 2(45), p. 75
advisory role, Cadbury's report on, s. 2(45), p. 76

Secretary (*Contd.*)
advocate, restriction upon practising as, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
agent as, true legal position, s. 2(45), p. 79
annual return, signing of, by, s. 161, p. 1595
Appointment, Companies (Appointment and Qualifications of Secretary) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 7
authentication of accounts, s. 2(45), p. 80
authentication of documents, prescribed authority for, s. 2 (45), p. 77
buy back shares, destruction in presence of, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
Companies (Appointment and Qualifications of Secretary), Rules, 1988, s. 2(45), p. 72
Company Secretaries Act, 1980 Regulations prescribed by, s. 2(45), p. 80
compliance office, as, Listing agreement, as to transfer of shares, s. 111A, p. 1390
covered under expression, 'officer who is in default', s. 5, p. 140
defined, s. 2(45), p. 30, s. 2, p. 70
development of concept, s. 2(45), p. 70
duties, s. 2, p. 74
—, compliance with laws, s. 2(45), p. 78
—, ministerial or administrative, s. 2(45), p. 74
—, UK Institute of Secretaries' views, s. 2(45), p. 77
existing secretaries, s. 2, p. 73
fiduciary duties of, s. 2(45), p. 77
functions, administration, whole field of, s. 2(45), p. 75
—, Companies Act and other legislations, s. 2(45), p. 74
—, powers etc., s. 2, p. 75
ICSI, authority as, within Art 12 of Constitution, s. 2(45), p. 80
individuals alone can be, s. 2(45), p. 30, s. 2, p. 70
legal representation before Company Law Tribunal, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
liability, criminal, for non compliance s. 2(45), p. 79
—, misapplication of funds, for s. 2(45), p. 79
—, offences for, s. 2(45), p. 79
litigation, without authority, s. 2(45) p. 75
management after, s. 197-A, p. 1829
managerial functions, s. 2(45), p. 75
not to discharge the function of the board, s. 2(45), p. 75, s. 2, p. 75
notice, cannot issue, s. 2(45), p. 75
offences, liability for, s. 2(45), p. 79
officer of company, is an, s. 2, p. 59
position of, judicial view, s. 2(45), p. 78
powers and duties, s. 2(45), p. 74
powers, wider, s. 2(45), p. 78
professional privilege, s. 2, p. 80
qualifications of, s. 2, p. 72
—, exemption to section 25 companies, s. 2(45), p. 74
qualified, companies with Rs. two crores capital, s. 2(45), p. 72
recognition under rules, s. 2(45-A), p. 83
register transfer of shares, cannot, s. 2(45), p. 74
registration of memorandum and articles, de··aration by, s. 33, p. 469
removal by managing director, s. 2(45), p. 79
representation by, s. 2(45), p. 76
role, illustrative cases, s. 2(45), p. 79
statutory duties, provisions relating to, s. 2, p. 74
whole-time practice, s. 2 (45-A), p. 30

Section 25 Companies, advantages of, s. 25, p. 438
annual general meeting, s. 166, p. 1630
applicability of, s. 153-B and s. 187-B, s. 15 3B, p. 1579
application fees payable by, s. 25, p. 445
application of Stamp and Sales Tax Acts s. 25, p. 443
articles empowering Central Government to give direction, s. 25, p. 444
chamber of commerce, not a State for writ jurisdiction, s. 25, p. 443
charitable, exemption from Company Secretary Qualification Rules, s. 2(45), p. 74
—, meaning of, s. 25, p. 438
clubs registered as, s. 25, p. 438
Department's view as to application of sections, s. 25, p. 438
Departmental instructions, as regards procedure for grant of licence under section 25 of the Companies Act, see *App.* 9

Section 25 Companies (*Contd.*)
exemption from Act, power to grant, s. 25, p. 440
exemption from s. 147, p. 1552
exemption from s. 370, to Associated Chamber of Commerce and Industry, s. 25, p. 443
exemption from s. 372, to Western UP Chamber of Commerce & Industry, s. 25, p. 443
existing company, grant of licence, s. 25, p. 440
fees for registration of an association not for profit, see *App.* 133
firm as member, s. 25, p. 439
holding company as, s. 25, p. 438
licence under other laws, s. 25, p. 444
licence, cancellation of, s. 25, p. 442
limited liability with obligations and privileges, s. 25, p. 438
listed with OTCEI, transfer of shares, s. 25, p. 445
MAOCARO, application of, s. 25, p. 444
meetings, exemptions to, s. 171, p. 1662
member, nomination by member company, s. 25, p. 442
merger with, business undertaking, s. 25, p. 442
minimum paid up capital requirement, application of, s. 3, pp. 84, 94
objects, alteration with approval, s. 25, p. 442
powers, delegation to regional directors, s. 25, p. 445
rectification of register of members, s. 111 application of, s. 111, p. 1354
registration fee, s. 25, p. 445
revocation of licence, discontinuation of name, s. 25, p. 442
secretary, qualification, exemption, s. 2(45), p. 65
specified capital, statement not required, s. 25, p. 437
suspension from membership, s. 25, p. 444
shares capital, without, s. 3, p. 110

Section 43A Companies, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Deemed Public Companies"**
abolition of, s. 43A, p. 570

Secured creditors, appeal by, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 137
depositors are not, s. 58A, p. 731

Securities Appellate Tribunal, appeal to, refusal by SEBI for enlistment, s. 22A, SCR Act, s. 73, p. 896
jurisdiction of, s. 10, p. 208, s. 10-GB, p. 317

Securities cases, special court for trial of, s. 108, p. 1259

Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, 1956, see *App.* 246
CLB, independent from under the Companies Act, s. 111, p. 1302
listed companies, grounds for refusal of transfer of shares, s. 111, p. 1298
mandatory as to period within which company should dispose of transfer applications, s. 111, p. 1308
non-listed companies application to, s. 111, p. 1298
transfer of shares, position under, s. 108, p. 1208
—, procedural requirements of section 22A(5) not mandatory, s. 111, p. 1308

Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957, see *App.* 247

Securities Contracts (Regulations) Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal Rules, 2000, see *App.* 248

Securities in Dematerialised Form, Option to Receive Securities in Dematerialised Form, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Securities Ineligible, Securities Ineligible for Computation of Promoters Contribution, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162

Securities Markets, SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 181
—, SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 1995, see *App.* 182

Securities premium, reduction of, s. 101, p. 1167

Securities Transfer, Guidence Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257

Securities, etc., • SEE ALSO UNDER **"SEBI"**
advantages, disadvantages of paperless, s. 150, p. 1562
and Exchange Board, defined, s. 2(45B), p. 30
branding of, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, see *App.* 162
companies barred not to issue security, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
compulsory delisting, s. 73, p. 926
conditions for issue of, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
debt, s. 2(12), p. 39
definition, s. 2(45AA), p. 83
delisted, reinstatement of, s. 73, p. 927
Delisting of, SEBI (Delisting of Securities) Guidelines, 2003, see *App.* 167
demat form, issue in, s. 68B, p. 823
dematerialised form, issue of, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
Depositories Act, s. 2A, p. 92
derivative, as, s. 2(12B), p. 43
etc. Special Court (Trial of Offences Relating to Transactions in Securities) Act, 1992, see *App.* 292
hybrid, as, definition, s. 2(19A), p. 50
initial public offerings, unlisted companies, by, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
inter-se transfer of locked-in securities amongst promtoers, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, see *App.* 162
inter-se transfer of securities amongst promtoers, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, see *App.* 162
meaning of, s. 2(45AA), p. 30
operation in, by Banks, Guidelines, s. 111, p. 1306
option in, defined, s. 2(31A), pp. 28, 61
private placement of debt, listed company, s. 117, p. 1421
public issues by listed companies, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
RBI Guidelines, pricing of shares by Private Sector Banks, s. 81, p. 1078
SEBI (Delisting of Securities) 2003, guidelines, s. 73, p. 925
stamp duty, depository mode, s. 108, p. 1212
units as, s. 2(45AA), p. 85
voluntary delisting of, s. 73, p. 925
voluntary delisting, procedure for, s. 73, p. 925

Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets & Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002, see *App.* 71
an overview, s. 4A, p. 135
Financial assets and enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002, s. 1, p. 7

Securitisation Companies and Reconstruction Companies (Reserve Bank) Guidelines and Directions, 2003, see *App.* 74
Securitisation Companies, Form of Application for Certificate of Registration to Commence/Carry on the Business of a Securitisation Company or Reconstruction Company, see *App.* 73
Guidance Notes for Acquisition of Financial assets and issue of Security Receipts by Securitisation Companies and Reconstruction Companies, see *App.* 75
Guidelines on sale of financial assets to Securitisation Company (SC)/Reconstruction Company (RC) (created under the Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002) and related issues, see *App.* 76
Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets & Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002, see *App.* 71
Securtisation, Security Interest (Enforcement) Rules, 2002, see *App.* 72
Securitisation, assets reconstruction, s. 4A, p. 136
Form of Application for Certificate of Registration to Commence/Carry on the Business of a Securitisation Company or Reconstruction Company, see *App.* 73
Guidance Note on Accounting for as issued by ICAI, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-61)
Guidance Notes for Acquisition of Financial assets and issue of Security Receipts by Securitisation Companies and Reconstruction Companies, see *App.* 75
Guidelines on sale of financial assets to Securitisation Company (SC)/Reconstruction Company (RC) (created under the Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of Security Interest Act, 2002) and related issues, see *App.* 76
Securitisation Companies and Reconstruction Companies (Reserve Bank) Guidelines and Directions, 2003, see *App.* 74
Security Interest (Enforcement) Rules, 2002, see *App.* 72

Security Interest (Enforcement) Rules, 2002, see *App.* 72

Security Interest Act, 2002, Securitisation and Reconstruction of Financial Assets and Enforcement of, s. 1, p. 7

Security Interest, Central Registry, establishment for registration of, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 137
creation of, Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137
enforcement of Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137
enforcement rules, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 138
exemption of, Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137
registration of, Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137

Segment Reporting, (AS-17), see *App.* 316
(IAS 14), see *App.* 319

Seized Assets, assets, assistance in, Securitisation Act, s. 4A, p. 137
money, power to take possession of, s. 10-FP, p. 227
return of wrongfully, Securitisation Act, under, s. 4A, p. 137

Selection Committee, Chairperson, Appellate Tribunal, appointment on recommendations of, s. 10-FX, p. 289
constitution of, for selection of members of tribunal, s. 10-FX, p. 289
members, Appellate Tribunal, appointment on recommendations of, s. 10-FX, p. 289
President, Appellate Tribunal, appointment on recommendations of, s. 10-FX, p. 289

Self incrimination, company, privilege against, s. 34, p. 486
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Public Examination"** and **"Investigation"**

Serious Fraud Investigation Office (SFIO), see *App.* 48

Servant, director is not, s. 2(13), pp. 41, 47

Service of documents, agents, notice to, s. 51, p. 621
by post, when effective, s. 53, p. 625
company on, modes of, s. 51, p. 618
—, other modes, s. 51, p. 620
—, notice under pollution laws, s. 51, p. 619
—, pollution laws, notice under, s. 51, p. 619
court summons of, upon company, s. 34, p. 486
death or insolvency of member, in case of, s. 53 (5), p. 627
defective address, giving effect, s. 51, p. 618
electronic mode by, depository purposes, s. 51, p. 620
fax, notice by, s. 51, p. 620
joint shareholders, on, s. 53(4), p. 627
jurisdiction agianst default, s. 53, p. 628
manner of, under CPC, s. 51, p. 620
members on, joint shareholders, s. 53, p. 627
—, residing abroad, s. 53, p. 624
—, failure of communication, obligation not discharged, s. 53, p. 626
—, post by, presumption of, rebuttable, s. 53, p. 625
modes of, s. 51, p. 618
newspaper advertisement through, s. 53, p. 627
oral notice, by, s. 51, p. 620
personal delivery, s. 53, p. 627
shareholders upon, effect of death, s. 53, p. 627
where no registered office, s. 51, p. 618

Service of notice, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Notices"**
affixation by, s. 51, p. 620
etc., company, manner of service, s. 51, p. 618
—, members of company, on, s. 53, p. 623
—, Registrar, on, s. 52, p. 621

Service Organisations, Audit Considerations Relating to entities using service Organisations, (AAS-24), see *App.* 317

Service Tax, Brokers on, s. 76, p. 950

Set-off, calls, payment against, 91, p. 1129
crystallisation of floating charge and, s. 125, p. 1500

Shadow Directors, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Director"** and **"*De facto* Director"**
accustomed to act, s. 7, p. 170
annual return, liability for default in filing, s. 162, p. 1597

Shadow Directors (*Contd.*)
disqualification under s. 203, p. 1863
liability, holding company context, s. 4, p. 123
position of, s. 7, p. 173

Share application forms, SEBI requirements, obligations of lead bankers, s. 56, p. 647

Share capital reduction, liability in respect of reduced shares, s. 104, p. 1174
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Reduction of Capital"**

Share Capital, accepting unpaid share capital not called up, s. 92, p. 1133
accepting unpaid share capital not called up, s. 92, p. 1133
alteration of memorandum with respect to, s. 16, p. 377
alteration of, s. 94, p. 1134
—, compliance certificate & ICSI Guidance Note, s. 95, p. 1144
annual return as to, s. 159, p. 1588
authorised, s. 13, p. 370
—, subscribed and paid-up, s. 148, p. 1553
calls on shares to be uniform, s. 91, p. 1127
cancellation, followed by increase, registration fee, s. 94, p. 1140
—, of unissued shares, s. 94, p. 1139
—, shares, not taken up, s. 94, p. 1139
cash or other assets to reflect, s. 75, p. 930
Central Government order converting loan into, s. 94-A, pp. 1141, 1142
Companies (Issue of Share Capital with Differential Voting Rights) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 39
compliance certificate, increase of, ICSI Guidance Note & Check list, s. 94A, p. 1142
consolidation of, s. 94, p. 1134
consolidation, notice to ROC, s. 95, p. 1143
conversion of, Government loan into, s. 94-A, p. 1142
—, into stock, s. 94, p. 1134
—, share of one class into another, s. 100, p. 1162
differential voting rights, with, s. 86, p. 1109
equity s. 85, p. 1104
further issue of, s. 81, p. 1016
increase automatic, upon government loans converted into equity, s. 94-A, p. 1142
increase of, s. 94, p. 1135, s. 94A, p. 1142
—, by conversion of Government loans, s. 94-A, p. 1142
—, Compliance Certificate and ICSI Guidance Note, s. 97, p. 1146
—, notice to ROC, s. 97, p. 1145
—, on converting loans into, s. 94-A, p. 1142
increase, by shareholders, ratification by directors, s. 97, p. 1146
issue of, with differential voting rights rules, s. 86, p. 1109
issued capital, s. 13, p. 370
kind of, s. 85, p. 1103
limited company's power to alter, s. 94, p. 1134
miscellaneous provisions, s. 91, p. 1127
new issues to be only of two kinds, s. 86, p. 1108
nominal value of, s. 4, p. 121
notice of increase of capital or members, s. 97, p. 1145
notice to Registrar as to, s. 95, p. 1143
powers of court as to reduction, s. 102, p. 1171
preference s. 85, p. 1103
private company, exemption for having two kinds, s. 85, p. 1105
prohibition of, allotment without minimum subscription, s. 69, p. 828
—, issue with disproportionate rights, s. 88, p. 1122
—, authorised, subscribed & paid-up capital, s. 148, p. 1553
reduction of, s. 100, p. 1149
—, application for confirmation, s. 101, p. 1165
—, manner of effecting, s. 100, p. 1153
—, of necessity of special resolution, s. 100, pp. 1149, 1153
—, order confirming, s. 102, p. 1170
—, procedure where not necessary, s. 100, p. 1155
re-registration of unlimited company, provision for reserve, s. 98, p. 1147
reserve, converted into effect, s. 99, p. 1148
—, of unlimited company, s. 98, p. 1147
restriction on kinds, private company exempted, s. 85, p. 1105

Share Capital (*Contd.*)
shares, fixed amount, of, s. 13(4)(a), p. 370
special resolution for reduction of, s. 100, pp. 1149, 1153
stock, conversion into, s. 94, p. 1139
—, information to ROC, s. 95, p. 1143
—, into effect, s. 96, p. 1144
sub-division of shares, s. 94, p. 1139
subscribed capital, s. 13, p. 370
termination of disproportionate rights, s. 89, p. 1123
two kinds, s. 85, p. 1103, s. 86, p. 1108
unissued share, cancellation of, s. 94, p. 1139
unpaid, power to accept when not called up, s. 92, p. 1133
variation in share capital s. 94, p. 1134
voting rights, s. 87, p. 1113

Share certificates, authorised capital, specifying on, s. 147, p. 1552
certificate of share, s. 84, p. 1090
CLB's power to direct issue of, s. 113, p. 1393
—, petition to, for obtaining, s. 113, p. 1397
—, power to order issue of, s. 113, p. 1393
clean, s. 84, p. 1095
cognizance, limitation for taking, s. 113, p. 1401
common seal, to be under, s. 84, p. 1091
Companies (Issue of Share Certificate) Rules, 1960, s. 84, p. 1094
company, negligence in issuing, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1376
complaint, quashing of, s. 113, p. 1399
compliance certificate on issue of, s. 84, p. 1102
debenture certificate, delay in delivery, s. 113, p. 1397
default in issue of, CLB has no jurisdiction to punish, s. 113, p. 1402
—, company's undertaking to issue duplicates, s. 113, p. 1401
default in, issuing, right indefeasible, s. 113, p. 1402
—, CLB has no jurisdiction to compensate investor, s. 113 p. 1402
delay in, issue of, jurisdiction for complaint, s. 113, p. 1398
—, transfer of shares etc., s. 113, p. 1402
—, allotment of, s. 73, p. 899 *et seq.*
delivery, compliance certificate, s. 108, p. 1264
demat form, holding of, s. 84, p. 1095
—, issue in, SEBI guidelines, s. 84, p. 1095
despatch of, fictitious applications, s. 113, p. 1397
directors' liability, s. 84, p. 1093
dividend, no *estoppel* by payment of, s. 8 4, p. 1093
duplicate, s. 84, p. 1095
—, issue of, s. 84, p. 1102
—, procedure for issue of, irregularity in, s. 84, p. 1095
duty to deliver, s. 113, p. 1396
estoppel against company, s. 113, p. 1400
estoppel, as, s. 84, p. 1091
evidence of title, s. 84, p. 1090
evidence, dematerialised shares as, s. 113, p. 1399
—, *prima facie*, as, s. 84, p. 1090
extension of time by CLB, s. 113, p. 1397
fictitious applications kept in abeyance, despatch of, s. 113, p. 1397
forged, no estoppel, s. 84, p. 1093
form of, s. 113, p. 1404
good faith in obtaining, s. 84, p. 1092
investor guidance, grievances and complaints, jurisdiction for, s. 113, p. 1402
issue in tradeable lots, SEBI guidelines, s. 84, p. 1094
Issue of Share Certificates Rules, 1960, see *App.* 14
issue of, s. 108-A, p. 1266, s. 113, pp. 1393, 1396
—, default, CLB has no power to punish, s. 113, p. 1402
—, default, jurisdiction for complaint of, s. 113, p. 1400
—, letters of allotment, not included, s. 11 3, p. 1396
—, letters, refund orders etc., Registered Post, by, s. 113, p. 1397
—, Secretarial Action Points for, s. 85, p. 1108
—, time for, s. 113, p. 1393

Share certificates (*Contd.*)
loss of, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1375
lost in transit, s. 111-A, p. 1375
nature and effect of, s. 113, p. 1399
non-transferability, inscription of, s. 84, p. 1095
number of, s. 84, p. 1094
odd lots, issue in, s. 84, p. 1095
payment, estoppel as to, s. 84, p. 1093
penalty for default, s. 84, p. 1102
penalty provisions, delegation of powers to SEBI, s. 113, p. 1401
physical, IPO to be in Demat, s. 113, p. 1397
printing of forms, s. 113, p. 1404
public offer, initial, s. 84, p. 1095
record of issue, s. 84, p. 1099
refund of money with interest, order for, s. 113, p. 1401
register of members prescribed, s. 84, p. 1101
registrar of companies an aggrieved person, s. 113, p. 1397
relevant rules and forms, s. 84, p. 1098
relief, proper forum for grant of, s. 84, p. 1097
remedy against default, s. 113, p. 1401
rules, "The Companies (Issue of share certificates) Rules, 1960, s. 113, p. 1404
sealing and signing of, s. 84, p. 1094
SEBI Guidelines, 2000, s. 84, p. 1094
Secretarial Action Points, for issue of, s. 113, p. 1404
—, for issue of duplicates, s. 113, p. 1404
share certificate rules, s. 113, p. 1404
signature on, s. 84, p. 1094, s. 113, p. 1402
significance, s. 84, p. 1091
signing of, s. 113, p. 1404
split, s. 84, p. 1093
stamp duty, relevant rules, s. 84, p. 1098
standardisation of size, s. 84, p. 1095
—, dispensing with, s. 84, p. 1095
time for issue of, s. 113, p. 1393
time within which, company must issue, s. 113, p. 1393
title, estoppel as to, s. 84, p. 1091
wrong, companies liabilities in damages for, s. 84, p. 1093

Share Premium, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Premium"**
cancellation of s. 78, pp. 991, 1104, s. 100, p. 1156
free reserves, not to be treated as, s. 58A, p. 742
nature of share premium account, s. 78, p. 990
reduction of, s. 100, p. 1156, s. 78, p. 990
share premium account, s. 78, p. 990

Share Qualification, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Qualification shares, for director"**
joint shareholders, position, s. 41, p. 553

Share Transfer Agents, SEBI Operational Guidelines/Instructions to RTI/STA, see *App.* 212

Share Transfer Procedures, Chandrashekhran Committee Report, see *App.* 213

Share warrants, s. 114, p. 1404
benefit of tax deducted at source to the holder of, s. 115, p. 1408
holder may be member, s. 115, p. 1407
income tax deduction at source, s. 115, p. 1408
issue and effect of, s. 114, p. 1404
issue of, SEBI Guidelines, s. 114, p. 1405
private companies, cannot issue, s. 114, p. 1406
reconversion into shares, s. 114, p. 1406
reduction of members below seven, issue of, s. 115, p. 1408
register of members, entry in, s. 115, p. 1406
stamp duty, s. 114, p. 1406
striking of entry, on issue of, s. 115, p. 1406

Shareholders, action by, *res judicata* against company, s. 34, p. 501
alteration of rights of special classes of shares, s. 106, p. 1176

Shareholders (*Contd.*)
Auditors Report, Circulation to Guidance Note on, on Revised Accounts of Companies before Circulation to Shareholderes, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-11)
benami—declarations, s. 187-C, p. 1760
calls on shares, invalid remedy, s. 91, p. 1128
class, meeting of, compliance certificate, s. 106, p. 1181
class rights, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Class Rights and variation of class rights"**
company distinct from, s. 34, p. 497
company's experience is not Shareholders's, s. 34, p. 499
company's property is not Shareholders's, s. 34, p. 500
director's liability, whether company's, s. 34, p. 501
dissentient rights of, s. 107, p. 1181
dissenting Shareholders', s. 107, p. 1181
dissenting, arrangement with, s. 17(7), p. 389
exercise of voting right at general meeting, s. 182, p. 1730
insolvent Shareholderss right to vote, s. 177, p. 1719
insurance broker's duty to, s. 34, p. 523
joint, position in relation to company, s. 41, p. 552
—, position of, s. 41, p. 552
—, right to attend meetings, s. 41, p. 552
—, Shareholderss, s. 41, p. 552
liability of company not their liability, s. 34, p. 501
member', s. 41, p. 549
minor, s. 41, p. 554
minor shareholder • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Minority Shareholder"** and **"Derivative Action"**
penalty for personation of, s. 116, p. 1408
personation of, company's duty of care, s. 116, p. 1409
personation of, s. 116, p. 1408
position of, in company, s. 41, p. 552
privilege in general meeting, s. 175, p. 1698
register of members, not borne by, s. 41, p. 549
right of dissentient, s. 107, p. 1181
right to challenge accounts, s. 10, p. 190
rights, s. 82, p. 1085
service of documents in case of death, s. 53, p. 627
solicitor's duty to, s. 34, p. 521
ultra vires, right in respect of s. 13, p. 367
—, right to restrain, s. 13, p. 367
variation of rights of, s. 106, p. 1177
voting agreements, s. 87, p. 1116
voting rights, duty towards voiceless, s. 182, p. 1732
—, of ordinary, s. 87, p. 1114

Shareholders' action, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Minority Shareholder Action"**
minority, by, s. 10, p. 188

Shareholding, holding company, loss of value in, corporate veil, s. 34, p. 521

Shares partly paid-up, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162

Shares with differential rights, definition, s. 2(46A), p. 86

Shares, acquisition of, on disinvestment in overseas, s. 108, p. 1258
agreement as to transfer of, s. 111, p. 1326
allotment, changes suggested by select committee, s. 81, p. 1018
—, conversion of debentures issued at, discount, s. 81, p. 1044
—, in discharge of debts, s. 81, p. 1035
—, to renounce, s. 81, p. 1036
application for and allotment, s. 72, p. 837
application for and allotment, s. 72, p. 841
application forms two may accompany abridged prospectus, s. 56(3), p. 646
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Application Forms"**
application money, refund of, s. 69(5), p. 824
benami holder to declare name, of real owner, s. 187-C, pp. 1759, 1760, 1762
beneficial interest in, particulars of, s. 187-C, p. 1765
beneficial ownership to be declared, s. 187-C, pp. 1757, 1762 *et seq.*

Shares (*Contd.*)
Bonus see Chap. XV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
book and documents relating to issue of, s. 113, p. 1404
calls, s. 91, p. 1127
cancellation of, s. 94, p. 1139
certificate of, s. 84, p. 1090
certification of, s. 112, p. 1390
charge on, and distribution rights, s. 125, p. 1502
classes of, s. 85, p. 1103
—, alteration of, rights of, special classes of, s. 1 06, p. 1176
—, alteration of, rights of, special classes of, s. 106, p. 1176
commission, brokerage etc., on issue of shares by banking companies, s. 76, p. 940
company cannot purchase own s. 77, p. 951
Conversion of debentures, (Terms of Issue of Debentures and Raising of Loans with option to convert such Debentures and Loans into Shares) Rules, 1977, see *App.* 13
conversion, s. 100, p. 1162
—, into standard denominations, s. 69, p. 831
—, into stock, effect of, s. 96, p. 1144
—, of Government loans into, s. 81 (4), p. 1017
declaration by ostensible owner, s. 187-C(6), p. 1758
Declaration of Beneficial Interest in Rules, 1975, see *App.* 18
declaration of beneficial ownership, s. 187-C, pp. 1757, 1762
defined, s. 2, p. 85, s. 2(46), p. 30
differential rights, with, s. 2(46A), p. 86
directors' duty in transferability, s. 3, p. 96
discount, issue at, s. 79, pp. 993, 995
disinvestment by public undertaking, s. 108, p. 1257
disinvestment of, public sector enterprises by, s. 73, p. 911
Earnings per share, Accounting Standards, (AS-20), see *App.* 316
effect of holding by nominee on transfer, s. 77, p. 960
equitable interest in, creation of, s. 3, p. 103
equity, flexibility to fix denomination, s. 13, p. 370
excessive voting rights, s. 89, p. 1123
FDI, purchase & sale of, s. 72, p. 863
fixed amount of, division of capital into, s. 13, p. 369
fraudulent inducement to invest in, s. 68, p. 820
free transferability, s. 3, p. 96
further issue of, s. 81, p. 1016
Government loans, conversion into, s. 81 (4), p. 1017
Guidelines for Valuation of Equity Shares of Companies and the Business and net assets of Branches, see *App.* 154
held in trust, declaration as to, s. 153-B, p. 1574
holder of s. 81, p. 1033
illegal association, sale of, s. 11, p. 342
interest of members, others, s. 82, p. 1088
investigation of beneficial ownership, s. 187-D, p. 1765
issue, at discount, s. 79, pp. 993, 995
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Premium"**
—, at premium, s. 78, p. 988
—, of qualification s. 81, p. 1036
—, of shares to convertible debenture-holder without application in writing, s. 41, p. 548
—, Secretarial Action Points, s. 79, p. 998
kinds of, s. 85, p. 1103
liability for reduced s. 104, p. 1174
loan by company to buy its own, s. 77, p. 951
locality of s. 163, p. 1603, s. 82, p. 1088
locality or *situs*, s. 82, p. 1088
meaning of, s. 2(46), p. 85
nature of property, in, s. 82, p. 1085
nature of, s. 82, p. 1085
new issues with disproportionate rights prohibited, s. 88, p. 1122
nomination facility for unit holders in mutual fund, s. 109-A, p. 1288
nomination facility, s. 109A, p. 1286
nomination for, nature, manner & extent, s. 109A, p. 1287
notice & date of offer, s. 81, p. 1032

Shares (*Contd.*)
numbering of, s. 83, p. 1089
offer for exchange of, s. 56, p. 641
—, permission necessary, of stock exchange before issue of, s. 73(1), p. 886
—, to public, s. 69, p. 831
Option to convert Debentures and Loans into Rules, 1977, see *App.* 13
partnership, share, in, s. 2(46), p. 85
payment in cash, clarification, s. 75, p. 933
payment of commission, applicability, to promoters, s. 76, p. 941
personation for acquisition punishable, s. 68-A, p. 821
pledge of, s. 82, p. 1088
—, or attachment, effect upon voting rights, s. 87, p. 1121
power to issue redeemable preference, s. 80, pp. 1006, 1007
power to refuse registration of transfer, s. 111, pp. 1291, 1307
premium, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Premium"**
private company, not marketable security, s. 3, p. 95
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Private Company"**
—, placement of equity, through brokers, s. 3, p. 107, s. 68, p. 817
—, power to refuse transfer, s. 3, p. 103
—, transfer of, cases warranted judicial interference, s. 3, p. 104
—, —, restrictions contained in articles valid, s. 3, p. 98
proffered acceptance of, s. 3, p. 103
property as, s. 82, p. 1085
public office, to be held in the name of, s. 41, p. 557
purchase of own, loan for, s. 77, p. 963
purchase, by company of own prohibited, s. 77, p. 951
—, by employees, s. 77, p. 952
—, in subsidiary company, s. 77, p. 951
—, of own shares by company, s. 77, p. 951
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Purchase of own shares by company"**
purchase/sale by NRI on repatriation basis, s. 108, p. 1252
RBI Guidelines for Disinvestment of Equity Shares by Foreign Investors, see *App.* 276
refusal to register transfer, not duly stamped, s. 108, p. 1212
restricting, right of transfer of, s. 3, p. 96
restriction on acquisition of s. 77, p. 951
restrictions on company's purchase of exceptions, s. 77, pp. 951, 960
right issue, stock exchange permission not required, s. 73, p. 894
right of transfer, s. 82, p. 1085
rights attaching to, s. 86, p. 1110
Rights Issue, under takeover scheme, s. 81, p. 1042
rights shares—issue of, important aspects, s. 81, p. 1023
scope of section on personalise for acquisition of, s. 68A, p. 822
SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 177
shareholders' informal agreement for capital call, s. 91, p. 1127
situs of, s. 82, p. 1088
Stamp duty on letter of allotment of shares or debentures, Table of, see *App.* 135
sub-division of, s. 94, p. 1139
subscriber's choice, s. 15, p. 372
surrender at, s. 100, p. 1155
surrender of, s. 108, p. 1239
sweat equity issue of, s. 79, p. 997, s. 79A, p. 999
transfer of, s. 77, p. 960 *et seq.*
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Transfer of Shares"**
—, restrictions, lending institution to impose, s. 111, p. 1329
transferability, s. 2(46), p. 85, s. 82, p. 1085
—, pre-emption, s. 3, p. 98
—, restrictions on, s. 3, p. 96
trust held, declaration as to, s. 153-B, ceased to be operative, s. 153-B, p. 1578
trust holdings, voting rights, s. 187-B, p. 1754
trust s. 153-B, p. 1574
Trustees (Declaration of Holdings of Shares and Debentures) Rules, 1964, see *App.* 16
trustees, to be held in name of, s. 41, p. 556
two public companies holding lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 511
units issued by UTI, not as, s. 2(46), p. 86
valuation, mode of, s. 108, p. 1211

Shares (*Contd.*)
valuation, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Valuation of Shares"**
—, private company in, s. 3, p. 101
value, different currencies, fixed in, s. 13(4)(a), p. 370
—, fixed amount, s. 13(4)(a), p. 370

Shelf prospectus, s. 60A, p. 778
filing with ROC, s. 60A, p. 778
information memorandum, s. 60A, p. 778
subsequent issues, under, s. 60A, p. 780
supply of copies to public, s. 60A, p. 780

Show of hands, general meetings, s. 177, p. 1718
voting by, s. 177, pp. 1718, 1720

SIC Interpretations, Standard Interpretation Committee Interpretations (Summary), see *App.* 320

Sick Industrial Companies
Sick Industrial Companies (Special Provisions) Act, 1985, see *App.* 91
Sick Industrial Companies (Special Provisions) Repeal Act, 2003 (No. 1 of 2004), see *App.* 92
Sick Industrial Companies Act, see *App.* 91
Appellate Authority for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1988, see *App.* 96
Appellate Authority for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Financial and Administrative Powers) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 97
Appellate Authority, Procedure for Filing Appeal before Appellate Authority, see *App.* 99
—, Procedure for Filing Interlocutory Applications before Appellate Authority, see *App.* 99
BIFR Specified Authority, see *App.* 99
Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstrucitons (Salaries and Allowances and Conditions of Service of Chairman and other Members) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 98
Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Financial and Administrative Powers) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 95
Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction (Secretary's Powers and Duties) Rules, 1987, see *App.* 94
Board for Industrial and Financial Reconstruction Regulations, 1987, see *App.* 93
Delegation of Powers and duties to the Secretary to BIFR, see *App.* 99
Delegation of Powers to the Secretary to BIFR, see *App.* 99
Notifications, see *App.* 99
Power Delegated by BIFR to a Single Member and Secretary, Notification No. 5/2000/SD/BIFR, Dt. 10th March, 2000, see *App.* 99(3)
Public Financial Institutions specified as Operating Agencies of BIFR, see *App.* 99
Selected Notifications issued u/s. 13(1) of BIFR, see *App.* 99
Selected Notifications u/s. 13(1) of SICA, 1985, see *App.* 99(6)
Sick Industrial Company, deposits, moratorium to, s. 58A, p. 747
effect of becoming, cheque dishonoured, officer in default, s. 5, p. 156
jurisdiction of Civil Courts under SICA, 1985, s. 10, p. 207
meaning of, s. 2(46AA), pp. 30, 86
property, books and papers, taking into custody, s. 10-FP, p. 275
—, taking over by magistrate, bar of judicial scrutiny, s. 10-FP, p. 277
—, taking over of, authorisation in favour of CMM or DM, s. 10FP(2), p. 276
Sick Industrial Units, foreign investment in, s. 72, p. 871

Signatures, transfer of shares, signature not tallying, s. 111A, p. 1375

Sikkim Companies
Sikkim Companies Act, company registered under, position of, within the, section 3(i)(ii), p. 95
Sikkim, applicability of the Act, to, s. 1, p. 10

Single judge, appeal before, s. 10-GF, p. 334

Slander or Libel, liability of company for, s. 34, p. 489

Small depositors, applicability of NBFC, s. 58AA, p. 767
Compliance Certificate, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58-AA, p. 769
deposits from, ICSI Guidance Note, s. 58AA, p. 769
penal interest for default, s. 58AA, p. 768
private companies, applicability to, s. 58AA, p. 768
protection to, s. 58AA, p. 766

Small Entities, Guidance Note on Special Considerations in the Audit of Small Entities, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-65)

Small Scale Industries, Industries Development Regulations Act, 1951, see *App.* 296
lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 516

Small scale unit, deposit, exemption from advertisement, s. 58-A, p. 732
meaning, s. 58-A, p. 732

Small Shareholders', Companies (Appointment of Small Shareholders' Directors) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 40

Small Stock Exchanges, Guidelines on Small Stock Exchanges and their Subsidiary Companies, see *App.* 255

Societies Registration Act, 1860, see *App.* 295
jurisdiction under, by Tribunal, s. 10-GB, p. 315
jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 202

Society, member as, s. 41, p. 556
registered, whether body corporate, s. 2(7), p. 34

Sole Agents, Companies (Appointment of Sole Agents) Rules, 1975, see *App.* 27

Solicitor, duty to principal shareholder, s. 34, p. 521
lien on documents/register of members, s. 163, p. 1604

Special bank account, application moneys received before allotment to be kept in, s. 73, p. 897

Special Bench, Tribunal, composition of, s. 10-FL, p. 270
Tribunal, functions of, s. 10-FL, p. 270

Special Courts, *Special Court (Trial of Offences Relating to Transaction in Securities) Act, 1992, see App.* 292
—, allotment of shares to unknown person, jurisdiction of, s. 41, p. 548
securities and scam cases, trial of, s. 108, p. 1259
transfer of shares, jurisdiction of, ss. 108, 111, pp 1206, 1364

Special notice, s. 190, p. 1789
appointing as MD already manager in another Co., resolutions requiring, s. 190, p. 1790
circulation of members resolution, relationship, s. 190, p. 1790
resolutions requiring, comparison with circulation of members resolution, s. 190, p. 1790
—, Secretarial Action Points, procedure, s. 190, p. 1791
when required, s. 190, p. 1790

Special resolutions, s. 189, pp. 1771, 1772
agreement having effect as, registration of, s. 192, p. 1792
agreement, unanimous, alteration of articles, s. 189, p. 1788
alteration of articles, necessary for, s. 31, p. 456
alteration of memorandum, s. 17, p. 381
amendments to, s. 189, pp. 1773, 1774
assent unanimous without resolution, s. 189, p. 1783
change of name, for, s. 21, p. 425
defective, s. 189, p. 1782
—, requirement of section mandatory, s. 189, pp. 1782, 1783
director, explanatory statement, s. 173, p. 1680
—, notice with mandatory, s. 173, p. 1674
listed public company, postal ballot in case of, s. 31, p. 465
manner of counting votes, s. 189, p. 1773
material facts, disclosure of, s. 189, p. 1773
matters for which required, s. 189, p. 1778
meaning, s. 189, p. 1772
moving two or more together, s. 189, p. 1777
notice of intention to propose, s. 189, pp. 1771, 1774
producer company, passed by, s. 189, p. 1779
reduction of capital, for, s. 100, pp. 1149, 1553
registered office, removal of, outside city limits require, s. 146(2)(a), pp. 1543, 1544
registration of, s. 192, p. 1792
requirements of, s. 189, pp. 1771, 1772
reserve liability of limited company, in provision for, requires, s. 99, p. 1148

Special resolutions (*Contd.*)
SEBI regulations, passing under, s. 189, p. 1782
Secretarial Action Points, for passing of, procedure, s. 189, p. 1788
special notice, s. 190, p. 1789
votes required for passing, s. 189(2)(c), p. 1771
wording of, s. 189, p. 1778

Specific performance, agreement to sell shares, of, s. 108, p. 1222
contract to subscribe for debentures, of, s. 122, p. 1459
transfer of shares, time bound agreement, s. 108, p. 1223

Splitting, *Split Certificate,* s. 84, p. 1093
Splitting, transfer of shares, joint holding of, s. 110, p. 1291
Splitting of shares, rectification, from joint holding, s. 111A, p. 1378

Staff, Appellate Tribunal, of, s. 10-GA, p. 307

Stamp and Stamp duty, application for transfer of shares to bearer, s. 108, p. 1212
articles and memorandum of association, table of, see *App.* 134
articles of association, improperly stamped, s. 30, p. 455
—, on, s. 30, p. 455
cancellation, time for, on share transfer forms, s. 111, p. 1322
debenture trust deed on, s. 2(12), p. 42
debenture, re-issue on, s. 121, p. 1459
debentures on, s. 117, p. 1412
denomination of share transfer, s. 108, p. 1215
deposition mode, securities under, s. 108, p. 1212
depository, transfer of shares, not liable, s. 108, p. 1212
letter of allotment of shares or debentures, on, Table of, see *App.* 135
memorandum of association, on, s. 33, p. 470
power of attorney, table of, see *App.* 136
preference shares, redemption of, s. 80, p. 1006
proper collector certificate as to, s. 108, p. 1214
proxies to bear, s. 176, p. 1714
registration fee of company, s. 33, p. 470
registration of charge, s. 125, p. 1485
remission on transfer of property, s. 4, p. 134
return of allotment, on, s. 75, pp. 928, 933
Schedule of Court Fee Stamps to be affixed on the Petitions/Applications filed with the Company Law Board, see *App.* 137
share certificate on, s. 84, p. 1098
table of stamp and fees payable to registrar, see *App.* 131
transfer of shares, s. 108, p. 1212
—, cancellation at the time of execution, s. 108, p. 1214
—, documents not to be impounded by Board of directors, s. 108, p. 1215
—, insufficiency, time for pointing out, s. 108, p. 1214
—, purchasers duty as to, s. 111, p. 1323
—, who has to bear, s. 111, p. 1322
uncancelled, transfer of shares, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1377

Standard Financial Unit, in offer documents, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VI, see *App.* 162

Standard Interpretation Committee Interpretations (Summary), see *App.* 320

State Level Institution, meaning of, s. 2(46AB), p. 30
meaning of, s. 2(46AB), p. 87

Statement in lieu of prospectus, accuracy of statement, s. 70, p. 833
accuracy of statement, s. 70, p. 833
allotment prohibited before delivery of, s. 70, p. 832
conversion of private company into public company, on, s. 44, p. 587
delivery to Registrar necessary before commencement of business, s. 149(3), p. 1556
private company exempted from filing, s. 70(3), pp. 832, 834
time for delivery, s. 70(1), p. 832
untrue statements in, s. 70(5),(6), p. 832

Statement, circulation of, by requisionist, s. 188(1)(b), p. 1765
circulation of, by requisionist, s. 188(1)(b), p. 1765

Statement (*Contd.*)
material facts, setting out all, to be annexed when, s. 173, p. 1677
untrue, by suppression of facts, s. 65, p. 812

Statements issued by ICAI, statement on amendments to schedule VI of the Companies Act, 1956, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-2)
statement on auditing practices, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-1)
statement on payment to auditors for other services, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-4)
statement on qualification in auditors reports, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-5)
statement on the Manufacturing and Other Companies Auditors Report Order, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(A-3)

Statistics, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Act"**

Status, company, of, s. 3, p. 112
private company, of, s. 3, p. 112
subsidiary company, of, s. 3, p. 113

Statutory Audit Report, Signature on Statutory Audit Report, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-20)

Statutory corporations, *ultra vires,* and, s. 13, p. 368

Statutory Meeting, s. 165, p. 1612
compliance certificate, ICSI guidance note & Check List, s. 165, p. 1615
English law, s. 165, p. 1615
private company, converted into public, not necessary, s. 165, p. 1615

Statutory report, s. 165, p. 1612
filing of, s. 165, p. 1612
particulars to be stated in, s. 165, p. 1612

Statutory violations, allotment of shares, rectification, s. 111, p. 1356

Stay order, public issue, against, s. 56, p. 652
requisitoned meeting, s. 169, p. 1648

Stock brokers, capital adequacy, SEBI norms for, s. 76, p. 950
complaint against, s. 2(39), p. 69
decentraliation of work relating to complaints against brokers and Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 235
intermediaries associated with the securities market-dealers in securities outside the stock exchanges, registration of, see *App.* 224
intermediaries, making an application for registration under section 12 for different categories of, see *App.* 224
SEBI (Stock Brokers and Sub-Brokers) Regulations, 1992, see *App.* 223
SEBI (Stock Brokers and Sub-Brokers) Rules, 1992, s. 76, p. 947, *App.* 222
SEBI Capital Adequacy Norms for, see *App.* 224
SEBI Guidelines for Dealing by Foreign Brokers in India on behalf of Registered Foreign Institutional Investors, see *App.* 224
SEBI Guidelines for Market Makers, see *App.* 224
SEBI Guidelines on Precautions to be exercised by member-brokers of stock exchanges while dealing with shares on behalf of their clients, see *App.* 224
SEBI Regulation of transaction between member- brokers and their clients, see *App.* 224
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Broker"**

Stock Broking Companies, RBI Act, partial exemption from, s. 58A, p. 751

Stock Exchange Company, articles of association, of, s. 26, p. 449

Stock Exchange On Line System (E-IPO), Guidelines on Initial Public Offers through, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XI-A, *App.* 162

Stock Exchange, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Listing"**
allotment of, shares to be dealt in, on, s. 73, p. 887
appeal against refusal, s. 73, p. 894
application for permission to deal, s. 73, p. 887
Audit of Accounts of Members of Stock Exchanges, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-16)
Board Meeting for buy-back, prior & post intimation, s. 77A, p. 974

Stock Exchange (*Contd.*)
bye-laws of, definition, s. 2(39), p. 69
carry forward transactions, revision by SEBI, s. 2(39), p. 68
Central Government, powers of, s. 2(39), p. 65
Code of Conduct of Business for Members and Dealers of OTCEI—issued by OTCEI, see *App.* 264
complaints against, s. 76, p. 948
—, SEBI addresses for, s. 2(39), p. 69
conditional permission, s. 73, p. 894
—, by, not sanction, s. 73, p. 894
conditions for, s. 73, pp. 886, 889
Corporatisation and Demutualisation of Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 250
Debt instruments, see Chap. X of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
delisting of securities, s. 73, p. 925
—, norms and procedure, s. 73, p. 925
—, compulsory, s. 73, p. 925
—, disclosure in annual reports, s. 73, p. 925
—, reinstatement of, s. 73, p. 927
—, voluntary, s. 73, p. 925
fee, collection of, s. 73, p. 912
Form of Letter of Application, see *App.* 252
Guidelines on Small Stock Exchanges and their Subsidiary Companies, see *App.* 255
Guidence Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257
increasing membership by divesting and public issue, s. 81, p. 1047
Inter-connected, s. 2(39), p. 68
Issue of NOC by SEBI regarding release of deposit placed by Issuer Companies with Regional Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 236
Issue of Securities by Companies and their listing on over the Counter Exchange of India (OTCEI), Guidelines for, see *App.* 262
List of Recognised Stock Exchanges and their Addresses, see *App.* 261
Listing Agreement, see *App.* 252
—, Amendments to, and Related Circulars, see *App.* 254
Listing Cash Flow Statement, Requirements of, see *App.* 252
Listing Fees Payable by the Companies (Bombay Stock Exchange), see *App.* 253
Listing of Securities on recognised Stock Exchanges in Relaxation of Rules, 19(2)(b) of the Securities Contracts (Regulation) Rules, 1957, Guidelines for, see *App.* 251
listing of shares/debentures, permission necessary, s. 73(1), pp. 886, 894
listing with, new companies, s. 73, p. 905
listing, eligibility for, guidelines, s. 73, p. 905
membership, persons convicted, entitlement to, s. 2(39), p. 70
—, power to cancel, s. 2(39), p. 70
—, suspension of, s. 2(39), p. 70
multiple membership, norms relating to, s. 2(39), p. 68
name, advance approval, by SEBI, before incorporation, s. 20, p. 420
Nasdaq Stock Market, see *App.* 266
Nasdaq, USA, s. 2(39), p. 68
National, s. 2(39), p. 67
—, definition, s. 2, p. 67
Norms for Sale/Transfer/Surrenders of Dealership/Membership of OTCEI, 1997, see *App.* 265
norms relating to multiple membership, s. 2(39), p. 68
—, in Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 260
OTC Exchange, Issues of shares through, see Chap. IV of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
OTCEI, Code of Conduct of Business for Members and Dealers of OTCEI—issued by OTCEI, see *App.* 264
over the counter exchange, s. 2(39), p. 67
procedure before listing of securities on, s. 73, p. 895
recognised stock exchange', s. 2(39), p. 29, s. 2, p. 65
recognition, power of Central Government to notify, s. 2(39), p. 65
refusal of stock exchange to list, s. 73, p. 894
registered, list of, s. 2(39), pp. 29, 66
rights and further issues, permission not required, s. 73, p. 894
scrips, trading in, suspension of, s. 2(39), p. 70

Stock Exchange (*Contd.*)
SEBI—Model Bye-Laws of 2003, see *App.* 249
settlement, trading in scrips, postponement of, s. 2(39), p. 70
subscribed capital, publication of, s. 148, p. 1553
suspension of membership, s. 2(39), p. 70
Trading Mechanism and Business Rules of OTCEI, see *App.* 263
trading rights, exclusive, s. 2(39), p. 68
unrecognised, SEBI caution against, s. 2(39), p. 66
writ remedy, against, s. 2(39), p. 69

Stock Holding Corporation, Mutual Fund, holding on behalf of, transfer, s. 153, p. 1572

Stock invest, allotment of shares for, s. 73, p. 894 *et seq.*
ceiling on, scheme, see *App.* 230
handling of applications by registrars to issue, see *App.* 230
proforma, see *App.* 230
scheme, s. 73, p. 894, see *App.* 230
scheme, s. 69, p. 831

Stock option scheme, employees, definition, s. 2(15A), p. 48
employees, guidelines for loans to employees to buy shares, s. 81, p. 1049

Stock, conversion of shares into, stocks, s. 94, p. 1139
conversion of shares into, stocks, s. 96, p. 1144
effect of, s. 96, p. 1144
nature and comparison with shares, s. 96, p. 1144
reconversion into shares, s. 96, p. 1144

Sub-brokers, • SEE UNDER **"Broker"**

Sub-division of shares, s. 94, p. 1139

Subscribers to memorandum, s. 12, p. 344
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Subscriber"**
company as, s. 12, p. 344
criminal complaint, *locus standi* to file, s. 73, p. 905
foreigners as, s. 12, p. 346
government, s. 12, p. 345
Hindu family, s. 12, p. 344
illiterate, signature of, s. 12, pp. 345, 370
liability of, s. 13, p. 369
member, as, s. 41, p. 545
members of company, *ipso facto*, s. 41, p. 545
minor, s. 12, p. 345
—, guardian subscriber to a memorandum, effect of, s. 12, p. 345
must sign the subscription portion, s. 12, p. 345
must take share, s. 13, p. 369
non-resident and resident of foreign country cannot be, without RBI per-mission, s. 12, p. 544
non-residents as, s. 12, p. 346
partnership as, s. 12, p. 345
President of India and Governor of State, may be, s. 12, p. 345
resident foreigner, s. 12, p. 346

Subscribers, non-convertible debentures, purchase from, s. 117, p. 1420

Subscription for shares, conditional application, s. 72, p. 841
conditions, s. 72, pp. 837, 839
invitation to public, s. 67, pp. 816, 831
meaning, s. 56, p. 642
minimum number of shares to be applied for, s. 72, p. 839
minimum, s. 69, p. 828
underwritten issues, post-issue obligations, s. 56, p. 657

Subscription lists, bank account, separate to be kept in, s. 73, p. 897
closing of, s. 73(1A), p. 887
duration of, minimum and maximum SEBI Guidelines, s. 72, p. 840
minimum and maximum duration of, s. 72, p. 840
opening of, purpose of provisions as to, s. 72, pp. 837, 839

Subscription lists (*Contd.*)
restriction upon use of, s. 73, p. 898
rights issue, 60 days, to remain open for, s. 72, p. 840
time of opening of the, s. 72(5), p. 839

Subscription money, failure to refund, prosecution under IPC, s. 73, p. 894
minimum subscription not attained, prosecution under IPC, on failure to refund, s. 69, p. 828
separate bank account to be kept in, s. 69, p. 831
trust money, in the nature of, s. 73, p. 898

Subsidiary company, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Holding Company"** and **"Lifting the Corporate veil", "Balance-sheet of Holding Company"**
acquisition of shares in holding company prohibited, s. 42, pp. 561, 562
advantages of holding-subsidiary relationships, s. 4, p. 128
agent of holding as, s. 34, p. 513
agent, not, of holding company, s. 4, p. 125
avoiding legal relationship of, s. 4, p. 127
composition of Board, control over, s. 4, p. 118
conditions for being, s. 4, p. 118
control, by holding company, s. 4, p. 118 *et. Seq.*
corporate formalities, with Holding, non observance of, s. 34, p. 511
de facto directors, s. 7, p. 175
debentures, holding in 'Holding company', s. 42, p. 563
defined, s. 4, p. 117 *et seq.*
delinking of sub-subsidiary, s. 4, p. 123
directors in holding, position of, s. 4, p. 123
employees, holding company and, lifting the corporate veil, s. 34, p. 523
financing, foreign, purchase of own shares, by, s. 77, p. 957
holding, provisions affecting relationship, s. 4, p. 128
—, relationship with, s. 4(3), p. 125
holding's relationship, lifting veil in USA and UK, s. 34, p. 511
includes sub-subsidiary, s. 43, p. 562
insolvency, liability of holding for, s. 34, p. 516
investment in, holding company, by, s. 4, p. 130
know-how, exclusive, grant to holding on exclusive basis, s. 34, p. 515
loans to, holding company, by, s. 4, p. 130
member of holding company, restriction upon, s. 42, pp. 437, 562
membership of holding company, s. 42, p. 561
piercing veil in holding relationship, s. 34, p. 510
private, company being subsidiary of public company, s. 4, p. 126
—, exemptions, s. 4, p. 134
purchase of own or holding company's shares restrictions as to, s. 77, p. 951
status of, s. 3, p. 113
sub-subsidiary, included in subsidiary, s. 43, p. 562
Trade Marks, Holding company's interest in, s. 4, p. 129

Substantial Acquisition, SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 177
Substantial acquisition and Takeover Regulations, SEBI, by, s. 81, p. 1042

Sub-underwriter,
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Underwriter"**
contracts, non disclosure of, s. 76, p. 945
contracts, non disclosure of, s. 76. p. 946
section 76, p. 945

Sufficient cause, appellate court, appeal ascertained on before NCLT, s. 10-FQ, p. 281
CLB orders, appeal against, for, s. 10-F, p. 241

Suggestive bye-laws for Regulations and Control of Trading and Settlement of Derivative Contracts, 1998, see *App.* 168

Suit, filing of, in civil court, matters on which, s. 10, p. 202
forma pauperis, company to file, s. 34, p. 481
jurisdiction for filing, s. 10, p. 207

Summons, Service on company, s. 34, p. 486

Supreme Court, appeal to, s. 10-GF, p. 324

Surprise Checks, Guidance Note as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-49)

Surrender of Shares, s. 108, p. 1239

Suspension, Chairperson and members, Appellate Tribunal, s. 10-FV, p. 288
member, National Company Law Tribunal, of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266
President, National Company Law Tribunal of, s. 10-FJ, p. 266

Sweat equity shares, buy-back of, scheme under, s. 77A, p. 979
check list prescribed, s. 79A, p. 1002
discount, issue at, s. 79A, p. 1002
intellectual property rights, in lieu of, s. 79A, p. 1001
issue of, ss. 79, 79A, pp. 949, 999
know-how, in lieu of, s. 79A, p. 1001
other than cash consideration for, s. 79A, p. 1002
SEBI (Issue of Sweat Equity) Regulations, 2002, see *App.* 175
Unlisted Companies (Issue of Sweat Equity Shares) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 45
value additions, for, s. 79A, p. 1001

Table A, adoption and application of, s. 28, p. 452
alteration of capital, Art. 44, p. 3469, s. 94, p. 1135
application and scope of, s. 28, p. 452
conversion of shares into stock, s. 95, p. 1143
public company, option for adoption, s. 28, p. 453
scope and application of, s. 28, p. 452
stock, conversion of shares into, s. 95, p. 1143

Table F, tax-free payments of remuneration prohibited, s. 200, p. 1843
technician, s. 204, p. 1887
total voting power defined, s. 2(48), pp. 31, 87

Takeovers, SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 177
SEBI Regularisation Scheme 2002 under SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 179
Standardised Formats of Reports/Records, etc. in terms of Specific Provisions of the SEBI (Substantial Acquisition of Shares and Takeovers) Regulations, 1997, see *App.* 178

Tax Free Bonds, Guidelines for Issues of "Tax Free" Bonds by Public Sector Enterprises, see *App.* 279
issue by public sector enterprises, SEBI guideline, s. 117, p. 1431

Tax Free Payment, prohibition of, s. 200, p. 1843

Tax matters, corporate veil, lifting in, s. 34, p. 509
piercing the veil in, s. 34, p. 508

Tax Shelter Statement (*Clause* 6.18.7(vii)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XII, *App.* 162

Taxation, Provision for Liability for Taxation, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-6)

Taxes on Income, Accounting Standards, Accounting for Taxes on Income, (AS-22), see *App.* 316

Technician or consultant, defined, s. 204, p. 1887
meaning of, s. 204, p. 1887

Tenancy, • SEE UNDER **"Lease and Tenancy"**

Tenure, members, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FE, p. 263
President, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FE, p. 263

Terms and Conditions of Service, members, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FG, p. 264
President, National Company Law Tribunal, s. 10-FG, p. 264

Terms of the Issue, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162

Tort, company's liability for, s. 34, p. 487

Trade in Shares (Financial Services) Act, 1986 (English), speculative trade, s. 12, p. 347

Trade Marks, Holding-subsidiary company, in relationship with, s. 4, p. 129

Trade Marks (*Contd.*)
name of company offending, rectification, s. 22, p. 428
Trade Marks Act, 1999, s. 1, p. 4
changes made by, company's name, in respect of, s. 20 p. 405

Trade Union, member as, s. 41, p. 556

Trading Corporation, s. 2(49), p. 31
meaning of, s. 2(49), p. 89

Trading in scrips, suspension of, s. 2(39), p. 70
Trading Mechanism and Business Rules of OTCEI, see *App.* 263

Trading over prices, Lawful purpose, whether, investment company by, s. 12, p. 347

Trading Terminals abroad, opening, SEBI Guidelines, on, s. 2(39), p. 68
Trading Terminals, Guidelines for Opening of, Abroad, see *App.* 268

Transfer, cases and proceedings pending before CLB, s. 10FA, p. 252
cases/proceedings, powers of Principal Bench, s. 10-FL(5), p. 271
proceeding, Principal Bench, power of, s. 10-FL(6), p. 269
recording reasons for, s. 10-FL(5), p. 271

Transfer of Immovable Property, Outside India, FEM (Acquisition and Transfer of Immovable Property Outside India) Regulations, 2000, FEMA 7/2000, see *App.* 112

Transfer of interest, guarantee company in, and refusal, s. 27, p. 452
Transfer of members interest, guarantee company, in, s. 37, p. 539

Transfer of Profits, Transfer of Profits to Reserve Rules, 1975, see *App.* 19

Transfer of Property, remission on stamp duty, s. 4, p. 134

Transfer of securities by non-residents, general permission of RBI, when available, s. 108, p. 1248
gift by, to resident in India, s. 108, p. 1248
RBI's permission, considerations for granting, s. 108, p. 1248
resident in India, to, by sale, s. 108, p. 2148
shares/convertible debentures, other than, s. 108, p. 1251

Transfer of Securities, *Inter-se* Transfer of Securities Amongst Promoters, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. IV, *App.* 162
SEBI Directions on Inter-depository Transfer of Beneficial Ownership of Securities, see *App.* 204
SEBI Guidence Notes on Certificate of Securities Transfers in compliance with the listing agreement with Stock Exchanges, see *App.* 257

Transfer of shares, s. 108, p. 1185 *et seq.*
acquisition of shares of bank, for controlling interest, s. 111, p. 1305
allotment, failure to exercise option, rectification, s. 111-A, p. 1375
any other law, contravention of rectification of, s. 111-A, p. 1380
appeal against, delay condonation of, s. 111, p. 1336
—, no appeal in case of private company, s, 111, pp. 1298, 1324
—, refusal of, s. 111, pp. 1291, 1307 *et seq.*
appeal to CLB, rules and forms, s. 111, p. 1367
appeal, who can file, s. 111, p. 1336
application for, s. 108, p. 1185, s. 110, p. 1290
application for, extension of time, s. 108, p. 1262
—, —, form of, s. 108, p. 1262
application for, for splitting of joint holding, s. 110, p. 1291
articles, compliance with necessary, s. 108, p. 1194
—, in violation of, s. 108, p. 1219
—, restrictions in, confictions with laws, s. 9, p. 178
bad delivery, return of shares because of, rectification, s. 111-A, p. 1377
banking company, s. 111A, p. 1389
—, CLB has no jurisdiction, s. 111, p. 1304, *et seq.*
benami transactions, s. 111, p. 1320
blank transfers, s. 108, p. 1200 *et seq.*
bona fide, presumption, s. 111, p. 1333
bonus issue, after, s. 108, p. 1208
breach of contract, in, s. 111A, p. 1374

Transfer of shares (*Contd.*)
bulk lodgement of, s. 108, p. 1196
burden on company to justify refusal, before CLB, s. 111, p. 1301
calls on shares, effect on, s. 91, p. 1130
calls, liability for after transfer, s. 108, p. 1208
cantankerous person to, s. 111, p. 1313
cases in which relief not allowed, s. 111A, p. 1376
Central Government's, power regarding, s. 108, p. 1262
—, power to extend time for registration, s. 108, p. 1262
—, power to prevent controlling interest of, s. 108D, p. 1278
—, power to prevent, s. 108D, p. 1276
—, —, opportunity of hearing, s. 108D, p. 1278
—, power to prevent, voting rights, s. 108D, p. 1278
—, time within which refusal to be communicated, s. 108E, p. 1279
certificate issue of, on, s. 113, p. 1396
certification of transfer, s. 112, p. 1391
civil court order, intervention of, s. 111A, p. 1384
CLB, functions and role, in reference, s. 111, p. 1299
—, inherent powers, restoration of petition for rectification, s. 111, p. 1360
—, proceedings before, stay of, s. 111, p. 1320
CLB's power, s.111A, p. 1383
closure of register of members for purposes of, s. 108, p. 1202
—, record date, s. 108, p. 1202
company objections, procedure for dealying with, s. 108, p. 1261
company, transfer to itself, s. 77, p. 960
company's duty to issue, certificate, s. 113, p. 1396
compensation, for misrepresentation in, s. 108, p. 1219
complete, when, s. 108, p. 1196
complicated questions, etc., s. 111, p. 1345
composition of Board, refusal on ground of, change in, s. 111, p. 1300
condonation of delay, s. 111, p. 1336
consideration for, genuineness of, s. 111, p. 1332
—, nominal, s. 108, p. 1211
consumer forum, jurisdiction of, s. 108, p. 1262
contravention of old FERA not permissible, s. 108, p. 1246
control through, acquisition of, s. 111, p. 1316
controlling interest, power of Central Government to prevent, s. 108D, p. 1278
cornering shares through succession, s. 111, p. 1330
costs of wrongful refusal, s. 111, p. 1365
court order change in management due to, s. 111, p. 1304
court order, transfer under, s. 108, p. 1218
court orders, by, s. 111A, p. 1393
court/CLB order, under, s. 108, p. 1221
de mat form in, no right of refusal, s. 111A, p. 1371
deadlock among directors, failure to act, s. 111, p. 1333
death, after succession certificate necessity of, s. 111, p. 1330
—, of transferor or transferee, effect of, s. 108, p. 1199
deceased shareholder, s. 109, p. 1285
deceased trustee, substitution of, rectification, s. 111-A, p. 1376
deemed public company, position of, s. 111, p. 1323
default in payment of share money, s. 111A, p. 1372
defective, transfer deed, s. 108, p. 1216
delay, appeal against, s. 111, p. 1336
—, condonation of, s. 111, p. 1336
—, in filing, appeal against refusal, condonation of, s. 111, p. 1336
—, in issue of allotment letters, refund etc., s. 108, p. 1262
—, in presenting document, s. 111, p. 1333
—, on company's part in accepting or refusal, s. 111, p. 1301
Depositories Act, 1996, see *App.* 199
depository, how it functions, s. 108, p. 1189
director buying from member, duty to disclose truth, s. 108, p. 1221
disputed ownership, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1378
dividend, paid already to transferee, s. 108, p. 1208
dividends after transfer, s. 108, p. 1208
documents, good or bad delivery of, guidelines, s. 108, p. 1216

Transfer of shares (*Contd.*)
documents, lost in transit, s. 111A, p. 1375
—, rejected, returnable to whom, s.108, p. 1209
—, time for lodgement, s. 108, p. 1196
dominant undertaking, applicability to, ss. 108A to 108G, p. 1281
'duly stamped' meaning, s. 108, pp. 1212, 1213
—, rejection where not, s. 108, p. 1212
effect of, s. 108, p. 1209
—, indication of transferee company's, occupation, s. 108, p. 1209
—, witnesses, indication of, s. 108, p. 1209
effectual when, between company and transferee, s. 108, p. 1197
endorsement from, prescribed authority, s. 108, p. 1196
execution of instrument of, transfer, Income-tax Recovery Officer, by, s. 108, p. 1222
execution of, by Manager of HUF, s. 108, p. 1243
execution, date of relation back, s. 108, p. 1199
exercise of powers to refuse to register, s. 111, p. 1298
expression used, construction of, s. 108H, p. 1283
false papers, liability for submitting, s. 108, p. 1204
family arrangement, is not, s. 108, p. 1243
fees, payment of, s. 108, p. 1218
FEMA, application of, s. 108, p. 1247
FERA permission, where necessary, s. 111, p. 1319
FERA, compliance with, s. 108, p. 1246
—, not to be contravened, s. 108, p. 1246
financial institutions, list of, approved under, s. 108(1C), s. 108, p. 1257
—, restriction on, time limit, for decision by Government, s. 108C, p. 1276
foreign companies, restriction on, s. 108-C, p. 1275
forged documents, refusal due to removal of name under, rectification, s. 111-A, p. 1377
forged transfer and limitation, s. 111, p. 1137
forged transfer, prosecution for accepting, s. 108, p. 1205
—, time bar and, s. 111A, p. 1376
forged transfers, s. 108, p. 1203
forgery/unauthorised of, dematerialised shares, s. 108, p. 1204
form of notice under CLB Regulations, 1991, s. 111, p. 1367
frivolous grounds, refusal on, s. 111, p. 1319
general notes, s. 107, p. 1184
gift of shares, in case of, s. 111, p. 1334
gift or sale by NRI, s. 108, p. 1248
gift, by person resident in India to non-resident, s. 108 p. 1248
—, by way of, s. 108, p. 1210
good and bad delivery, SEBI uniform norms, s. 108, p. 1216
good or bad delivery, good or bad delivery of, documents, s. 108, p. 1216
—, guidelines, s. 108, p. 1216
Government Companies, exempted, s. 108, p. 1263
—, power under secs. 108A to 108D, not applicable, s. 108F, p. 1280
grounds of, listed companies, in cases of, s. 111, p. 1298
grounds on which directors can refuse, s. 111, pp. 1298, 1307
grounds on which directors can refuse, s. 111, p. 1307
Guidelines for Good or Bad Delivery of Documents (dated 30-8- 1991), see *App.* 258
Guidelines for processing of documents and Norms for processing of Transfers/Objection, by RTI/STA, see *App.* 211
guidelines, uniform norms for processing, s. 108, p. 1216
Hindu undivided family, partition, effect of, s. 108, p. 1243
HUF, partition, execution of transfer by manager, s. 108, p. 1243
indebted member, by, s. 111, p. 1312
inherent power to refuse, does not exist, s. 111, p. 1307
injunction on non-compliance with, requirements, s. 108, p. 1194
injurious falsehood, depriving a member of his shares, by, s. 108, p. 1220
instrument of, s. 108, p. 1192
—, and exceptions, s. 108, p. 1192
instrument of, transfer, requirement of producing, s. 108, p. 1195
—, transferee company's occupation not necessary, s. 108, p. 1209
—, witnesses to, s. 108, p. 1209
inter-connection, avoidance of, s. 111, p. 1316
Inter-depository, SEBI directions on, s. 111A, p. 1385

Transfer of shares (*Contd.*)
interim relief, CLB's power, s. 111(6), p. 1360
intimation of, Central Government, to, s. 108B, p. 1274
investigation, no jurisdiction for, s. 111A, p. 1384
involuntary, s. 108 not applicable, s. 108, p. 1243
involuntary transfers, s. 108, p. 1244
involving fraud and limitation, s. 111A, p. 1387
irregularities in, minor, s. 111, p. 1332
irrelevant or inadequate reasons for refusal, s. 111, p. 1333
Joint holder, s. 108, p. 1244
—, death, effect of, s. 108, p. 1245
—, petition signed by, s. 111A, p. 1389
—, splitting of, s. 110, p. 1291
—, survivor's right to get registration, s. 111, p. 1330
joint holding, refusal to accept splitting up of, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1378
joint holdings between residents/NRIs, s. 108, p. 1254
joint shareholders, position, s. 41, p. 552
joint transferors, all must sign, s. 108, p. 1245
joint ventures, agreement amongst, s. 108, p. 1219
jurisdiction of consumer forum, s. 108, p. 1262
jurisdiction of Courts, s. 111, p. 1342
jurisdiction, Company Law Board to order duplicate shares, s. 111A, p. 1383
karta of joint Mitakshara Hindu family, held by, s. 108, p. 1227
law, in violation of, s. 111, p. 1301
legal representative, by, s. 109, p. 1285
letters of allotment, s. 108, p. 1218
limitation, conditional refusal and, s. 111, p. 1336
limitation for appeal against refusal, s. 111, p. 1336
limitation period, condonation of, s. 111A, p. 1387
—, sub-sec. (3), s. 111A, p. 1386
liquidation, transferee devising for, s. 111, p. 1317
list of financial institution approved, u/s. 108, s. 108, p. 1259
listed companies, delegation of Board's powers, s. 111A, p. 1368
—, grounds open for refusal, s. 111, p. 1298
—, —, company secretary to monitor, s. 111A, p. 1390
—, —, obligations of, s. 111A, p. 1389
—, pre-emptive rights, in, s. 111, p. 1327
listed securities, and transfer in odd lots, s. 111, p. 1314
listing agreement requirement and, s. 111A, p. 1389
listing agreement, requirements, s. 111A, p. 1389
listing requirement as to, secretary as compliance officer, s. 111A, p. 1389
litigation, transferee devising strategy for, s. 111, p. 1317
litigious person, to, s. 111, p. 1313
lock-in-period, relaxation, s. 111, p. 1356
lot, shares in, policy of not accepting less, s. 111, p. 1314
mala fide purchase, ground for refusal, s. 111, p. 1312
market lots, application for less than, s. 108, p. 1194
member by, s. 41, p. 547
minor, guardian on behalf of, s. 108, p. 1243
misrepresentation in, compensation for, s. 108, pp. 1209, 1219
MRTP companies, of, opportunity of hearing to applicants, for, s. 108G, p. 1283
nature of CLB appellate powers, s. 111, p. 1367
no appeal against refusal in case of private company, s. 111, pp. 1296, 1298, 1324
non-resident, restrictions in case of, s. 108, p. 1246
NRI •SEE ALSO UNDER **"NRI, Foreigners and Foreign Companies"**
NRI, by other than NRI/OCB, s. 108, p. 1248
NRI/OCB to NRI/OCB, s. 108, p. 1248
NRI's under FEMA Regualtion, General permission, s. 108, p. 1247
objections, guidelines for deciding cases, Bombay Stock Exchange Notice, s. 108, p. 1216
objects of company, inconsistent, ground of refusal, s. 111, p. 1334
odd lots, creation of trust for disposal of, s. 111, p. 1315
—, listed securities, s. 111, p. 1314
oppression, petition against, pendency of, s. 111, p. 1342
OTCEI listed, s. 108, p. 1195
partition of HUF, in case of, s. 108, p. 1243

Transfer of shares (*Contd.*)
payment in instalments, title retention till, s. 108, p. 1207
penalty for acquisition in contravention of, s. 108-I, p. 1284
penalty for acquisition of shares in contravention of Ss. 108A to 108D, s. 108-I, p. 1284
penalty for transfer of shares in contravention of Ss. 108A to 108D, s. 108-I, p. 1284
pending cases, s. 108, p. 1260
permission under FERA Act, s. 108, p. 1246
petitioner, conduct of, s. 111A, p. 1385
pledge with blank transfer forms, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1373
pledged shares of, short term, s. 111A, p. 1373
pledged shares, of, s. 111, p. 1302
—, not for short-terms, s. 111A, p. 1373
position of transferee, if he fails, s. 111, p. 1367
position of transferor after transfer, s. 108, p. 1207
power to refuse, exercise of, s. 111, p. 1328
—, not inherent, s. 111, p. 1307
—, registration and appeal against, s. 111, pp. 1291, 1298
power under, secs. 108A to 108D, not applicable to Government company, s. 108F, p. 1280
powers for, delegation of, s. 108, p. 1216
pre-emptive rights, s. 3, p. 98
—, lending Institutions, controlling transfer, s. 111, p. 1329
—, meaning, s. 111, p. 1325
pre-emptive rights under private agreement between members, company not bound, by, s. 111, p. 1326
prejudicial to company, refusal on ground of, s. 111, pp. 1300, 1304
prescribed authority, list of, s. 108, p. 1256
—, —, endorsement from, s. 108, p. 1196
prescribed form, s. 108, p. 1195
—, must be in, s. 108, p. 1195
prescribed procedure to be followed, s. 111A, p. 1383
price to be determined, s. 108, p. 1211
price, determination of, s. 108, p. 1211
private company, cases warranted judicial interference, s. 3, p. 104
—, equitable interest creation of, s. 3, p. 103
—, power of refusal, s. 111, p. 1324
—, private agreement between members as to, s. 3, p. 97
—, refusal of, s. 3, p. 103
—, refusal on grounds specified in articles, s. 3, p. 105
—, refusal, investment in shares by lending Institution, approval by, s. 111, p. 1329
—, refusal, presumption of *bona fides* on directors, s. 3, p. 105
—, restrictions, s. 3, p. 96
procedure for, s. 108, p. 1192 *et seq.*
production of instruments, requirements, s. 108, p. 1195
prohibition on, foreign by person RII, s. 72, p. 873
Public financial institutions, by, s. 108, p. 1257
public sector corporations, dispute between, s. 111, p.1364
public sector undertakings, disinvestment by, s. 108, p. 1257
purchase by company of own shares, transfer to, s. 77, p. 960
purchasers default, effect upon rights of transfer or, s. 108, p. 1206
RBI's permission, s. 108, p. 1248
record date, without closing register, s. 108, p. 1202
rectification, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Rectification"**
—, cases in which relief allowed, s. 111A, p. 1375
refund of consideration paid, exercise of voting rights, s. 108D, p. 1278
refusal by company, under ss. 292, 372 appeal against, s. 111, p. 1320
refusal by, listed company, bound to refer to CLB, s. 111, p. 1301
refusal of, Board Composition, likely of change, s. 111, p. 1300
—, burden on company to justify, s. 111, p. 1301
—, cannot be on lack of consideration or collession, s. 108, p. 1208
—, CLB, role and function of, s. 111, p. 1301
—, grounds in articles, on, s. 111, p. 1308
—, grounds open to listed companies, s. 111, p. 1298
—, no inherent power to, s. 111, p. 1307
—, of transfer, s. 108, p. 1216
—, of, s. 108 compliance with directory or mandatory, s. 108, p. 1216

Transfer of shares (*Contd.*)
refusal of, on frivolous grounds, s. 108, p. 1215, s. 111, p. 1319
—, on other grounds, s. 111, p. 1329
—, presumption of *bona fide*, s. 111, p. 1333
—, stamp, in connection with, s. 111, p. 1321
—, transfer by private company, s. 111, p. 1324
—, under orders of Court, s. 108, p. 1218
refusal to register, documents, return of, on lack of information, s. 111, p. 1301
—, sufficient cause, s. 111A, p. 1372
—, in interest of company and shareholder, s. 111, p. 1318
—, irrelevant or inadequate reasons, s. 111, p. 1333
—, objects, inconsistent with, s. 111, p. 1334
—, signatures not tallying, with specimen, s. 111, p. 1318
—, unfair trade practice, is not, s. 111, p. 1334
refusal, conditional and limitation, s. 111, p. 1337
registered transfer, questioning validity, s. 111, p. 1333
registration, delay in, s. 111A, p. 1388
—, in contravention of FERA, effect, s. 108, p. 1246
rejected instrument, s. 108, p. 1194
rejected, documents, to be returned to whom, s. 108, p. 1209
relates back to the date of execution, s. 108, p. 1199
representative of transferor transfer by, s. 108, p. 1203
representative, without his authority, effect, s. 108, p. 1203
res judicata, applicability to appeal against refusal, s. 111, p. 1337
Reserve Bank permission under FERA in case of non-resident persons, s. 108, p. 1246
restriction of, factors for Government decision, s. 108-B, p. 1272
—, time-limit for Government sanction, s. 108-B, p. 1272
—, transfer of shares of private companies, s. 111, p. 1324
restriction on, s. 108-B, p. 1272
restrictions contained in articles, restricted, s. 111, p. 1324
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Restriction of transfer"**
—, right of pre-emption, s. 111, p. 1327
—, time within which power of refusal to be exercised, s. 3, p. 106
—, valid, s. 3, p. 88
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Private Company"**
restrictions, rights of lending institutions to impose, s. 111, p. 1329
rights after, Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, position under, s. 108, p. 1208
rights of lending institution to impose restrictions on, s. 111, p. 1329
rights, issue, after, s. 108, p. 1208
rival concern, transferee belonging to, s. 111, p. 1316
sale, by a person resident in India to a non-resident, s. 108, p. 1248
SCRA, s. 22A(4) as to period, mandatory, s. 111, p. 1302
—, s. 22A(5), procedural requirements not mandatory, s. 111, p. 1302
Secretarial Action Points, for refusal, s. 108, p. 1263
section 25 Companies, listed with OTCEI, s. 25, p. 445
section 372, violation of in, s. 111, p. 1320
sections 292 & 372, resolutions under, where necessary, s. 111, p. 1320
Securities Contracts (Regulation) Act, title to dividend, after, s. 108, p. 1208
security, shares deposited as, s. 111A, p. 1377
share certificate, loss of, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1375
—, neligence of company in issuing, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1376
shareholders private agreement, s. 111, p. 1326
short-term pledge, not for, s. 111A, p. 1373
—, sufficient cause, s. 111A, p. 1373
signature not tallying, s. 111A, p. 1375
signature per pro on form of, s. 108, p. 1193
signature, not tallying with specimen, s. 111, p. 1318
small company, transmission by, refusal to accept, s. 111A, p. 1383
Special Court, jurisdiction of, ss. 108, 111, pp. 1121, 1206, 1364
—, permission, by where necessary, s. 108, p. 1245, s. 111, p. 1320
specific enforcement, time bound agreement, s. 108, p. 1222
specific performance, of agreement to sell, s. 108, p. 1222
split transfer, application for, s. 108, p. 1194
splitting of joint holdings, s. 110, p. 1291
stamp duty, cancellation of, s. 108, p. 1214

Transfer of shares (*Contd.*)
—, collectors, certificate of proper stamping, s. 108, p. 1214
—, impounding inadequately stamped document, directors cannot, s. 108, p. 1215
—, insufficiency, time for pointing out, s. 108, p. 1214
—, meaning, s. 108, p. 1212
—, not liable, when through depository, s. 108, p. 1212
—, who has to bear, s. 111, p. 1322
stamping, after execution of form, s. 108, p. 1212
stamps, no duty to cancel, s. 108, p. 1214
—, purchaser's duty as to, s. 111, p. 1323
—, time for cancellation of, s. 111, p. 1322
statutory formalities, compliance necessary, s. 10 8, p. 1194
stock exchange company, refusal to accept, s. 111A, p. 1375
sub-judice matter, alternative remedy, s. 111, p. 1342
sub-judice transfer, rectification, s. 111, p. 1342
subsidiaries between, s. 4, p. 129
sufficient cause, includes breach of contract, s. 111A, p. 1374
—, refusal to register, s. 111A, p. 1372
suit for specific performance in cases of, s. 108, p. 1222
suit where appeal fails, s. 111, p. 1367
surrender to company, s. 100, p. 1155
time for filing, Central Government, power of extension, s. 108, p. 1262
title dispute as to, s. 111, p. 1333
title, declaratory relief as to, s. 111A, p. 1388
—, retention, till full payment, s. 108, p. 1207
transfer by way of gift, s. 108, p. 1210
transfer requiring Reserve Bank permission, s. 108, p. 1246
transfer to company, s. 77, p. 960
transferee, company, *ultra vires*, to purchase shares, s. 111, p. 1329
—, not a *bona fide* investor, s. 111, p. 1313
—, position of, s. 108, p. 1207
—, to show title, s. 108, p. 1207
transferor, position of, s. 108, p. 1207
transferor/transferees right to be heard by Board of Directors, s. 108, p. 1215
transmission, comparison with, s. 108, p. 1195
—, of, s. 108, p. 1223
—, of shares, s. 108, p. 1223
—, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Transmission of shares"**
trust for disposal of odd lots, Secretarial Action Points, s. 111, p. 1315
trust, held in, s. 108, p. 1223
two months, refusal not intimated in, effect, s. 111, p. 1335
ulterior motives of transferee, s. 111, p. 1314
uncancelled stamps, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1377
undesirability of transferee, on personal ground to be, s. 111, p. 1317
undesirable conduct of transferee, s. 111, p. 1316
undesirable transferee, s. 111, p. 1317
unfair trade practice, refusal is not, s. 111, p. 1334
Unform Norms for Processing Share Transfer by Company, RTIs and STAs, see *App.* 259
unlawful, rectification of register of members, on CLB order, s. 111A, p. 1389
unregistered transfer, rights under, s. 108, p. 1205
unregistered, transferor trustee to what extent, s. 108, p. 1204
valuation, liability of valuer, s. 108, p. 1220
violation of articles, restraining, s. 108, p. 1219
violation of law in, s. 111, p. 1302
—, SEBI Takeover Regulation, s. 111A, p. 1379
voting rights, on defective procedure of, s. 87, p. 1121
warranty, breach of, ousting liability, for, s. 108, p. 1221
who can apply, s. 111A, p. 1385
will, in accordance with, s. 153, p. 1571
"will", under, private companies, in, s. 3, p. 101
writ petition about, disclosure of truth, s. 108, p. 1220
writ remedy, s. 111A, p. 1388

Transfer or issue of any Foreign Security, FEM (Transfer or issue of any Foreign Security) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 116

Transfer or issue of Security by a Person Resident Outside India, FEM (Transfer or issue of Security by a Person Resident Outside India) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 118

Transmission of shares, s. 108, p. 1223
acquisition of assets does not operate as, s. 108, p. 1228
acquisition of assets, s. 109, p. 1286
appeal in cases of refusal to register, s. 108, p. 1223
joint holdings of, s. 108, p. 1228
joint shareholders, position, s. 41, p. 552
member by, s. 41, p. 547
nominee, rights of, s. 109B, p. 1288
operation of law by, s. 108, p. 1223
order assuring company's functioning, s. 108, p. 1226
power to refuse, s. 108, p. 1229
pre-emptive rights, effect, if in articles, s. 108, p. 1227
refusal to accept, s. 111A, p. 1381
—, by small company, s. 111A, p. 1383
sole owner, in the case of, s. 108, p. 1226
transfer of shares, comparison with, s. 108, p. 1195
widow of member, to, indemnity bond, on, s. 108, p. 1228

Tribunals, • SEE UNDER **"Company Law Tribunal"** and **"National Company Law Tribunal"**
acts and proceedings, vacancy not to invalidate, s. 10-GC, p. 321
appeal from order of, s. 10-FQ, p. 279
Appellate Tribunal Procedure Rules, 2000 (SEBI), see *App.* 153
benches of, s. 10-FL, p. 268
benches, power of President to constitute, s. 10-FL, p. 270
civil court, powers of review vested in, s. 10-FM, p. 273
constitution of, s. 10-FC, p. 261
delegation of power by, s. 10-FO, p. 274
Depositories (Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 203
legal representative, right to appear, s. 10-GD, p. 322
meaning of, s. 2(49A), pp. 31, 89
members, directed opinion of, s. 10-FL, p. 270
National Company Law Tribunal, vacancy in, s. 10-FH, p. 265
National Company Law, constitution of, s. 10-FB, p. 253
officers and employees of, s. 10-FK, p. 268
order of, s. 10-FM, p. 271
orders, enforcement of, s. 10-FZA, p. 306
President, power to hear second time, s. 10-FL(3), p. 271
principal bench, s. 10-FL(5), p. 271
review, power of, s. 10-FN, p. 273
SEBI Appellate Tribunal (Procedure) Rules, 2000, see *App.* 153
Securities Contracts (Regulations) Appeal to Securities Appellate Tribunal Rules, 2000, see *App.* 248
validity of acts, s. 10-GC, p. 322

True and fair view of accounts, ss. 209, 211
• SEE UNDER (1) **"Account"** (2) **"Balance-Sheet"**

Trust Deed, copies of, s. 118, p. 1450
debenture, s. 2(12), p. 41
execution of, s. 117, p. 1417
inspection of, s. 118, p. 1450

Trust for disposal of odd lots shares, s. 111, p. 1315
Secretarial Action Points, s. 111, p. 1315

Trust holdings, banks keeping shares as security, applicability, s. 187-C, p. 1759
declaration as to, *Benami* Transactions Prohibitions Act, effect, s. 187-C, p. 1759
—, by all trustees, s. 153-B, p. 1579
—, when duty arises, s. 187-C, p. 1760
declaration of, relevant rules and forms, s. 187-C, p. 1764
declaration, *Benami* shareholding of, s. 187-C, p. 1760
—, restoration of, s. 187-C, p. 1759
equity and preference shares, applicable to, s. 153B, p. 1579
individual shareholding of, s. 187-C, p. 1760
joint shareholding as, s. 187-C, p. 1760

Trust holdings (*Contd.*)
mutual fund, s. 187-C, p. 1761
odd lot shares, trust for disposal of, s. 153-B, p. 1579, s. 187-C, p. 1763
official capacity, shares held in, s. 187-C, p. 1762
public charitable trust, applicability, s. 187-C, p. 1760
relationship with, s. 187-C, s. 153-B, p. 1579
relationship with companies, s. 153, p. 1571
Rules as to, not applicable to Banks keeping shares as security, s. 187-C, p. 1759
Secretarial Action Points, for procedure, s. 153B, p. 1581
shares belonging to society, s. 41, p. 556
value of shares, s. 153-B, p. 1578
venture capital fund, s. 187-C, p. 1762
voting rights, on, Depositories Act, s. 187-B, p. 1756

Trust money, Subscription money in the nature of, s. 73, p. 898

Trustees, Companies (Public Trustee) Rules, 1973, see, *App.* 15
debenture holders, liability of, s. 119, pp. 1451, 1452
deceased, substitution of, rectification, s. 111A, p. 1376
declaration of trust shares, to public trustee, s. 153-B, p. 1574
duty to make declaration under s. 187-C, pp. 1757, 1760
Office of the Public Trustee (Destruction of Records) Rules, 1984, see *App.* 34
public trustee, appointment of, s. 153-A, p. 1574
—, immunity of, s. 187-B, p. 1757
purchase of shares by, for benefit of employees, s. 77, p. 952
registered society as, s. 187-B, p. 1757
SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Regulations, 1993, see *App.* 218
SEBI (Debenture Trustees) Rules, 1993, see *App.* 217
shares to be held in the name of, s. 41, p. 556

Trustees (Declaration of Holdings of Shares and Debentures) Rules, 1964, see *App.* 16

Trusts, admission as members, s. 153, p. 1573
beneficial share holding, rights and liabilities, s. 153, p. 1572
declaration of, holdings, in equity and preference shares, s. 153-B, p. 1579
—, shares and debentures held in, s. 153-B, p. 1574
—, to be by all trustees, s. 153B, p. 1579
employees stock scheme for, s. 77, p. 958
holding in more than one company, limits to be declared in reference to each, s. 153-B, p. 1579
member as, s. 41, p. 554
money invested in shares or debentures, s. 153-B, p. 1578
notice of, cases in which may or must be taken, s. 153, p. 1571
—, in directors' holdings of shares, s. 153, p. 1572
—, nominees, rights and liabilities, s. 153, p. 1572
—, not to be entered in register, s. 153, p. 1571
private trust, Dept's clarification regarding applicability of, s. 187-C, p. 1763
public trustee to control, s. 153-A, p. 1574
quorum, representatives, of, s. 174, p. 1687
register of member, notice not to be entered, s. 153, p. 1571
shareholding by registered society, s. 187-B, p. 1757
shares held in society belonging to, s. 41, p. 556
shares held in, declaration as to, relevant rules, and forms, s. 153-B, p. 1581
—, HUF, s. 153, p. 1573
transfer of shares held in, s. 108, p. 1223
trusts not within section 153-B and 187-B, s. 153-B, p. 1578
voting rights in respect of trust shares, s. 187-B, p. 1754
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Breach of trust"**

'Turn over', s. 43-A, p. 569

Ultra Vires, acts contrary to law as, s. 13, p. 361
allotment, s. 69, p. 830
borrowings, s. 13, p. 362
contracts, s. 13, p. 364
—, ratification of, s. 46, p. 592
dealings in good faith, s. 13, p. 359, s. 46, p. 592
doctrine of, s. 13, p. 357

Ultra Vires (Contd.)
doctrine of, under English Law, s. 13, p. 358
expenditure of *ultra vires* loans, s. 13, p. 362
guarantees, s. 13, p. 362
loans, s. 13, p. 362
powers, manner of exercising, s. 13, p. 359
ratified, cannot be, s. 13, p. 362, s. 46, p. 592
right of other parties to plead, s. 13, p. 367
shareholders' rights to restrain, s. 13, p. 367
statutory corporations, application of, s. 13, p. 368
transactions, shareholder's right to restrain, s. 10, p. 192
transfer of shares, transferee company to purchase, s. 111, p. 1329
void, as, s. 13, pp. 363, 367
who can plead, s. 13, p. 367

Unanimous Resolution, agreement, alteration of article, s. 189, p. 1788
board, of, s. 192, pp. 1792, 1794

Uncalled capital, payment of, without call, power to accept, s. 92, p. 1133

Undertaking, industrial, ownership of, s. 2(19AA), p. 50

Underwriters and Underwriting, s. 76, p. 940
allotment to, application not necessary, s. 72, p. 842, s. 76, p. 941
authority for applying for shares, s. 76, p. 941
book building process, through, s. 56, p. 658
brokerage, guidelines, s. 76, p. 945
commission, payment by private company, s. 75, p. 944
defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
firm, in nature, s. 76, p. 942
firm, underwriting, s. 76, p. 942
further issue of capital to public, s. 81, p. 1059
legal heirs, liability of, s. 76, p. 943
mandatory, relaxation, s. 76, p. 943
misrepresentation, remedy against broker, s. 76, p. 945
optional, SEBI guidelines, s. 76, p. 943
partnership firm by, s. 76, p. 942
pre-issue obligations, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. V, *App.* 162
registered, model underwriting agreement, guidelines, s. 76, p. 944
remedies against misrepresentation in prospects, s. 76, p. 945
revocation of agreement, s. 76, p. 942
revocation of underwriting agreement, s. 76, p. 942
SEBI (Underwriters) Regulations, 1993, s. 76, p. 944, see *App.* 215
SEBI (Underwriters) Rules, 1993, s. 76, p. 944, see *App.* 214
SEBI Guidelines, s. 76, p. 943
see Chap. V of SEBI Guidelines for Disclosure and Investor Protection, 2000, see *App.* 162
see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. VIII, *App.* 162
sub-underwriter, s. 76, p. 945
underwriters operational guidelines/instructions with model underwriting agreements, see *App.* 216
underwriting letters, withdrawal of, s. 76, p. 942
unissued shares, cancellation of, s. 94, p. 1139
variation of terms of draft prospectus, s. 76, p. 942
what is, s. 76, p. 940

Underwriting Agreement, legal heirs liability of, s. 76, p. 943
operational guidelines and model, s. 76, p. 944
revocation of, s. 76, p. 942

Underwriting Commission, s. 76, p. 938
banking companies, by, s. 76, p. 940
conditions for payment, s. 76, p. 943
debentures for, s. 76, pp. 940, 943
guidelines, s. 76, p. 943
modern practices, s. 76, p. 940
payment of, s. 76, p. 940
private companies, s. 75, p. 944
timely payment of, s. 76, p. 944

Underwriting Devolvement Statement (*Clause* 7.4.1.2.(c)), see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Sch. XVII, *App.* 162

Underwritten issues, post issue obligations, s. 56, p. 657

Undischarged insolvent, taking part or concerned in management, s. 202, p. 1848

Unfair Practice, transfer of shares, refusal, is not, s. 111, p. 1334
prospectus in, s. 56, p. 650

Unfair Trade Practices, MRTP Act, 1969, see *App.* 297
SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 2003, see *App.* 181
SEBI (Prohibition of Fraudulent and Unfair Trade Practices relating to Securities Markets) Regulations, 1995, see *App.* 182
SEBI Regulations, as to, s. 76, p. 949
securities market in, prohibition by SEBI, s. 56, p. 650

Unform Norms for Processing Share Transfer by Company, RTIs and STAs, see *App.* 259

Units, securities as, s. 2(45AA), p. 85

Unit Trust of India, Investments, SEBI Regulations and Guidelines not applicable, s. 111, p. 1306

Unlawful objects, judicial review of, s. 35, p. 526

Unlimited Company, s. 12, p. 348
articles of Association form of, s. 29, p. 454
articles, to state number of member with which registered, s. 27, p. 451
conversion into limited company, s. 32, p. 468
members, liability of, s. 12, p. 348
no prohibition for purchasing its shares, s. 77, p. 961
reduction of capital, s. 100, p. 1160
registration of, as limited, s. 32, p. 468
registration, provision for reserve share capital, s. 98, p. 1147
reserve share capital of, s. 98, p. 1147
unlimited co. and unincorporated co ., s. 12, p. 349

Unlimited Liability Company, registering as limited, s. 32, p. 468

Unlisted Companies, defined, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. I, see *App.* 162
initial public offerings, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
listing of NCDs/DSCEs of, s. 73, p. 909
NCDs and DSCFs, listing of, s. 117, p. 1422
offer sale, SEBI Guidelines applicable, s. 64, p. 810
outstanding warrants or financial instruments, not to issue in certain cases, SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. II, see *App.* 162
preferential allotment by, s. 81, p. 1073
public issue of DSCE by, s. 73, p. 910
reconstruction/amalgamation, listing of shares on, s. 73, p. 906

Unlisted Companies (Issue of Sweat Equity Shares) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 45

Unlisted Public Companies (Preferntial Allotment) Rules, 2003, see *App.* 46

Unlisted Public Limited Company, Private Limited Company and, (Buy-Back of Securities), Rules, 1999, see *App.* 12.

Unpaid Dividend, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Dividend"**
Companies Unpaid Dividend (Transfer to General Revenue Account of the Central Government) Rules, 1978, see *App.* 21

Unsecured creditor, cannot file application, s. 141, p. 1535

Unutilised proceeds, prospectus, issue of, accounting treatment, s. 61, p. 786

Vacancy, Appellate Tribunal, in office of Chairperson, s. 10-FS, p. 286
National Company Law Tribunal, in, s. 10-FH, p. 265

Valuation, Guidance Note, Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-2)
guidelines for Valuation of Equity Shares of Companies and the Business and net assets of Branches, see *App.* 275

---

* **For CONSOLIDATED SUBJECT INDEX of Treatise (3 Parts) and Appendix (3 Parts) See Part III of Treatise**

Valuation (*Contd.*)
valuation of inventories, (AS-2), see *App.* 316
Valuation of Fixed Assets, Mode of Valuation of Fixed Assets, Guidance Note on, as issued by ICAI, see *App* 318(B-2)
Valuation of shares, private company in, s. 3, p. 101
private company in, relationship between valuation and net worth, s. 3, p. 103

'Variation', 'vary', ss. 2, 2(50), pp. 31, 89

Variation of class right, s. 106, p. 1177
• SEE ALSO UNDER **"Class Rights"**
cancellation of a class, not included, s. 10 6, p. 1177
class rights, how created, s. 106, p. 1176
dissenting shareholders, rights of, s. 107, p. 1181
how to be carried out, s. 106, p. 1177
what constitutes, s. 106, p. 1176

Variation of shareholders' rights, s. 106, p. 1177
alteration of rights of different classes, s. 106, p. 1176
dissentient shareholder, rights of, s. 107, p. 1181
what does not amount to, s. 106, p. 1177

Venture Capital Companies, name, availability of, s. 20, p. 420

Venture capital fund, trust holdings, s. 187-C, p. 1762
regulations, s. 72, p. 846

Venture Capital, Guidelines for Overseas Venture Capital Investment in India, see *App.* 274
Guidelines for Venture Capital, see *App.* 273
meaning of, s. 72, p. 846
SEBI (Foreign Venture Capital Investor) Regulations, 2000, see *App.* 197
SEBI (Venture Capital Funds) Regulation, 1996, see *App.* 195

Vetting, s. 56, p. 652
debt instruments, offer of, SEBI by, s. 56, p. 652
rights issues, offer documents, exempt, s. 56, p. 652
Vetting of offer documents, decentralisation, of work relating to vetting of offer documents and registration of Merchant Bankers, see *App.* 235

Vicarious liability, *mens rea,* of company, s. 34, p. 493

Violation of Guidelines, In case of violation of these Guidelines, the Board may in the interest of the securities market and in the interest of the investors may pass directions under section 11B, see SEBI Guidelines 2000, Chap. XVII, *App.* 162

Votes and voting, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Voting"**
casting of, chairman, s. 175, p. 1694
counting, method of, s. 189, p. 1773
insolvent shareholders, s. 177, p. 1719
method of counting, s. 189, p. 1773
poll on, s. 184, p. 1735
proxies, s. 176, p. 1705
representative of corporation, s. 187, p. 1750
representative of President of India or Governor of a State, s. 187-A, pp. 1753, 1754
restriction where calls not paid, s. 181, p. 1729
restrictions on voting power void, s. 182, p. 1730
right to get recorded, s. 87, p. 1115
scrutineers at, s. 184, p. 1735
shares held in trust, s. 187-B, p. 1754
show of hands, by s. 177, p. 1718
total voting power, ss. 2, 2(48), pp. 31, 87
use of votes differently, s. 183, p. 1734
void restrictions, s. 182, p. 1730

Voting, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Votes and Voting"**
articles, compliance with requirement of, on poll, s. 180, p. 1728
demand for poll, modifications for class meetings, s. 179, p. 1726
en bloc voting, s. 178, p. 1722

Voting (*Contd.*)
group resolutions, s. 179, p. 1725
joint holders, by, s. 177, p. 1719
joint shareholders by, s. 41, p. 552, s. 182, p. 1733
—, position, s. 41, p. 552
members not paying calls, personal property, s. 182, p. 1730
—, restriction on rights, modifications for class meetings, s. 181, p. 1730
members not paying calls, right, restrictions on, modification at class meetings, s. 182, p. 1734
minor, rights of, s. 177, p. 1719
outsiders present at meeting, s. 177, p. 1719
poll by, conduct of, s. 179, p. 1725
—, demand for, s. 179, p. 1724
—, important points in conducting, s. 185, p. 1737
—, manner, modification at class meetings, s. 185, p. 1738
—, on, s. 179, p. 1724
—, private company, s. 178, p. 1722, s. 179, p. 1726
—, time for, modifications for class meetings, s. 180, p. 1728
—, withdrawal of demand for, s. 179, p. 1726
private company, in, s. 177, p. 1720
right of member to use his votes differently, modification at class meetings s. 183, p. 1734
rights of trustees, s. 187-B, p. 1754
—, restriction on, s. 181, p. 1729
scrutiny, modifications at class meetings, s. 184, p. 1735
Secretarial Standard on, s. 177, p. 1720
shareholders, agreements as to, s. 87, p. 1116
show of hands, s. 177, pp. 1718, 1720
—, by modification for class meetings, s. 177, p. 1720
—, by, declaration of result by chairman, conclusiveness s. 178, p. 1721
—, chairman's declaration of results model regulations, s. 178, p. 1722
—, chairman's results, modification at class meetings, s. 178, p. 1722

Voting power, differential rights with, s. 2(48), p. 88

Voting Agreements, shareholders, s. 87, p. 1116
shareholders, among, s. 87, p. 1116

Voting rights, • SEE ALSO UNDER **"Voting"**, s. 87, p. 1113
banking companies, s. 87, p. 1120
banks, RBI Guidelines, s. 87, p. 1120
calls advance payment of not affected by, s. 92, p. 1133
Companies (Issue of Share Capital with Differential Voting Rights) Rules, 2001, see *App.* 39
debentures carrying not to be issued, hereafter, s. 117, p. 1410
differential, share capital with, s. 86, p. 1109
directors who are also shareholders of, s. 182, p. 1734
disproportionate, exemption on private company, s. 89, p. 1124
—, private company, s. 87, p. 1122
—, prohibited, s. 88, p. 1122
—, prohibition of, Department's clarification, Import of Ss. 88 and 93, s. 88, p. 1122
—, termination of saving of private company, s. 90, p. 1125
—, termination of, s. 87, pp. 1119, 1122
—, termination, savings, s. 90, p. 1125
duty of shareholders, s. 182, p. 1733
equity shareholders of, s. 87, p. 1114
excessive voting rights terminated, s. 89, p. 1123
exemption from termination of disproportionate voting rights, s. 89, p. 1124
exercise of refund of consideration paid, transfer of shares, s. 108D, p. 1278
exercise of, agreement as to voting, s. 182, p. 1732
—, general meetings at, s. 182, p. 1730
—, personal property as, s. 182, p. 1731
—, some instances, s. 182, p. 1733
—, transfer shares under, s. 182, p. 1732
—, when void, s. 182, p. 1730
injunction against, use of, s. 87, p. 1121, s. 94, p. 1136
insolvent shareholders right to vote, s. 177, p. 1719
joint shareholders, right to split holdings, s. 87, p. 1119
manner of exercising, s. 87, p. 1122

Voting rights (*Contd.*)
pledge or attachment of shares, effect upon, s. 87, p. 1121
preference shareholders, restricted rights, resolution affecting s. 87, p. 1119
private companies, in, s. 87, p. 1122
provision in articles restricting, except as provided in section 181, *void*, s. 182, p. 1730
restrictions on members in arrears of call, s. 181, p. 1729
right to have vote recorded, s. 87, p. 1115
right to use differently by members, s. 183, p. 1734
savings, s. 90, p. 1124
share transfer, under defective procedure, s. 87, p. 1121
shareholder, duty towards voiceless fellow, s. 182, p. 1732
shareholders, voting agreements, s. 87, p. 1116
shares allotted for consideration other than cash, position, s. 181, p. 1729
termination of, in existing companies, s. 89, p. 1123
total voting power, ss. 2, 2(48), pp. 31, 87
transfer of shares, under defective procedure, s. 87, p. 1121
trust holdings, on, Depositories Act, s. 187-B, p. 1756
trust shares in, respect of, s. 187-B, p. 1754
USA law in, s. 182, p. 1733

Website, ICSI guidelines, displaying of pariculars members in practice on, s. 2(45-A), p. 82
search facilities, release of, s. 20, p. 421

Whole-time Directors, agreement of appointment, filing along with Memorandum/articles of association, s. 33, p. 469
appointment, along with Manager, no prohibition against, s. 197-A, p. 1829
covered under expression, 'officer in default', s. 5, p. 140
designation not material, s. 2(26), p. 57
remuneration, s. 198, p. 1837

Wholetime Secretary, • SEE ALSO UNDER "Secretary"

Wholly Owned Subsidiaries Abroad, Guidelines for Indian Direct Investment in Joint Ventures and Wholly Owned Subsidiaries Abroad, see *App.* 117

Wilfully, meaning of, s. 5, p. 159
Wilfull default, s. 5, p. 159

Winding up, Consumer Forum jurisdiction, exclusion of, s. 10-GB, p. 317
insurance companies, of, s. 10FB, p. 256
NBFC by RBI, s. 58A, p. 749

Winding up (Creditors), pending appeal against, s. 10, p. 185

Winding up (General Provisions), charges, registered, questioning validity, s. 132, p. 1516
consumer forum, jurisdiction, s. 10, p. 210
illegal association of, s. 11, p. 342
jurisdiction, consumer forum of, s. 10, p. 210
preference shareholder's rights, s. 85, pp. 1106, 1108
preference shareholders, cumulative dividend in, s. 85, p. 1106
proxy, creditor by, in, s. 176, p. 1711
rectification of register of members, s. 111, p. 1340
redeemable preference shares, s. 80, pp. 1003, 1006
reduction of capital, s. 100, p. 1160

Winding up by Court, debenture holder, petition by, s. 117, p. 1427
rectification members, s. 111(4), p. 1340

Words and phrases, "accustomed to act", s. 7, p. 172
acquisition of gain, s. 11, p. 337
"allotment", s. 69, p. 829, s. 75, p. 933
"appointment and employment", s. 197-A, p. 1830
appointment, s. 197-A, p. 1830
"arising out of such order" s. 10F, p. 243
"blank transfer", s. 108, p. 1200
"book debt", s. 125, p. 1487
branch office, s. 2(9), p. 35
"brokerage", s. 76, p. 947

Words and phrases (*Contd.*)
"commission", s. 76, p. 937
construction of, s. 1, p. 10
"controlling interest", p. 108B, p. 1274
"decision or order", s. 10-F, p. 242
employment, s. 197-A, p. 1830
employment and appointment, distinction, s. 197-A, p. 1830
expenditure, meaning of, s. 198, p. 1839
"expert", s. 59, p. 772
"germane', s. 149, p. 1557
Guidance Note on Terms used in Financial Statements, as issued by ICAI, see *App.* 318(B-1)
"holder of shares", s. 81, p. 1032
"includes", s. 2, p. 31
"investments", s. 49, p. 615
"knowingly", s. 72, p. 842
management, meaning of, s. 203, p. 1863
"nominee", s. 42, p. 563
"offer to the public", s. 69, p. 831
official gazette, s. 1, p. 10
"payment in cash", s. 75, p. 931
"person aggrieved" s. 10-F, p. 242
"person", s. 11, p. 336
"proper instrument", s. 108, p. 1195
"relevant period", s. 43-A, p. 569
scheduled industry, s. 2(19AB), p. 50
"sufficient cause", s. 111-A, p. 1372
"technician", "technical adviser", s. 204, p. 1887
"turn-over", s. 43-A, p. 569
"underwriting", s. 76, p. 940
"wilfully, s. 72, p. 842

Working capital, utilisation of, loan, for repayment of deposits, s. 58-AA, p. 768

Writ Petition, SEBI orders, against, s. 56, p. 643
SEBI, general directions to, s. 78, p. 992

Writ remedy, against company, s. 34, p. 483
CLB order, against, not maintainable, s. 111, p. 1307
judicial review of registration, s. 33, p. 475
refund of deposits, for, s. 58-A, p. 730
section 25 company, chamber of commerce, against, s. 25, p. 443
Stock Exchange, against, s. 2(39), p. 69
transfer of shares, remedy of, s. 111A, p. 1388

Wrong Court, proceedings in effect, s. 10, p. 184

Xerox copies of Memorandum, and articles, not allowed, s. 15, p. 373

Year, financial, s. 2(17), pp. 26, 49